



# Corporations Act 2001

No. 50, 2001

## Compilation No. 79

**Compilation date:** 1 July 2017

**Includes amendments up to:** Act No. 75, 2017

**Registered:** 6 July 2017

This compilation is in 6 volumes

Volume 1: sections 1–260E  
Volume 2: sections 283AA–601DJ  
Volume 3: sections 601EA–742  
**Volume 4: sections 760A–993D**  
Volume 5: sections 1010A–1369A  
Volume 6: sections 1370–1637  
Schedules  
Endnotes

Each volume has its own contents

**This compilation includes commenced amendments made by Act No. 45, 2017**

Prepared by the Office of Parliamentary Counsel, Canberra

---

## About this compilation

### **This compilation**

This is a compilation of the *Corporations Act 2001* that shows the text of the law as amended and in force on 1 July 2017 (the *compilation date*).

The notes at the end of this compilation (the *endnotes*) include information about amending laws and the amendment history of provisions of the compiled law.

### **Uncommenced amendments**

The effect of uncommenced amendments is not shown in the text of the compiled law. Any uncommenced amendments affecting the law are accessible on the Legislation Register ([www.legislation.gov.au](http://www.legislation.gov.au)). The details of amendments made up to, but not commenced at, the compilation date are underlined in the endnotes. For more information on any uncommenced amendments, see the series page on the Legislation Register for the compiled law.

### **Application, saving and transitional provisions for provisions and amendments**

If the operation of a provision or amendment of the compiled law is affected by an application, saving or transitional provision that is not included in this compilation, details are included in the endnotes.

### **Editorial changes**

For more information about any editorial changes made in this compilation, see the endnotes.

### **Modifications**

If the compiled law is modified by another law, the compiled law operates as modified but the modification does not amend the text of the law. Accordingly, this compilation does not show the text of the compiled law as modified. For more information on any modifications, see the series page on the Legislation Register for the compiled law.

### **Self-repealing provisions**

If a provision of the compiled law has been repealed in accordance with a provision of the law, details are included in the endnotes.

---

# Contents

<b>Chapter 7—Financial services and markets</b>	1
<b>Part 7.1—Preliminary</b>	1
<b>Division 1—Object of Chapter and outline of Chapter</b>	1
760A Object of Chapter .....	1
760B Outline of Chapter .....	1
<b>Division 2—Definitions</b>	3
761A Definitions .....	3
761B Meaning of <i>arrangement</i> —2 or more arrangements that together form a derivative or other financial product .....	17
761C Meaning of <i>carry on</i> a financial services business .....	17
761CA Meaning of <i>class</i> and <i>kind</i> of financial products and financial services .....	17
761D Meaning of <i>derivative</i> .....	17
761E Meaning of <i>issued</i> , <i>issuer</i> , <i>acquire</i> and <i>provide</i> in relation to financial products .....	19
761EA Meaning of <i>margin lending facility</i> , <i>margin call</i> and associated expressions .....	22
761F Meaning of <i>person</i> —generally includes a partnership .....	25
761FA Meaning of <i>person</i> —generally includes multiple trustees .....	26
761G Meaning of retail client and wholesale client .....	28
761GA Meaning of <i>retail client</i> —sophisticated investors .....	33
761H References to this Chapter include references to regulations or other instruments made for the purposes of this Chapter .....	34
<b>Division 3—What is a financial product?</b>	36
<b>Subdivision A—Preliminary</b>	36
762A Overview of approach to defining what a financial product is .....	36
762B What if a financial product is part of a broader facility? .....	36
762C Meaning of <i>facility</i> .....	37
<b>Subdivision B—The general definition</b>	37
763A General definition of <i>financial product</i> .....	37
763B When a person makes a financial investment .....	38
763C When a person <i>manages financial risk</i> .....	39
763D When a person <i>makes non-cash payments</i> .....	39
763E What if a financial product is only incidental? .....	40
<b>Subdivision C—Specific inclusions</b>	41

---

---

764A	Specific things that are financial products (subject to Subdivision D).....	41
<b>Subdivision D—Specific exclusions</b>		44
765A	Specific things that are not financial products .....	44
<b>Division 4—When does a person provide a financial service?</b>		48
766A	When does a person provide a <i>financial service</i> ? .....	48
766B	Meaning of financial product advice .....	49
766C	Meaning of <i>dealing</i> .....	52
766D	Meaning of <i>makes a market</i> for a financial product .....	54
766E	Meaning of provide a custodial or depository service .....	54
<b>Division 5—What is a financial market?</b>		56
767A	What is a <i>financial market</i> ? .....	56
<b>Division 6—What is a clearing and settlement facility?</b>		57
768A	What is a clearing and settlement facility? .....	57
<b>Division 7—General provisions relating to civil and criminal liability</b>		59
769A	Part 2.5 of <i>Criminal Code</i> does not apply.....	59
769B	People are generally responsible for the conduct of their agents, employees etc. ....	59
769C	Representations about future matters taken to be misleading if made without reasonable grounds .....	62
<b>Part 7.2—Licensing of financial markets</b>		64
<b>Division 1—Preliminary</b>		64
790A	Definition .....	64
<b>Division 2—Requirement to be licensed</b>		65
791A	Need for a licence .....	65
791B	Other prohibitions on holding out.....	65
791C	Exemptions by Minister.....	65
791D	When a market is taken to be operated in this jurisdiction .....	67
<b>Division 3—Regulation of market licensees</b>		68
<b>Subdivision A—Licensee’s obligations</b>		68
792A	General obligations.....	68
792B	Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters.....	69
792C	Giving ASIC information about a listed disclosing entity .....	71
792D	Obligation to assist ASIC .....	71
792E	Obligation to give ASIC access to market facilities .....	72

---

---

792F	Annual report.....	72
792G	Obligations to notify people about clearing and settlement arrangements in certain circumstances .....	73
792H	Change of country by foreign licensee .....	74
792I	Making information about compensation arrangements publicly available.....	75
<b>Subdivision B—The market’s operating rules and procedures</b>		<b>75</b>
793A	Content of the operating rules and procedures.....	75
793B	Legal effect of operating rules .....	75
793C	Enforcement of operating rules .....	76
793D	Changing the operating rules .....	77
793E	Disallowance of changes to operating rules.....	78
<b>Subdivision C—Powers of the Minister and ASIC</b>		<b>79</b>
794A	Minister’s power to give directions .....	79
794B	Minister’s power to require special report .....	79
794C	ASIC assessment of licensee’s compliance .....	80
794D	ASIC’s power to give directions.....	81
794E	Additional directions to clearing and settlement facilities .....	82
<b>Division 4—The Australian market licence</b>		<b>84</b>
<b>Subdivision A—How to get a licence</b>		<b>84</b>
795A	How to apply for a licence.....	84
795B	When a licence may be granted .....	84
795C	Publication of notice of licence grant .....	86
795D	More than one licence in the same document .....	87
795E	More than one market covered by the same licence .....	87
<b>Subdivision B—The conditions on the licence</b>		<b>87</b>
796A	The conditions on the licence .....	87
<b>Subdivision C—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled</b>		<b>89</b>
797A	Varying licences .....	89
797B	Immediate suspension or cancellation .....	89
797C	Suspension or cancellation following hearing and report .....	90
797D	Effect of suspension .....	91
797E	Variation or revocation of suspension .....	91
797F	Publication of notice of licence suspension or cancellation.....	91
797G	Suspension and cancellation only in accordance with this Subdivision.....	92

---

---

<b>Division 5—Other matters</b>	93
798A Matters to be taken into account by the Minister.....	93
798B ASIC may give advice to Minister .....	94
798C Market licensee or related body corporate etc. listing on market.....	94
798D Exemptions and modifications for self-listing licensees or related bodies corporate etc. ....	96
798DA Market licensee, related body corporate etc. or competitor participating in market.....	97
798E Other potential conflict situations.....	99
<b>Part 7.2A—Supervision of financial markets</b>	100
798F ASIC to supervise financial markets .....	100
798G Market integrity rules .....	100
798H Complying with market integrity rules .....	101
798J Directions by ASIC .....	101
798K Alternatives to civil proceedings .....	103
798L Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	103
798M Exemptions by Minister.....	104
<b>Part 7.3—Licensing of clearing and settlement facilities</b>	106
<b>Division 1—Requirement to be licensed</b>	106
820A Need for a licence.....	106
820B Other prohibitions on holding out.....	106
820C Exemptions by Minister.....	107
820D When a clearing and settlement facility is taken to be operated in this jurisdiction .....	108
<b>Division 2—Regulation of CS facility licensees</b>	109
<b>Subdivision A—Licensee’s obligations</b>	109
821A General obligations.....	109
821B Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters.....	110
821BA Obligation to notify Reserve Bank of certain matters.....	112
821C Obligation to assist .....	112
821D Obligation to give ASIC access to the facility .....	113
821E Annual report.....	113
821F Change of country by foreign licensee .....	114
<b>Subdivision B—The facility’s operating rules and procedures</b>	115
822A Content of the operating rules and procedures.....	115
822B Legal effect of operating rules .....	115

---

---

822C	Enforcement of operating rules .....	116
822D	Changing the operating rules .....	117
822E	Disallowance of changes to operating rules.....	117
<b>Subdivision C—Powers of the Minister, ASIC and the Reserve</b>		
<b>Bank in relation to licensees</b>		118
823A	Minister’s power to give directions .....	118
823B	Minister’s power to require special report .....	119
823C	ASIC assessment of licensee’s compliance .....	119
823CA	Reserve Bank assessment of licensee’s compliance .....	120
823D	Directions power—protecting dealings in financial products and ensuring fair and effective provision of services by CS facilities .....	121
823E	Directions power—reduction of systemic risk.....	123
<b>Division 3—The Australian CS facility licence</b>		125
<b>Subdivision A—How to get a licence</b>		125
824A	How to apply for a licence.....	125
824B	When a licence may be granted .....	125
824C	Publication of notice of licence grant .....	127
824D	More than one licence in the same document .....	128
824E	More than one CS facility covered by the same licence .....	128
<b>Subdivision B—The conditions on the licence</b>		128
825A	The conditions on the licence .....	128
<b>Subdivision C—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled</b>		130
826A	Varying licences .....	130
826B	Immediate suspension or cancellation .....	130
826C	Suspension or cancellation following hearing and report .....	131
826D	Effect of suspension .....	132
826E	Variation or revocation of suspension .....	132
826F	Publication of notice of licence suspension or cancellation.....	132
826G	Suspension and cancellation only in accordance with this Subdivision.....	132
<b>Division 4—Other matters</b>		134
827A	Matters to be taken into account by the Minister.....	134
827B	ASIC may give advice to Minister .....	135
827C	Reserve Bank may give advice to Minister .....	135
827D	Reserve Bank may determine financial stability standards.....	136

---

---

<b>Part 7.4—Limits on involvement with licensees</b>	138
<b>Division 1—Limit on control of certain licensees</b>	138
<b>Subdivision A—15% voting power limit</b>	138
850A Scope of Division .....	138
850B Meaning of unacceptable control situation .....	138
850C Acquisitions of shares.....	139
850D Remedial orders.....	139
850E Injunctions.....	140
<b>Subdivision B—Approval to exceed 15% voting power limit</b>	141
851A Application for approval to exceed 15% voting power limit .....	141
851B Approval of application.....	141
851C Duration of approval.....	142
851D Conditions of approval .....	143
851E Varying percentage approved .....	144
851F Revoking an approval.....	145
851G Further information about applications.....	146
851H Time limit for Minister’s decision.....	146
851I Preservation of voting power in relation to bodies specified in regulations made for section 850A .....	147
<b>Subdivision C—Other matters</b>	148
852A Acquisition of property.....	148
852B Anti-avoidance .....	148
<b>Division 2—Individuals who are not fit and proper are         disqualified</b>	150
853A Who is disqualified.....	150
853B When an individual is <i>involved in</i> an operator.....	150
853C Declaration by ASIC .....	150
853D Procedure for declaration.....	151
853E Revoking a declaration .....	152
853F Obligations on disqualified individuals .....	152
853G Notification by ASIC.....	153
<b>Division 3—Miscellaneous</b>	154
854A Record-keeping and giving of information.....	154
854B Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	155

---



---

<b>Part 7.5—Compensation regimes for financial markets</b>	156
<b>Division 1—Preliminary</b>	156
880A Part does not apply to markets licensed under special provisions about overseas markets .....	156
880B Definitions .....	156
<b>Division 2—When there must be a compensation regime</b>	158
881A Licensed markets through which participants provide services for retail clients must generally have a compensation regime .....	158
881B Additional requirements for the licence application .....	158
881C What happens if an application contains information in accordance with paragraph 881B(2)(c).....	159
881D What happens if an application contains a statement in accordance with paragraph 881B(2)(d) .....	159
<b>Division 3—Approved compensation arrangements</b>	160
<b>Subdivision A—Approval of compensation arrangements</b>	160
882A How to get compensation arrangements approved with grant of licence .....	160
882B How to get compensation arrangements approved after licence is granted .....	161
882C Revocation of approval.....	162
882D Minister’s power to give directions .....	162
<b>Subdivision B—Effect of compensation rules forming part of Division 3 arrangements</b>	162
883A Legal effect of compensation rules .....	162
883B Enforcement of compensation rules .....	162
883C Other sources of funds for compensation .....	163
883D Payment of levies .....	164
<b>Subdivision C—Changing Division 3 arrangements</b>	165
884A Division 3 arrangements must generally only be changed in accordance with this Subdivision .....	165
884B Changing Division 3 arrangements—matters required to be dealt with in the compensation rules.....	165
884C Changing Division 3 arrangements—matters not required to be dealt with in the compensation rules.....	166
<b>Subdivision D—Are compensation arrangements adequate?</b>	168
885A Purpose of this Subdivision .....	168
885B Requirements to be complied with for arrangements to be adequate.....	168

---

---

885C	The losses to be covered.....	169
885D	Certain losses that are not Division 3 losses.....	170
885E	The amount of compensation.....	171
885F	Method of payment of compensation.....	172
885G	Making and determination of claims.....	173
885H	The source of funds—general.....	173
885I	Administration and monitoring.....	173
885J	The losses to be covered—other matters to be taken into account.....	174
<b>Subdivision E—Other provisions about Division 3 arrangements</b>		174
886A	Only one claim in respect of the same loss.....	174
886B	Regulations relating to fidelity funds.....	175
<b>Division 4—NGF Compensation regime</b>		176
<b>Subdivision A—Application of Division</b>		176
887A	Markets to which this Division applies.....	176
<b>Subdivision B—Claims for and payment of compensation</b>		176
888A	The situations in which compensation may be claimed.....	176
888B	Kinds of compensation available.....	176
888C	Amount of compensation payable.....	176
888D	Payment of compensation.....	177
888E	Making and determination of claims.....	178
888F	The SEGC has power to determine claims.....	178
888G	Allowing a claim does not constitute an admission of any other liability.....	178
888H	Claimant may apply to Court if claim disallowed.....	179
888I	Non-NGF property of the SEGC not available to meet claims.....	179
888J	The SEGC may enter into contracts of insurance or indemnity.....	179
888K	NGF may be used to acquire financial products to be transferred as compensation.....	180
<b>Subdivision C—The NGF</b>		180
889A	Continuation of the National Guarantee Fund.....	180
889B	Compensation to be provided out of the NGF.....	181
889C	The SEGC to keep the NGF.....	181
889D	What the NGF consists of.....	181
889E	Power to borrow etc. for purposes of the NGF.....	182
889F	Money borrowed and paid to the SEGC.....	182
889G	Money borrowed and not paid to the SEGC.....	183

---

---

889H	Payments out of the NGF .....	183
889I	Minimum amount of the NGF .....	184
889J	Levy by the SEGC .....	184
889K	Levy by market operator.....	186
<b>Subdivision D—The SEGC</b>		188
890A	Minister to nominate the SEGC.....	188
890B	The SEGC’s functions and powers .....	189
890C	Delegation .....	189
890D	Operating rules of the SEGC .....	190
890E	Legal effect of the SEGC’s operating rules .....	190
890F	Enforcement of the SEGC’s operating rules.....	190
890G	Changing the SEGC’s operating rules .....	191
890H	Disallowance of changes to the SEGC’s operating rules.....	191
<b>Subdivision E—Other provisions relating to compensation under this Division</b>		192
891A	Payment out of the NGF to prescribed body with arrangements covering clearing and settlement facility support.....	192
891B	Markets operated by bodies corporate that become members of the SEGC—regulations may deal with transitional provisions and other matters.....	192
891C	Regulations may make different provision in respect of different markets etc. ....	193
<b>Division 5—Provisions common to both kinds of compensation arrangements</b>		194
892A	Definitions .....	194
892B	How regulated funds are to be kept .....	194
892C	Money in regulated funds may be invested .....	195
892D	Powers of relevant authority to require production or delivery of documents or statements .....	196
892E	Power to require assistance for purpose of dealing with a claim.....	197
892F	Relevant authority’s right of subrogation if compensation is paid.....	198
892G	Excess money in compensation funds .....	198
892H	Accounting and reporting for regulated funds .....	199
892I	Division 3 arrangements—reporting in situations where compensation does not come out of a regulated fund .....	201
892J	Regulations may provide for qualified privilege in respect of certain matters .....	201

---

---

892K	Risk assessment report.....	201
<b>Division 6—Miscellaneous</b>		<b>203</b>
893A	Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	203
893B	Exemptions by Minister.....	203
<b>Part 7.5A—Regulation of derivative transactions and derivative trade repositories</b>		<b>205</b>
<b>Division 1—Application of Part</b>		<b>205</b>
900A	Derivatives and transactions etc. to which this Part applies.....	205
<b>Division 2—Regulation of derivative transactions: derivative transaction rules</b>		<b>206</b>
<b>Subdivision A—Power to make derivative transaction rules</b>		<b>206</b>
901A	ASIC may make derivative transaction rules.....	206
901B	Derivatives in relation to which rules may impose requirements .....	209
901C	Regulations may limit the transactions in relation to which rules may impose requirements .....	212
901D	Regulations may limit the persons on whom requirements may be imposed.....	212
<b>Subdivision B—Compliance with derivative transaction rules</b>		<b>213</b>
901E	Obligation to comply with derivative transaction rules .....	213
901F	Alternatives to civil proceedings .....	213
901G	Failure to comply with derivative transaction rules does not invalidate transaction etc. ....	214
<b>Subdivision C—The process of making of derivative transaction rules</b>		<b>214</b>
901H	Matters to which ASIC must have regard when making rules.....	214
901J	ASIC to consult before making rules.....	215
901K	Ministerial consent to rules required .....	215
901L	Emergency rules: consultation and consent not required.....	216
901M	Amendment and revocation of derivative transaction rules.....	216
<b>Division 3—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: supervision by ASIC</b>		<b>217</b>
902A	ASIC to supervise licensed derivative trade repositories.....	217
<b>Division 4—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: derivative trade repository rules</b>		<b>218</b>
<b>Subdivision A—Power to make derivative trade repository rules</b>		<b>218</b>

---

---

903A	ASIC may make derivative trade repository rules .....	218
903B	Rules may only impose requirements on operators and officers of licensed derivative trade repositories .....	221
903C	Regulations may limit how rules may deal with matters related to derivative trade data.....	221
<b>Subdivision B—Compliance with derivative trade repository rules</b>		221
903D	Obligation to comply with derivative trade repository rules.....	221
903E	Alternatives to civil proceedings .....	222
<b>Subdivision C—The process of making derivative trade repository rules</b>		222
903F	Matters to which ASIC has regard when making rules.....	222
903G	ASIC to consult before making rules.....	223
903H	Ministerial consent to rules required .....	223
903J	Emergency rules: consultation and consent not required.....	224
903K	Amendment and revocation of derivative trade repository rules.....	224
<b>Division 5—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: other obligations and powers</b>		225
<b>Subdivision A—Obligations</b>		225
904A	General obligations.....	225
904B	Obligations relating to derivative trade data .....	225
904C	Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters.....	227
904D	Obligation to assist ASIC, APRA and the Reserve Bank .....	228
904E	Obligation to give ASIC access to derivative trade repository facilities .....	229
<b>Subdivision B—Powers of Minister and ASIC to give directions etc.</b>		229
904F	Minister’s power to give directions to licensee not complying with obligations .....	229
904G	ASIC’s power to give directions to licensee not complying with obligations .....	229
904H	ASIC’s power to give directions requiring special reports .....	231
904J	ASIC may assess licensee’s compliance.....	231
904K	Directions relating to derivative trade data if repository ceases to be licensed.....	232

---

---

<b>Division 6—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: licensing</b>	234
<b>Subdivision A—Requirement for some trade repositories to be     licensed</b>	234
905A Regulations may identify derivative trade repositories as being required to be licensed .....	234
<b>Subdivision B—Granting of licences</b>	234
905B How to apply for a licence .....	234
905C When a licence may be granted .....	235
905D Publication of notice of licence grant .....	235
905E More than one derivative trade repository covered by the same licence .....	236
<b>Subdivision C—The conditions on a licence</b>	236
905F The conditions on the licence .....	236
<b>Subdivision D—When a licence can be varied, suspended or     cancelled</b>	238
905G Varying licences .....	238
905H Immediate suspension or cancellation .....	238
905J Suspension or cancellation following hearing and report .....	239
905K Effect of suspension .....	240
905L Variation or revocation of suspension .....	240
905M Publication of notice of licence suspension or cancellation.....	240
905N Suspension and cancellation only in accordance with this Subdivision.....	240
<b>Subdivision E—Other matters</b>	240
905P Matters to be taken into account by ASIC .....	240
<b>Division 7—Regulation of prescribed derivative trade repositories</b>	242
906A Regulations may impose obligations and confer powers .....	242
<b>Division 8—Other matters</b>	243
907A Other prohibitions on holding out.....	243
907B Making provision by reference to instruments as in force from time to time .....	243
907C Compliance with requirements to provide derivative trade data or other information: protection from liability .....	244
907D Exemptions by ASIC .....	244
907E Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	245

---

---

<b>Part 7.6—Licensing of providers of financial services</b>	247
<b>Division 1—Preliminary</b>	247
910A Definitions	247
<b>Division 2—Requirement to be licensed or authorised</b>	251
911A Need for an Australian financial services licence	251
911B Providing financial services on behalf of a person who carries on a financial services business	256
911C Prohibition on holding out	258
911D When a financial services business is taken to be carried on in this jurisdiction	259
<b>Division 3—Obligations of financial services licensees</b>	260
912A General obligations	260
912B Compensation arrangements if financial services provided to persons as retail clients	262
912C Direction to provide a statement	263
912CA Regulations may require information to be provided	264
912D Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters	264
912E Surveillance checks by ASIC	266
912F Obligation to cite licence number in documents	266
<b>Division 4—Australian financial services licences</b>	267
<b>Subdivision A—How to get a licence</b>	267
913A Applying for a licence	267
913B When a licence may be granted	267
913C Licence numbers	269
<b>Subdivision B—The conditions on the licence</b>	269
914A The conditions on the licence	269
<b>Subdivision C—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled</b>	272
915A Varying licences	272
915B Immediate suspension or cancellation	272
915C Suspension or cancellation after offering a hearing	275
915D Effect of suspension	276
915E Revocation of suspension	277
915F Date of effect and publication of cancellation or suspension	277
915G Statement of reasons	277
915H ASIC may allow licence to continue in effect	277
915I Special procedures for APRA-regulated bodies	278

---

---

915J	Variation, suspension and cancellation only under this Subdivision.....	279
<b>Division 5—Authorised representatives</b>		280
916A	How representatives are authorised .....	280
916B	Sub-authorisations .....	280
916C	Authorised representative of 2 or more licensees .....	282
916D	Licensees cannot authorise other licensees.....	282
916E	Licensees acting under a binder.....	283
916F	Obligation to notify ASIC etc. about authorised representatives .....	283
916G	ASIC may give licensee information about representatives .....	285
<b>Division 6—Liability of financial services licensees for representatives</b>		288
917A	Application of Division .....	288
917B	Responsibility if representative of only one licensee.....	289
917C	Representatives of multiple licensees .....	289
917D	Exception if lack of authority is disclosed to client.....	290
917E	Responsibility extends to loss or damage suffered by client .....	291
917F	Effect of Division .....	291
<b>Division 8—Banning or disqualification of persons from providing financial services</b>		293
<b>Subdivision A—Banning orders</b>		293
920A	ASIC’s power to make a banning order.....	293
920B	What is a <i>banning order</i> ? .....	295
920C	Effect of banning orders .....	296
920D	Variation or cancellation of banning orders.....	296
920E	Date of effect and publication of banning order, variation or cancellation.....	297
920F	Statement of reasons.....	297
<b>Subdivision B—Disqualification by the Court</b>		298
921A	Disqualification by the Court.....	298
<b>Division 8A—Professional standards for relevant providers</b>		299
<b>Subdivision A—Education and training standards</b>		299
921B	Meaning of <i>education and training standards</i> .....	299
921C	Limitation on authorisation to provide personal advice unless conditions met .....	300
921D	Relevant providers to meet continuing professional development standard .....	301

---



---

<b>Subdivision B—Ethical standards</b>	302
921E Relevant providers to comply with the Code of Ethics.....	302
<b>Subdivision C—Provisional relevant providers</b>	302
921F Requirements relating to provisional relevant providers .....	302
<b>Division 8B—Compliance schemes</b>	305
<b>Subdivision A—Compliance schemes to cover relevant providers</b>	305
921G Meaning of <i>compliance scheme</i> .....	305
921H Financial services licensees to ensure compliance scheme covers relevant providers.....	306
921J When a compliance scheme <i>covers</i> a relevant provider .....	306
<b>Subdivision B—Approval of compliance schemes</b>	307
921K Approval of compliance schemes .....	307
<b>Subdivision C—Investigations by monitoring body</b>	310
921L Investigations by monitoring body .....	310
921M Offences relating to investigations by monitoring body .....	312
921N Obligation to notify licensee of failure to comply with Code of Ethics.....	313
<b>Subdivision D—Other provisions</b>	314
921P Obligation to ensure that compliance scheme is publicly available .....	314
921Q Obligation to provide ASIC with information .....	314
921R Modification of compliance scheme.....	314
921S Obligation to review compliance scheme .....	315
921T Obligation to notify ASIC of changes to monitoring body.....	316
<b>Division 8C—The standards body</b>	317
<b>Subdivision A—Functions of the standards body</b>	317
921U Functions of the standards body .....	317
921V Approval of foreign qualifications.....	319
921W Commencement of Code of Ethics and amendments of Code of Ethics.....	321
<b>Subdivision B—Declaration of the standards body</b>	321
921X Minister to declare a body corporate to be the standards body .....	321
921Y Minister may revoke declaration under section 921X .....	322
<b>Subdivision C—Other provisions relating to the standards body</b>	324
921Z Modification of the standards body’s constitution.....	324
921ZA Disallowance of modifications of the standards body’s constitution .....	324

---

---

921ZB	Minister may direct the standards body to do certain things.....	324
921ZC	Annual report.....	325
<b>Division 9—Registers relating to financial services</b>		<b>326</b>
<b>Subdivision A—Registers generally</b>		<b>326</b>
922A	Registers relating to financial services .....	326
922B	Fees for searching registers .....	326
<b>Subdivision B—Notice requirements relating to the Register of Relevant Providers</b>		<b>327</b>
922D	Obligation to notify ASIC about a person who becomes a relevant provider.....	327
922E	Information about a relevant provider who is a financial services licensee .....	327
922F	Information about a relevant provider who is not a financial services licensee .....	328
922G	Meaning of <i>recent advising history</i> .....	331
922H	Ongoing obligation to notify ASIC when there is a change in a matter for a relevant provider .....	331
922HA	Obligation to notify ASIC of financial services licensee’s CPD year .....	332
922HB	Obligation to notify ASIC of non-compliance with continuing professional development standard.....	333
922HC	Requirement to retain information.....	333
922HD	Obligation to notify ASIC in relation to failures to comply with the Code of Ethics .....	334
922J	Obligation to notify ASIC about a person who starts to have control of a body corporate licensee .....	335
922K	Obligation to notify ASIC about a person who ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee .....	335
922L	Requirement for notice to be lodged.....	336
922M	Offence for failing to comply with obligation to notify ASIC .....	337
922N	Obligation for relevant providers to provide information to financial services licensees .....	338
922P	Change in matter within 30 business days .....	339
<b>Subdivision C—Register of Relevant Providers</b>		<b>340</b>
922Q	Register of Relevant Providers .....	340
922R	Relevant provider number .....	343
922S	Correcting the Register .....	343
<b>Division 10—Restrictions on use of terminology</b>		<b>344</b>
923A	Restriction on use of certain words or expressions.....	344

---

---

923B	Restriction on use of certain words or expressions unless authorised in licence conditions.....	346
923C	Restriction on use of terms “financial adviser” and “financial planner” .....	349
<b>Division 11—Agreements with unlicensed persons relating to the provision of financial services</b>		353
<b>Subdivision A—Agreements affected</b>		353
924A	Agreements with certain unlicensed persons .....	353
<b>Subdivision B—Effect on agreements</b>		353
925A	Client may give notice of rescission .....	353
925B	Effect of notice under section 925A .....	354
925C	Client may apply to Court for partial rescission .....	355
925D	Court may make consequential orders .....	355
925E	Agreement unenforceable against client.....	356
925F	Non-licensee not entitled to recover commission .....	356
925G	Onus of establishing non-application of section 925E or 925F.....	357
925H	Client may recover commission paid to non-licensee.....	357
925I	Remedies under this Division additional to other remedies.....	357
<b>Division 12—Miscellaneous</b>		358
926A	Exemptions and modifications by ASIC.....	358
926B	Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	359
<b>Part 7.7—Financial services disclosure</b>		360
<b>Division 1—Preliminary</b>		360
940A	How Part applies if a financial services licensee is acting as authorised representative .....	360
940B	What if there is no reasonable opportunity to give a document, information or statement required by this Part? .....	360
940C	How documents, information and statements are to be given.....	361
940D	General approach to offence provisions .....	363
<b>Division 2—Person provided with financial service as retail client to be given a Financial Services Guide</b>		364
<b>Subdivision A—Requirement for a Financial Services Guide to be given</b>		364
941A	Obligation on financial services licensee to give a Financial Services Guide if financial service provided to person as a retail client.....	364

---

---

941B	Obligation on authorised representative to give a Financial Services Guide if financial service provided to person as a retail client.....	364
941C	Situations in which a Financial Services Guide is not required.....	365
941D	Timing of giving Financial Services Guide.....	367
941E	Information must be up to date.....	367
941F	Obligation to give updated Financial Services Guide.....	368
<b>Subdivision B—Content and authorisation of Financial Services Guide</b>		
		368
942A	Title of Financial Services Guide.....	368
942B	Financial Services Guide given by financial services licensee—main requirements.....	369
942C	Financial Services Guide given by authorised representative—main requirements.....	372
942D	Financial Services Guide may consist of 2 or more separate documents given at same time.....	376
942DA	Combining a Financial Services Guide and a Product Disclosure Statement in a single document.....	377
942E	Altering a Financial Services Guide after its preparation and before giving it to a person.....	377
<b>Subdivision C—Supplementary Financial Services Guides</b>		
		378
943A	What a Supplementary Financial Services Guide is.....	378
943B	Title of Supplementary Financial Services Guide.....	378
943C	Form of Supplementary Financial Services Guide.....	379
943D	Effect of giving a person a Supplementary Financial Services Guide.....	379
943E	Situation in which only a Supplementary Financial Services Guide need be given.....	380
943F	Altering a Supplementary Financial Services Guide after its preparation and before giving it to a person.....	380
<b>Division 3—Additional requirements for personal advice provided to a retail client</b>		
		381
<b>Subdivision A—When this Division applies</b>		
		381
944A	Situation in which Division applies.....	381
<b>Subdivision C—Requirement for a Statement of Advice to be given</b>		
		381
946A	Obligation to give client a Statement of Advice.....	381
946AA	Small investments—Statement of Advice not required.....	382

---

---

946B	Other situations in which a Statement of Advice is not required.....	384
946C	Timing of giving Statement of Advice .....	388
<b>Subdivision D—Content of Statement of Advice</b>		<b>389</b>
947A	Title of Statement of Advice.....	389
947B	Statement of Advice given by financial services licensee— main requirements .....	389
947C	Statement of Advice given by authorised representative— main requirements .....	391
947D	Additional requirements when advice recommends replacement of one product with another.....	393
947E	Statement of Advice not to be combined with Financial Services Guide or Product Disclosure Statement .....	395
<b>Subdivision E—Other matters</b>		<b>395</b>
948A	Qualified privilege if providing entity complies with this Division .....	395
<b>Division 4—Other disclosure requirements</b>		<b>396</b>
949A	General advice provided to retail client—obligation to warn client that advice does not take account of client’s objectives, financial situation or needs .....	396
949B	Regulations may impose disclosure requirements in certain situations.....	397
<b>Division 6—Miscellaneous</b>		<b>400</b>
951A	Part cannot be contracted out of .....	400
951B	Exemptions and modifications by ASIC.....	400
951C	Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	401
<b>Division 7—Enforcement</b>		<b>402</b>
<b>Subdivision A—Offences</b>		<b>402</b>
952A	Overview .....	402
952B	Definitions .....	402
952C	Offence of failing to give a disclosure document or statement .....	404
952D	Offence of giving a disclosure document or statement knowing it to be defective .....	406
952E	Offence of giving a defective disclosure document or statement (whether or not known to be defective) .....	407
952F	Offences of financial services licensee knowingly providing defective disclosure material to an authorised representative .....	409
952G	Offences of financial services licensee providing disclosure material to an authorised representative (whether or not known to be defective) .....	410

---

---

952H	Offence of financial services licensee failing to ensure authorised representative gives disclosure documents or statements as required.....	413
952I	Offences if a Financial Services Guide (or Supplementary FSG) does not comply with certain requirements.....	413
952J	Offence if a Statement of Advice does not comply with certain requirements .....	415
952K	Offence if authorised representative gives out unauthorised Financial Services Guide (or Supplementary FSG).....	415
952L	Offences if financial services licensee or authorised representative becomes aware that a Financial Services Guide (or Supplementary FSG) is defective .....	416
952M	Offence of unauthorised alteration of Financial Services Guide or Supplementary Financial Services Guide .....	417
<b>Subdivision B—Civil liability</b>		418
953A	Definitions .....	418
953B	Civil action for loss or damage.....	420
953C	Additional powers of court to make orders.....	422
<b>Part 7.7A—Best interests obligations and remuneration</b>		424
<b>Division 1—Preliminary</b>		424
960	Definitions.....	424
960A	No contracting out .....	425
960B	Obligations under this Part in addition to other obligations.....	426
<b>Division 2—Best interests obligations</b>		427
<b>Subdivision A—Preliminary</b>		427
961	Application of this Division .....	427
961A	Application to a financial services licensee acting as an authorised representative .....	427
<b>Subdivision B—Provider must act in the best interests of the client</b>		428
961B	Provider must act in the best interests of the client.....	428
961C	When is something <i>reasonably apparent</i> ?.....	430
961D	What is a <i>reasonable investigation</i> ? .....	430
961E	What would reasonably be regarded as in the best interests of the client? .....	431
961F	What is a <i>basic banking product</i> ?.....	431
<b>Subdivision C—Resulting advice must be appropriate to the client</b>		431
961G	Resulting advice must be appropriate to the client .....	431

---

---

<b>Subdivision D—Where resulting advice still based on incomplete or inaccurate information</b>	432
961H Resulting advice still based on incomplete or inaccurate information .....	432
<b>Subdivision E—Provider to give priority to the client’s interests</b>	433
961J Conflict between client’s interests and those of provider, licensee, authorised representative or associates .....	433
<b>Subdivision F—Responsibilities of licensees under this Division</b>	434
961K Civil penalty provision—sections 961B, 961G, 961H and 961J .....	434
961L Licensees must ensure compliance .....	434
961M Civil action for loss or damage .....	434
961N Additional powers of Court to make orders .....	436
961P <i>Responsible licensee</i> .....	436
<b>Subdivision G—Responsibilities of authorised representatives under this Division</b>	437
961Q Civil penalty provision—sections 961B, 961G, 961H and 961J .....	437
<b>Division 3—Charging ongoing fees to clients</b>	438
<b>Subdivision A—Preliminary</b>	438
962 Application of this Division .....	438
962A Ongoing fee arrangements .....	438
962B Ongoing fees .....	440
962C Fee recipients .....	440
962CA Exemption from application of opt-in requirement .....	440
<b>Subdivision B—Termination, disclosure and renewal</b>	441
962D Application of this Subdivision .....	441
962E Client may terminate arrangement at any time .....	442
962F Arrangement terminates if this Subdivision not complied with .....	442
962G Fee recipient must give fee disclosure statement .....	443
962H Fee disclosure statements .....	443
962J <i>Disclosure day</i> .....	444
962K Fee recipient must give renewal notice .....	444
962L <i>Renewal notice day</i> and <i>renewal period</i> .....	445
962M If client notifies fee recipient that client does not wish to renew .....	445
962N If client does not notify fee recipient that client wishes to renew .....	446

---

---

962P	Civil penalty provision—charging ongoing fees after arrangement terminated .....	446
962Q	Effect of termination.....	446
<b>Subdivision C—Disclosure for arrangements to which Subdivision B does not apply</b>		446
962R	Application of this Subdivision .....	446
962S	Fee recipient must give fee disclosure statement.....	447
<b>Division 4—Conflicted remuneration</b>		449
<b>Subdivision A—Preliminary</b>		449
963	Application to a financial services licensee acting as an authorised representative .....	449
<b>Subdivision B—What is conflicted remuneration?</b>		449
963A	<i>Conflicted remuneration</i> .....	449
963B	Monetary benefit given in certain circumstances not <i>conflicted remuneration</i> .....	449
963C	Non-monetary benefit given in certain circumstances not <i>conflicted remuneration</i> .....	452
963D	Benefits for employees etc. of ADIs.....	453
<b>Subdivision C—Ban on conflicted remuneration</b>		454
963E	Licensee must not accept conflicted remuneration .....	454
963F	Licensee must ensure compliance.....	454
963G	Authorised representative must not accept conflicted remuneration.....	454
963H	Other representatives must not accept conflicted remuneration.....	455
963J	Employer must not give employees conflicted remuneration .....	455
963K	Product issuer or seller must not give conflicted remuneration.....	455
963L	Volume-based benefits presumed to be conflicted remuneration.....	456
<b>Division 5—Other banned remuneration</b>		457
<b>Subdivision A—Volume-based shelf-space fees</b>		457
964	Application .....	457
964A	Platform operator must not accept volume-based shelf-space fees .....	458
<b>Subdivision B—Asset-based fees on borrowed amounts</b>		459
964B	Application .....	459
964C	Application to a financial services licensee acting as an authorised representative .....	459

---



---

964D	Financial services licensees must not charge asset-based fees on borrowed amounts .....	459
964E	Authorised representatives must not charge asset-based fees on borrowed amounts .....	460
964F	What is an <i>asset-based fee</i> ? .....	461
964G	Meaning of <i>borrowed</i> .....	461
964H	When is something <i>reasonably apparent</i> ? .....	461
<b>Division 6—Anti-avoidance</b>		462
965	Anti-avoidance .....	462
<b>Division 7—Transition</b>		463
966	<i>Transition period</i> .....	463
967	Best interests obligations and remuneration provisions to apply during transition period .....	463
968	Notice to clients in transition period .....	464
<b>Part 7.8—Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure</b>		466
<b>Division 1—Preliminary</b>		466
980A	Matters covered by this Part .....	466
980B	General approach to offence provisions .....	466
<b>Division 2—Dealing with clients’ money</b>		467
<b>Subdivision A—Money other than loans</b>		467
981A	Money to which Subdivision applies .....	467
981B	Obligation to pay money into an account .....	468
981C	Regulations may deal with various matters relating to accounts maintained for the purposes of section 981B .....	469
981D	Money related to derivatives may be used for general margining etc. purposes .....	470
981E	Protection of money from attachment etc. ....	470
981F	Regulations may deal with how money to be dealt with if licensee ceases to be licensed etc. ....	471
981G	Account provider not liable merely because of licensee’s contravention .....	471
981H	Money to which Subdivision applies taken to be held in trust .....	471
<b>Subdivision B—Loan money</b>		472
982A	Money to which this Subdivision applies .....	472
982B	Obligation to pay money into an account .....	472

---

---

982C	Licensee to give client statement setting out terms of loan etc.....	473
982D	Permitted use of loan .....	473
<b>Subdivision C—Powers of Court</b>		474
983A	Court may freeze certain accounts.....	474
983B	Interim order freezing accounts.....	475
983C	Duty of person to whom order directed to make full disclosure.....	475
983D	Further orders and directions.....	475
983E	Power of Court to make order relating to payment of money.....	476
<b>Division 3—Dealing with other property of clients</b>		478
984A	Property to which Division applies.....	478
984B	How property to which this Division applies is to be dealt with.....	479
<b>Division 4—Special provisions relating to insurance</b>		480
985A	Definitions etc. ....	480
985B	Status of amounts paid to financial services licensees in respect of contracts of insurance.....	480
985C	Regulations may impose other requirements etc. if financial services licensee is not the insurer.....	481
985D	Financial services licensees etc. not to deal in general insurance products from unauthorised insurers etc.....	482
<b>Division 4A—Special provisions relating to margin lending facilities</b>		484
<b>Subdivision A—Responsible lending conduct for margin lending facilities</b>		484
985EA	Application of this Subdivision .....	484
985E	Requirements before issuing etc. margin lending facility.....	484
985F	Assessment of unsuitability of margin lending facility.....	485
985G	Reasonable inquiries etc. about the retail client.....	486
985H	When margin lending facility must be assessed as unsuitable.....	487
985J	Giving the retail client the assessment.....	488
985K	Unsuitable margin lending facilities.....	489
<b>Subdivision B—Notice of margin calls under margin lending facilities</b>		491
985L	Issue of margin lending facility must not be conditional on agreement to receive communications through agent.....	491
985M	Notification of margin calls.....	492

---

---

<b>Division 5—Obligations to report</b>	494
986A Reporting in relation to money to which Subdivision A or B of Division 2 applies or property to which Division 3 applies.....	494
986B Reporting in relation to dealings in derivatives .....	494
<b>Division 6—Financial records, statements and audit</b>	495
<b>Subdivision A—Preliminary</b>	495
987A Application of Division .....	495
<b>Subdivision B—Financial records of financial services licensees</b>	495
988A Obligation to keep financial records.....	495
988B Records to be kept so that profit and loss statements and balance sheet can be prepared and audited .....	496
988C Language of records .....	496
988D Location of records.....	496
988E Particular categories of information to be shown in records.....	497
988F Regulations may impose additional requirements .....	497
988G Records taken to be made with licensee’s authority .....	498
<b>Subdivision C—Financial statements of financial services licensees</b>	498
989A Meaning of <i>financial year</i> .....	498
989B Financial services licensee to prepare and lodge annual profit and loss statement and balance sheet .....	498
989C Requirements as to contents and applicable accounting principles .....	499
989CA Audit to be conducted in accordance with auditing standards .....	499
989D Time of lodgment .....	500
<b>Subdivision D—Appointment etc. of auditors</b>	500
990A Sections 990B to 990H not to apply to public companies .....	500
990B Appointment of auditor by licensee.....	501
990C When a person or firm is ineligible to act as auditor .....	502
990D Ineligible person or firm must not consent to act or disqualify themselves etc.....	503
990E Duration of appointment of auditors.....	503
990F Removal of auditors .....	504
990G Resignation of auditors—requirements for resignation .....	504
990H Resignation of auditors—when resignation takes effect.....	505
990I Auditor’s right of access to records, information etc. ....	505
990J Auditor’s fees and expenses .....	506
990K Auditor to report on certain matters.....	506
990L Qualified privilege for auditor etc. ....	507

---

---

<b>Division 7—Other rules about conduct</b>	509
991A Financial services licensee not to engage in unconscionable conduct .....	509
991B Financial services licensee to give priority to clients' orders .....	509
991C Regulations may deal with various matters relating to instructions to deal through licensed markets .....	510
991D Regulations may require records to be kept in relation to instructions to deal on licensed markets and foreign markets .....	511
991E Obligations of financial services licensee in relation to dealings with non-licensees .....	511
991F Dealings involving employees of financial services licensees .....	513
<b>Division 8—Miscellaneous</b>	515
992A Prohibition on hawking of certain financial products .....	515
992AA Prohibition of hawking of managed investment products .....	517
992B Exemptions and modifications by ASIC .....	518
992C Exemptions and modifications by regulations .....	519
<b>Division 9—Enforcement</b>	520
993A Overview .....	520
993B Offence of failing to pay client money into an account as required .....	520
993C Offence of failing to comply with requirements relating to client money account .....	521
993D Offence of failing to pay loan money into an account as required .....	521

---

## **Chapter 7—Financial services and markets**

### **Part 7.1—Preliminary**

#### **Division 1—Object of Chapter and outline of Chapter**

##### **760A Object of Chapter**

The main object of this Chapter is to promote:

- (a) confident and informed decision making by consumers of financial products and services while facilitating efficiency, flexibility and innovation in the provision of those products and services; and
- (b) fairness, honesty and professionalism by those who provide financial services; and
- (c) fair, orderly and transparent markets for financial products; and
- (d) the reduction of systemic risk and the provision of fair and effective services by clearing and settlement facilities.

##### **760B Outline of Chapter**

An outline of this Chapter is set out in the table below.

---

<b>Part-by-Part outline of Chapter 7</b>		
	<b>Part...</b>	<b>Covers...</b>
1	7.1	definitions of key concepts and of commonly occurring expressions
2	7.2	licensing of financial markets other matters relating to financial markets
2A	7.2A	supervision of financial markets
3	7.3	licensing of clearing and settlement facilities other matters relating to clearing and settlement facilities

---

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets  
**Part 7.1** Preliminary  
**Division 1** Object of Chapter and outline of Chapter

Section 760B

---

---

**Part-by-Part outline of Chapter 7**

---

	<b>Part...</b>	<b>Covers...</b>
4	7.4	limitation on ownership of certain licensees individuals who are disqualified from being involved in certain licensees
5	7.5	compensation regimes for financial markets
5A	7.5A	regulation of derivative transactions and derivative trade repositories
6	7.6	licensing of providers of financial services other related matters (e.g. restrictions on use of terminology; agreements with unlicensed persons relating to provision of financial services)
7	7.7	disclosure requirements for financial services licensees and their authorised representatives disclosure requirements for certain people who are not required to be licensed
7A	7.7A	best interests obligations charging ongoing fees to clients ban on conflicted remuneration and other remuneration
8	7.8	other conduct requirements for financial services licensees (e.g. dealing with client money and property; financial records, statements and audit) special provisions relating to insurance special provisions relating to margin lending facilities
9	7.9	financial product disclosure requirements other requirements relating to issue, sale and purchase of financial products
10	7.10	market misconduct and other prohibited conduct relating to financial products and services
11	7.11	title to, and transfer of, certain securities and other financial products
12	7.12	qualified privilege in certain situations other miscellaneous matters

---

**Division 2—Definitions****761A Definitions**

In this Chapter:

***able to be traded***, in relation to a market, includes (but is not limited to) admitted to quotation on the market.

***acquire***, in relation to a financial product, has a meaning affected by section 761E.

***annual turnover***, of a body corporate during a 12-month period, means the sum of the values of all the supplies that the body corporate, and any body corporate related to the body corporate, have made, or are likely to make, during the 12-month period, other than:

- (a) supplies made from any of those bodies corporate to any other of those bodies corporate; or
- (b) supplies that are input taxed; or
- (c) supplies that are not for consideration (and are not taxable supplies under section 72-5 of the *A New Tax System (Goods and Services Tax) Act 1999*); or
- (d) supplies that are not made in connection with an enterprise that the body corporate carries on; or
- (e) supplies that are not connected with Australia.

Expressions used in this definition that are also used in the *A New Tax System (Goods and Services Tax) Act 1999* have the same meaning as in that Act.

***arrangement*** means, subject to section 761B, a contract, agreement, understanding, scheme or other arrangement (as existing from time to time):

- (a) whether formal or informal, or partly formal and partly informal; and
- (b) whether written or oral, or partly written and partly oral; and

Section 761A

---

- (c) whether or not enforceable, or intended to be enforceable, by legal proceedings and whether or not based on legal or equitable rights.

**Australian CS facility licence** means a licence under section 824B that authorises a person to operate a clearing and settlement facility.

**Australian derivative trade repository licence**: see section 905B.

**Australian financial services licence** means a licence under section 913B that authorises a person who carries on a financial services business to provide financial services.

**Australian market licence** means a licence under section 795B that authorises a person to operate a financial market.

**authorised representative** of a financial services licensee means a person authorised in accordance with section 916A or 916B to provide a financial service or financial services on behalf of the licensee.

**basic deposit product** means a deposit product that is a facility in relation to which the following conditions are satisfied:

- (a) the terms applicable to the facility (the **governing terms**) do not permit the amount from time to time standing to the credit of the facility to be reduced otherwise than in consequence of one or more of the following:
- (i) a withdrawal, transfer or debit on the instruction of, or by authority of, the depositor, not being on account of entry fees, exit fees or charges for the management of the funds (but this does not exclude charges for the maintenance of the facility itself);
  - (ii) a payment of charges or duties on deposits into, or withdrawals from, the facility that are payable under a law of the Commonwealth or of a State or Territory;
  - (iii) a payment that a law of the Commonwealth, or of a State or Territory, requires to be made out of the facility;



Section 761A

---

- (iv) a payment that an order of a court requires to be made out of the facility;
  - (v) the exercise of a right to combine accounts;
  - (vi) the correction of an error;
  - (vii) any other circumstances specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; and
- (b) any return to be generated for the depositor on the amount from time to time standing to the credit of the facility is an amount that is set out in, or that is calculated by reference to a rate or rates that are set out in, the governing terms; and
- (c) either:
- (i) there is no minimum period before which funds cannot be withdrawn or transferred from the facility without a reduction in the return generated for the depositor; or
  - (ii) if there is such a period, it expires on or before the end of the period of 5 years starting on the day on which funds were first deposited in the facility; and
- (d) unless subparagraph (c)(ii) applies and the period referred to in that subparagraph expires on or before the end of the period of 2 years starting on the day on which funds were first deposited in the facility—funds are able to be withdrawn or transferred from the facility on the instruction of, or by authority of, the depositor:
- (i) without any prior notice to the ADI that makes the facility available; or
  - (ii) if the ADI that makes the facility available is included in a class of ADIs specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph—subject to a prior notice requirement that does not exceed the period specified in those regulations in relation to that class of ADIs; whether or not the withdrawal or transfer will attract a reduction in the return generated for the depositor as mentioned in subparagraph (c)(i); and
- (e) any other conditions specified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Section 761A

---

***binder*** means an authorisation given to a person by a financial services licensee who is an insurer to do either or both of the following:

- (a) enter into contracts that are risk insurance products on behalf of the insurer as insurer; or
- (b) deal with and settle, on behalf of the insurer, claims relating to risk insurance products against the insurer as insurer;

but does not include an authorisation of a kind referred to in paragraph (a) that is limited to effecting contracts of insurance by way of interim cover unless there is also in existence an authority given by the insurer to the person to enter into, on behalf of the insurer and otherwise than by way of interim cover, contracts of insurance.

***carried on in this jurisdiction***, in relation to a financial services business, has a meaning affected by section 911D.

***certificate cancellation provisions***, in relation to a prescribed CS facility, means the provisions of the facility's operating rules that deal with:

- (a) the cancellation of documents of title to financial products transferred through the facility; and
- (b) matters incidental to the cancellation of those documents.

***CGS depository interest*** means a depository interest, as defined in the *Commonwealth Inscribed Stock Act 1911*, that can be transferred through a licensed CS facility.

***class***, in relation to financial products or financial services, has a meaning affected by regulations made for the purposes of section 761CA.

***clearing and settlement facility*** has the meaning given by Division 6.

***clearing requirements*** (in relation to derivative transactions): see subsection 901A(7).

Section 761A

---

**CS facility licensee** means a person who holds an Australian CS facility licence.

**current LVR:**

- (a) in relation to a standard margin lending facility—has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(3); and
- (b) in relation to a non-standard margin lending facility—has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(6).

**custodial or depository service** that a person provides has the meaning given by section 766E.

**dealing** in a financial product has the meaning given by section 766C (and **deal** has a corresponding meaning).

**deposit product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(i).

**derivative** has the meaning given by section 761D.

**derivative trade data** means:

- (a) information about derivative transactions, or about positions relating to derivative transactions; or
- (b) information (including statistical data) that is created or derived from information referred to in paragraph (a).

**derivative trade repository** means a facility to which information about derivative transactions, or about positions relating to derivative transactions, can be reported (whether or not other information or data can also be reported to the facility).

**derivative trade repository licensee** means a person who holds an Australian derivative trade repository licence.

**derivative trade repository rules:** see subsection 903A(1).

**derivative transaction** means:

- (a) the entry into of an arrangement that is a derivative; or
- (b) the modification or termination of such an arrangement; or

Section 761A

---

- (c) the assignment, by a party to such an arrangement, of some or all of the party's rights and obligations under the arrangement; or
- (d) any other transaction that relates to a derivative and that is in a class of transactions prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this paragraph.

**derivative transaction rules**: see subsection 901A(1).

**dispose**, in relation to a financial product, includes terminate or close out the legal relationship that constitutes the financial product.

**disqualified individual** means an individual who is disqualified within the meaning given by section 853A.

**employer-sponsor** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**execution requirements** (in relation to derivative transactions): see subsection 901A(5).

**financial market** has the meaning given by Division 5.

**financial product** has the meaning given by Division 3.

Note: References in this Chapter to financial products have effect subject to particular express exclusions for particular purposes—see e.g. sections 1010A and 1074A.

**financial product advice** has the meaning given by section 766B.

**financial product advice law** means:

- (a) a provision of Chapter 7 that covers conduct relating to the provision of financial product advice (whether or not it also covers other conduct), but only in so far as it covers conduct relating to the provision of financial product advice; or
- (b) a provision of Chapter 9 as it applies in relation to a provision referred to in paragraph (a); or
- (c) a provision of Division 2 of Part 2 of the ASIC Act that covers conduct relating to the provision of financial product

Section 761A

---

advice (whether or not it also covers other conduct), but only in so far as it covers conduct relating to the provision of financial product advice; or

- (d) any other Commonwealth, State or Territory legislation that covers conduct relating to the provision of financial product advice (whether or not it also covers other conduct), but only in so far as it covers conduct relating to the provision of financial product advice.

***financial service*** has the meaning given by Division 4.

***financial services business*** means a business of providing financial services.

Note: The meaning of ***carry on*** a financial services business is affected by section 761C.

***Financial Services Guide*** means a Financial Services Guide required by section 941A or 941B to be given in accordance with Division 2 of Part 7.7.

***financial services law*** means:

- (a) a provision of this Chapter or of Chapter 5C, 5D, 6, 6A, 6B, 6C or 6D; or
- (b) a provision of Chapter 9 as it applies in relation to a provision referred to in paragraph (a); or
- (c) a provision of Division 2 of Part 2 of the ASIC Act; or
- (d) any other Commonwealth, State or Territory legislation that covers conduct relating to the provision of financial services (whether or not it also covers other conduct), but only in so far as it covers conduct relating to the provision of financial services; or
- (e) in relation to a financial services licensee that is a licensed trustee company (in addition to paragraphs (a) to (d))—any rule of common law or equity that covers conduct relating to the provision of financial services that are traditional trustee company services (whether or not it also covers other conduct), but only in so far as it covers conduct relating to the provision of such services.

Section 761A

---

**financial services licensee** means a person who holds an Australian financial services licence.

**foreign exchange contract** means a contract:

- (a) to buy or sell currency (whether Australian or not); or
- (b) to exchange one currency (whether Australian or not) for another (whether Australian or not).

**funeral benefit** means a benefit that consists of the provision of funeral, burial or cremation services, with or without the supply of goods connected with such services.

**further market-related advice** means advice to which subsection 946B(1) applies.

**general advice** has the meaning given by subsection 766B(4).

**general insurance product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(d).

**holder**, in relation to a financial product, means the person to whom the financial product was issued, or if it has (since issue) been disposed of to another person who has not themselves disposed of it, that other person (and **hold** has a corresponding meaning).

**insurance product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(d), (e) or (f).

**investment life insurance product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(f).

**involved in** a market licensee, CS facility licensee or derivative trade repository licensee, or in an applicant for such a licence, has the meaning given by section 853B.

**issue**, in relation to a financial product, has a meaning affected by section 761E.

**issuer**, in relation to a financial product, has a meaning affected by section 761E.

Section 761A

---

**kind**, in relation to financial products or financial services, has a meaning affected by regulations made for the purposes of section 761CA.

**licensed CS facility** means a clearing and settlement facility the operation of which is authorised by an Australian CS facility licence.

**licensed derivative trade repository** means a derivative trade repository the operation of which is authorised by an Australian derivative trade repository licence.

**licensed market** means a financial market the operation of which is authorised by an Australian market licence.

**licensed trustee company** has the same meaning as in Chapter 5D.

**life risk insurance product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(e).

**limit**, in relation to a margin lending facility, has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(11).

**listing rules** of a financial market, or proposed financial market, means any rules (however described) that are made by the operator of the market, or contained in the operator's constitution, and that deal with:

- (a) admitting entities to, or removing entities from, the market's official list, whether for the purpose of enabling financial products of those entities to be traded on the market or for other purposes; or
- (b) the activities or conduct of entities that are included on that list.

**lodge with ASIC**, when used in a provision of this Chapter in relation to which regulations made for the purposes of this definition state that the lodgment is to be in a prescribed form, means lodge with ASIC in a prescribed form.

Note: See section 350 for the meaning of **lodge in a prescribed form**.

Section 761A

---

***makes a market*** for a financial product has the meaning given by section 766D.

***managed investment product*** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(b).

***margin call:***

- (a) in relation to a standard margin lending facility—has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(4); and
- (b) in relation to a non-standard margin lending facility—has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(7); and
- (c) in relation to a facility that ASIC has declared to be a margin lending facility under subsection 761EA(8)—has the meaning given in the declaration.

***margin lending facility*** has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(1).

***market integrity rules*** means the rules made by ASIC under section 798G.

***market licensee*** means a person who holds an Australian market licence.

***non-standard margin lending facility*** has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(5).

***operated in this jurisdiction:***

- (a) in relation to a financial market, has a meaning affected by section 791D; and
- (b) in relation to a clearing and settlement facility, has a meaning affected by section 820D.

***operating rules:***

- (a) of a clearing and settlement facility, or proposed clearing and settlement facility, means any rules (however described) made by the operator of the facility, or contained in the operator's constitution, that deal with:
  - (i) the activities or conduct of the facility; or



Section 761A

---

(ii) the activities or conduct of persons in relation to the facility;

but does not include any such rules that deal with matters in respect of which licensed CS facilities must have written procedures under regulations made for the purposes of subsection 822A(2); or

(b) of a financial market, or proposed financial market, means any rules (however described), including the market's listing rules (if any), that are made by the operator of the market, or contained in the operator's constitution, and that deal with:

(i) the activities or conduct of the market; or

(ii) the activities or conduct of persons in relation to the market;

but does not include:

(iii) any such rules that deal with matters in respect of which licensed markets must have written procedures under regulations made for the purposes of subsection 793A(2); or

(iv) compensation rules within the meaning of Part 7.5.

***participant:***

(a) in relation to a clearing and settlement facility, means a person who is allowed to directly participate in the facility under the facility's operating rules and, when used in any of the following provisions, also includes a recognised affiliate in relation to the facility:

(i) paragraph 821B(2)(b);

(ii) section 822B;

(iii) subsection 915F(2);

(iv) any other provisions prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; and

(b) in relation to a financial market, means a person who is allowed to directly participate in the market under the market's operating rules and, when used in any of the following provisions, also includes a recognised affiliate in relation to the market:

Section 761A

---

- (i) paragraph 792B(2)(b);
- (ii) section 793B;
- (iii) section 883A;
- (iv) subsection 915F(2);
- (v) paragraphs 923B(3)(a) and (b);
- (vi) any other provisions prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph.

**person** has a meaning affected by section 761F (which deals with partnerships) and section 761FA (which deals with multiple trustees).

**personal advice** has the meaning given by subsection 766B(3).

**prescribed CS facility** means a licensed CS facility that is prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this definition.

**prescribed derivative trade repository** means a facility that is (or that is in a class that is) prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of paragraph 901A(6)(b).

**Product Disclosure Statement** means a Product Disclosure Statement:

- (a) required by section 1012A, 1012B, 1012C or 1012I to be given in accordance with Division 2 of Part 7.9; or
- (b) that section 1012H requires an issuer of a financial product to take reasonable steps to ensure is given to a new group member in accordance with Division 2 of Part 7.9.

Note: For the effect of the lodgment of a Replacement Product Disclosure Statement, see section 1014J.

**provide**, in relation to a financial product, has a meaning affected by section 761E.

**recognised affiliate**, in relation to a clearing and settlement facility or a financial market, means a person who is:

- (a) recognised by the operating rules of the facility or market as a suitably qualified affiliate of the facility or market; and

Section 761A

---

- (b) involved in the carrying on of a financial services business (including as an employee, director or in some other capacity).

**registrable superannuation entity** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**relevant personal circumstances**, in relation to advice provided or to be provided to a person in relation to a matter, are such of the person's objectives, financial situation and needs as would reasonably be considered to be relevant to the advice.

**Replacement Product Disclosure Statement** has the meaning given by section 1014H.

**reporting requirements** (in relation to derivative transactions): see subsection 901A(6).

**retail client** has the meaning given by sections 761G and 761GA.

**risk insurance product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(d) or (e).

**RSA product** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(h).

**security** means:

- (a) a share in a body; or
- (b) a debenture of a body; or
- (c) a legal or equitable right or interest in a security covered by paragraph (a) or (b); or
- (d) an option to acquire, by way of issue, a security covered by paragraph (a), (b) or (c); or
- (e) a right (whether existing or future and whether contingent or not) to acquire, by way of issue, the following under a rights issue:
  - (i) a security covered by paragraph (a), (b), (c) or (d);
  - (ii) an interest or right covered by paragraph 764A(1)(b) or (ba); or

Section 761A

---

(f) a CGS depository interest; or

(g) a simple corporate bonds depository interest;

but does not include an excluded security. In Part 7.11, it also includes a managed investment product.

***self-managed superannuation fund*** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

***standard margin lending facility*** has the meaning given by subsection 761EA(2).

***Statement of Advice*** means a Statement of Advice required by section 946A to be given in accordance with Subdivisions C and D of Division 3 of Part 7.7.

***superannuation entity*** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

***superannuation product*** means a financial product described in paragraph 764A(1)(g).

***Supplementary Financial Services Guide*** has the meaning given by section 943A.

***Supplementary Product Disclosure Statement*** has the meaning given by section 1014A.

***title document***, for a financial product, means a certificate or other document evidencing ownership of the financial product.

***traditional trustee company services*** has the same meaning as in Chapter 5D.

***trustee company*** has the same meaning as in Chapter 5D.

***wholesale client*** has the meaning given by section 761G.

**761B Meaning of *arrangement*—2 or more arrangements that together form a derivative or other financial product**

If:

- (a) an arrangement, when considered by itself, does not constitute a derivative, or some other kind of financial product; and
- (b) that arrangement, and one or more other arrangements, if they had instead been a single arrangement, would have constituted a derivative or other financial product; and
- (c) it is reasonable to assume that the parties to the arrangements regard them as constituting a single scheme;

the arrangements are, for the purposes of this Part, to be treated as if they together constituted a single arrangement.

**761C Meaning of *carry on* a financial services business**

In working out whether someone carries on a financial services business, Division 3 of Part 1.2 needs to be taken into account. However, paragraph 21(3)(e) does not apply for the purposes of this Chapter.

**761CA Meaning of *class* and *kind* of financial products and financial services**

The regulations may include provisions identifying, or providing for the identification of, what constitutes a *class* or *kind* of financial products or financial services for the purposes of a provision or provisions of this Chapter.

**761D Meaning of *derivative***

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, subject to subsections (2), (3) and (4), a *derivative* is an arrangement in relation to which the following conditions are satisfied:
  - (a) under the arrangement, a party to the arrangement must, or may be required to, provide at some future time consideration of a particular kind or kinds to someone; and

**Section 761D**

---

- (b) that future time is not less than the number of days, prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph, after the day on which the arrangement is entered into; and
  - (c) the amount of the consideration, or the value of the arrangement, is ultimately determined, derived from or varies by reference to (wholly or in part) the value or amount of something else (of any nature whatsoever and whether or not deliverable), including, for example, one or more of the following:
    - (i) an asset;
    - (ii) a rate (including an interest rate or exchange rate);
    - (iii) an index;
    - (iv) a commodity.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), anything declared by the regulations to be a derivative for the purposes of this section is a derivative for the purposes of this Chapter. A thing so declared is a derivative despite anything in subsections (3) and (4).
- (3) Subject to subsection (2), the following are not derivatives for the purposes of this Chapter even if they are covered by the definition in subsection (1):
- (a) an arrangement in relation to which subparagraphs (i), (ii) and (iii) are satisfied:
    - (i) a party has, or may have, an obligation to buy, and another party has, or may have, an obligation to sell, tangible property (other than Australian or foreign currency) at a price and on a date in the future; and
    - (ii) the arrangement does not permit the seller's obligations to be wholly settled by cash, or by set-off between the parties, rather than by delivery of the property; and
    - (iii) neither usual market practice, nor the rules of a licensed market or a licensed CS facility, permits the seller's obligations to be closed out by the matching up of the arrangement with another arrangement of the same kind under which the seller has offsetting obligations to buy;

Section 761E

---

- but only to the extent that the arrangement deals with that purchase and sale;
- (b) a contract for the future provision of services;
  - (c) anything that is covered by a paragraph of subsection 764A(1), other than paragraph (c) of that subsection;
  - (d) anything declared by the regulations not to be a derivative for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (4) Subject to subsection (2), an arrangement under which one party has an obligation to buy, and the other has an obligation to sell, property is not a derivative for the purposes of this Chapter merely because the arrangement provides for the consideration to be varied by reference to a general inflation index such as the Consumer Price Index.

**761E Meaning of *issued*, *issuer*, *acquire* and *provide* in relation to financial products***General*

- (1) This section defines when a financial product is ***issued*** to a person. It also defines who the ***issuer*** of a financial product is. If a financial product is issued to a person:
- (a) the person ***acquires*** the product from the issuer; and
  - (b) the issuer ***provides*** the product to the person.

Note: Some financial products can also be acquired from, or provided by, someone other than the issuer (e.g. on secondary trading in financial products).

*Issuing a financial product*

- (2) Subject to this section, a financial product is ***issued*** to a person when it is first issued, granted or otherwise made available to a person.
- (3) Subject to this section, a financial product specified in the table is issued to a person when the event specified for that product occurs:

Section 761E

---

<b>When particular financial products are issued</b>		
<b>Item</b>	<b>Financial product</b>	<b>Event</b>
1	superannuation product	the person becomes a member of the fund concerned
2	RSA product	the account concerned is opened in the person's name
3	derivative	the person enters into the legal relationship that constitutes the financial product
4	margin lending facility	the person enters into the legal relationship that constitutes the margin lending facility, as the client under the facility

- (3A) For the avoidance of doubt, none of the following are taken to give rise to the issue of a financial product to a person (the *client*):
- (a) the client making a further contribution to a superannuation fund of which the client is already a member;
  - (aa) an employer of the client making a further contribution, for the benefit of the client, to a superannuation fund of which the client is already a member;
  - (b) the client making a further deposit into an RSA maintained in the client's name;
  - (c) the client making a further payment under a life insurance investment product;
  - (d) the client making a further deposit into a deposit product;
  - (e) the client engaging in conduct specified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph in relation to a financial product already held by the client.

*Issuer of a financial product*

- (4) Subject to this section, the *issuer*, in relation to a financial product issued to a person (the *client*), is the person responsible for the obligations owed, under the terms of the facility that is the product:



Section 761E

---

- (a) to, or to a person nominated by, the client; or
- (b) if the product has been transferred from the client to another person and is now held by that person or another person to whom it has subsequently been transferred—to, or to a person nominated by, that person or that other person.

Note: For example, the issuer of a direct debit facility is the financial institution with which the account to be debited is held, rather than the persons to whom payments can be made using the facility.

- (5) Subject to subsection (7), each person who is a party to a financial product that:

- (a) is a derivative; and
- (b) is not entered into, or acquired, on a financial market;

is taken to be an issuer of the product.

Note 1: Under paragraph (1)(a), each person who is a party to the derivative will also acquire the financial product at the time of its issue as specified in subsection (3).

Note 2: Although each party to the derivative is an issuer, whether any particular party has disclosure or other obligations under this Chapter will depend on the circumstances (e.g. whether the issue occurs in the course of a business of issuing financial products and whether any of the other parties is a retail client).

- (6) Subject to subsection (7), the issuer of a financial product that:

- (a) is a derivative; and
- (b) is entered into, or acquired, on a financial market;

is taken to be:

- (c) if the product is entered into, or acquired, on the market through an arrangement made by a financial services licensee acting on behalf of another person—the financial services licensee; or
- (d) if the product is entered into, or acquired, on the market through an arrangement made by an authorised representative of a financial services licensee acting on behalf of another person (not being the licensee)—the financial services licensee; or
- (e) if neither paragraph (c) nor (d) applies—the market operator.

Section 761EA

---

- (7) The regulations may make provision determining all or any of the following for the purposes of this Chapter:
- (a) the meaning of *issue* (and/or related parts of speech, including *issuer*) in relation to a class of financial products;
  - (b) the meaning of *acquire* (and/or related parts of speech) in relation to a class of financial products;
  - (c) the meaning of *provide* (and/or related parts of speech) in relation to a class of financial products.

Regulations made for the purposes of this subsection have effect despite anything else in this section.

**761EA Meaning of *margin lending facility*, *margin call* and associated expressions**

- (1) A *margin lending facility* is:
- (a) a standard margin lending facility; or
  - (b) a non-standard margin lending facility; or
  - (c) a facility of a kind that has been declared by ASIC to be a margin lending facility under subsection (8);
- unless the facility is of a kind that has been declared by ASIC not to be a margin lending facility under subsection (9).

*Standard margin lending facilities*

- (2) A *standard margin lending facility* is a facility under the terms of which:
- (a) credit is, or may be, provided by a person (the *provider*) to a natural person (the *client*); and
  - (b) the credit provided is, or must be, applied wholly or partly:
    - (i) to acquire one or more financial products, or a beneficial interest in one or more financial products; or
    - (ii) to repay, wholly or partly, another credit facility (within the meaning of subparagraph 765A(1)(h)(i)), the credit provided under which was applied, wholly or partly, to acquire one or more financial products, or a beneficial interest in one or more financial products; and

Section 761EA

---

- (c) the credit provided is, or must be, secured by property (the ***secured property***); and
  - (d) the secured property consists, or must consist, wholly or partly of one or more marketable securities, or a beneficial interest in one or more marketable securities; and
  - (e) if the current LVR of the facility exceeds a ratio, percentage, proportion or level (however described) determined under the terms of the facility, then:
    - (i) the client becomes required to take action; or
    - (ii) the provider becomes entitled to take action; or
    - (iii) another person becomes required or entitled to take action;in accordance with the terms of the facility to reduce the current LVR of the facility.
- (3) The ***current LVR*** of a standard margin lending facility at a particular time is the ratio, percentage, proportion or level (however described) that:
- (a) is determined under the terms of the facility; and
  - (b) under the terms of the facility, represents a particular relationship between:
    - (i) the amount of the debt owing by the client, or credit provided by the provider, or both, under the facility at that time; and
    - (ii) the value of the secured property determined at that time under the terms of the facility.
- (4) A standard margin lending facility is in ***margin call*** when paragraph (2)(e) applies in relation to the facility.

*Non-standard margin lending facilities*

- (5) A ***non-standard margin lending facility*** is a facility under the terms of which:
- (a) a natural person (the ***client***) transfers one or more marketable securities, or a beneficial interest in one or more marketable

Section 761EA

---

- securities (the *transferred securities*) to another person (the *provider*); and
- (b) the provider transfers property to the client (the *transferred property*) as consideration or security for the transferred securities; and
  - (c) the transferred property is, or must be, applied wholly or partly to acquire one or more financial products, or a beneficial interest in one or more financial products; and
  - (d) the client has a right, in the circumstances determined under the terms of the facility, to be given marketable securities equivalent to the transferred securities; and
  - (e) if the current LVR of the facility exceeds a ratio, percentage, proportion or level (however described) determined under the terms of the facility, then:
    - (i) the client becomes required to take action; or
    - (ii) the provider becomes entitled to take action; or
    - (iii) another person becomes required or entitled to take action;in accordance with the terms of the facility to reduce the current LVR of the facility.
- (6) The *current LVR* of a non-standard margin lending facility at a particular time is the ratio, percentage, proportion or level (however described) that:
- (a) is determined under the terms of the facility; and
  - (b) under the terms of the facility, represents a particular relationship between:
    - (i) an amount determined at that time under the terms of the facility by reference to the value of the transferred property and any amount owing by the client to the provider; and
    - (ii) the value of the transferred securities determined at that time under the terms of the facility.
- (7) A non-standard margin lending facility is in *margin call* when paragraph (5)(e) applies in relation to the facility.

Section 761F

---

*ASIC declarations in relation to margin lending facilities*

- (8) ASIC may declare that a particular kind of facility is a **margin lending facility**. The declaration must give the meanings of **margin call** and **limit** in relation to that kind of facility.
- (9) ASIC may declare that a particular kind of facility is not a **margin lending facility**.
- (10) A declaration made under subsection (8) or (9):
  - (a) must be in writing; and
  - (b) is a legislative instrument for the purposes of the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

*Meaning of **limit** of a margin lending facility*

- (11) The **limit** of a margin lending facility:
  - (a) in relation to a standard margin lending facility—means the maximum amount of credit that may be provided by the provider to the client under the facility; and
  - (b) in relation to a non-standard margin lending facility—means the maximum amount of property that may be transferred by the provider to the client under the facility; and
  - (c) in relation to a facility of a kind that ASIC has declared to be a margin lending facility under subsection (8)—has the meaning given in the declaration.

**761F Meaning of *person*—generally includes a partnership**

- (1) This Chapter applies to a partnership as if the partnership were a person, but it applies with the following changes:
  - (a) obligations that would be imposed on the partnership are imposed instead on each partner, but may be discharged by any of the partners;
  - (b) any contravention of a provision of this Chapter, or a provision of this Act that relates to a requirement in a provision of this Chapter, that would otherwise be a contravention by the partnership is taken (whether for the

Section 761FA

---

purposes of criminal or civil liability) to have been a contravention by each partner who:

- (i) aided, abetted, counselled or procured the relevant act or omission; or
  - (ii) was in any way knowingly concerned in, or party to, the relevant act or omission (whether directly or indirectly and whether by any act or omission of the partner).
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter, a change in the composition of a partnership does not affect the continuity of the partnership.
- (3) Subsections (1) and (2) have effect subject to:
- (a) an express or implied contrary intention in a provision or provisions of this Chapter; and
  - (b) the regulations, which may exclude or modify the effect of those subsections in relation to specified provisions.

**761FA Meaning of *person*—generally includes multiple trustees**

- (1) This section applies in relation to a trust while the trust continues to have:
- (a) 2 or more trustees; or
  - (b) a single trustee who was a trustee of the trust at a time when it had 2 or more trustees.
- (2) Subject to subsections (3) and (4), during a period while this section applies to a trust, this Chapter applies to the trust as if the trustee or trustees of the trust from time to time during the period constituted a single legal entity (the *notional entity*) that remained the same for the duration of that period.
- Note: So, for example, while this section applies to a trust, a licence granted under this Chapter to the trustees of the trust will continue in force, despite a change in the persons who are the trustees.
- (3) During any period or part of a period while this section applies to a trust and the trust has 2 or more trustees, this Chapter applies to the trustees as mentioned in subsection (2), but it applies with the following changes:

Section 761FA

---

- (a) obligations that would be imposed on the notional entity are imposed instead on each trustee, but may be discharged by any of the trustees;
  - (b) any contravention of a provision of this Chapter, or a provision of this Act that relates to a requirement in a provision of this Chapter, that would otherwise be a contravention by the notional entity is taken (whether for the purposes of criminal or civil liability) to have been a contravention by each trustee who:
    - (i) aided, abetted, counselled or procured the relevant act or omission; or
    - (ii) was in any way knowingly concerned in, or party to, the relevant act or omission (whether directly or indirectly and whether by any act or omission of the trustee).
- (4) During any period or part of a period while this section applies to a trust and the trust has only one trustee, this Chapter applies to the trustee as mentioned in subsection (2), but it applies with the following changes:
- (a) obligations that would be imposed on the notional entity are imposed instead on that single trustee;
  - (b) any contravention of a provision of this Chapter, or a provision of this Act that relates to a requirement in a provision of this Chapter, that would otherwise be a contravention by the notional entity is taken (whether for the purposes of criminal or civil liability) to have been a contravention by that single trustee.
- (5) Subsections (2), (3) and (4) have effect subject to:
- (a) an express or implied contrary intention in a provision or provisions of this Chapter; and
  - (b) the regulations, which may exclude or modify the effect of those subsections in relation to specified provisions.

Section 761G

---

**761G Meaning of retail client and wholesale client**

*Providing a financial product or financial service to a person as a retail client*

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a financial product or a financial service is provided to a person as a **retail client** unless subsection (5), (6), (6A) or (7), or section 761GA, provides otherwise.

Note: The references in this section to providing a financial product to a person are not to be taken to imply that the provision of a financial product is not also the provision of a financial service (see the meaning of **dealing** in section 766C).

*Acquiring a financial product or financial service as a retail client*

- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person to whom a financial product or financial service is provided as a retail client is taken to acquire the product or service as a retail client.

*Disposing of a financial product as a retail client*

- (3) If a financial product is provided to a person as a retail client, any subsequent disposal of all or part of that product by the person is, for the purposes of this Chapter, a disposal by the person as a retail client.

*Wholesale clients*

- (4) For the purposes of this Chapter, a financial product or a financial service is provided to, or acquired by, a person as a **wholesale client** if it is not provided to, or acquired by, the person as a retail client.

*General insurance products*

- (5) For the purposes of this Chapter, if a financial product is, or a financial service provided to a person relates to, a general insurance product, the product or service is provided to the person as a retail client if:



- (a) either:
- (i) the person is an individual; or
  - (ii) the insurance product is or would be for use in connection with a small business (see subsection (12)); and
- (b) the general insurance product is:
- (i) a motor vehicle insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (ii) a home building insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (iii) a home contents insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (iv) a sickness and accident insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (v) a consumer credit insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (vi) a travel insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (vii) a personal and domestic property insurance product (as defined in the regulations); or
  - (viii) a kind of general insurance product prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph.

In any other cases, the provision to a person of a financial product that is, or a financial service that relates to, a general insurance product does not constitute the provision of a financial product or financial service to the person as a retail client.

*Superannuation products and RSA products*

- (6) For the purposes of this Chapter:
- (a) if a financial product provided to a person is a superannuation product or an RSA product, the product is provided to the person as a retail client; and
  - (aa) however, if a trustee of a pooled superannuation trust (within the meaning of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*) provides a financial product that is an interest in

Section 761G

---

- the trust to a person covered by subparagraph (c)(i), the product is not provided to the person as a retail client; and
- (b) if a financial service (other than the provision of a financial product) provided to a person who is not covered by subparagraph (c)(i) or (ii) relates to a superannuation product or an RSA product, the service is provided to the person as a retail client; and
- (c) if a financial service (other than the provision of a financial product) provided to a person who is:
- (i) the trustee of a superannuation fund, an approved deposit fund, a pooled superannuation trust or a public sector superannuation scheme (within the meaning of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*) that has net assets of at least \$10 million; or
  - (ii) an RSA provider (within the meaning of the *Retirement Savings Accounts Act 1997*);
- relates to a superannuation product or an RSA product, that does not constitute the provision of a financial service to the person as a retail client.

*Traditional trustee company services*

- (6A) For the purpose of this Chapter, if a financial service provided to a person is a traditional trustee company service, the service is provided to the person as a retail client unless regulations made for the purpose of this subsection provide otherwise.

*Other kinds of financial product*

- (7) For the purposes of this Chapter, if a financial product is not, or a financial service (other than a traditional trustee company service) provided to a person does not relate to, a general insurance product, a superannuation product or an RSA product, the product or service is provided to the person as a retail client unless one or more of the following paragraphs apply:
- (a) the price for the provision of the financial product, or the value of the financial product to which the financial service relates, equals or exceeds the amount specified in regulations

---

made for the purposes of this paragraph as being applicable in the circumstances (but see also subsection (10)); or

- (b) the financial product, or the financial service, is provided for use in connection with a business that is not a small business (see subsection (12));
- (c) the financial product, or the financial service, is not provided for use in connection with a business, and the person who acquires the product or service gives the provider of the product or service, before the provision of the product or service, a copy of a certificate given within the preceding 6 months by a qualified accountant (as defined in section 9) that states that the person:
  - (i) has net assets of at least the amount specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; or
  - (ii) has a gross income for each of the last 2 financial years of at least the amount specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph a year;
- (d) the person is a professional investor.

*Offence proceedings—defendant bears evidential burden in relation to matters referred to in paragraphs (7)(a) to (d)*

- (8) In a prosecution for an offence based on a provision of this Chapter, a defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in paragraphs (7)(a) to (d) as if those matters were exceptions for the purposes of subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

*Other proceedings relating to subsection (7) products—presumption in non-criminal proceedings of retail client unless contrary established*

- (9) If:
  - (a) it is alleged in a proceeding under this Chapter (not being a prosecution for an offence), or in any other proceeding (not being a prosecution for an offence) in respect of a matter arising under this Chapter, that a particular financial product

Section 761G

---

or financial service was provided to a person as a retail client;  
and

- (b) the product or the service is one to which subsection (7) applies;

it is presumed that the product or service was provided to the person as a retail client unless the contrary is established.

Note 1: There is no such presumption in relation to the provision of a product or service that is or relates to a general insurance product, a superannuation product or an RSA product. Whether or not such a product, or a service relating to such a product, was provided to a person as a retail client is to be resolved as provided in subsection (5) or (6), as the case requires.

Note 2: In criminal proceedings, a defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in paragraphs (7)(a) to (d) (see subsection (8)).

*Regulations and paragraph (7)(a)*

- (10) In addition to specifying an amount or amounts for the purposes of paragraph (7)(a), the regulations may do either or both of the following:
- (a) deal with how a price or value referred to in that paragraph is to be calculated, either generally or in relation to a specified class of financial products;
  - (b) modify the way in which that paragraph applies in particular circumstances.

*Regulations and paragraph (7)(c)*

- (10A) In addition to specifying amounts for the purposes of subparagraphs (7)(c)(i) and (ii), the regulations may do either or both of the following:
- (a) deal with how net assets referred to in subparagraph (7)(c)(i) are to be determined and valued, either generally or in specified circumstances;
  - (b) deal with how gross income referred to in subparagraph (7)(c)(ii) is to be calculated, either generally or in specified circumstances.

Section 761GA

---

*What happens if a package of general insurance products and other kinds of financial products is provided?*

(11) If:

(a) either:

(i) in a single transaction, 2 or more financial products are provided to a person; or

(ii) a single financial service provided to a person relates to 2 or more financial products; and

(b) one or more, but not all, of the financial products are general insurance products;

subsection (5) applies to the transaction or service so far as it relates to the general insurance products, and subsection (6) or (7), as the case requires, applies to the transaction or service so far as it relates to other financial products.

*Definition*

(12) In this section:

**small business** means a business employing less than:

(a) if the business is or includes the manufacture of goods—100 people; or

(b) otherwise—20 people.

### **761GA Meaning of *retail client*—sophisticated investors**

For the purposes of this Chapter, a financial product, or a financial service (other than a traditional trustee company service) in relation to a financial product, is not provided by one person to another person as a **retail client** if:

(a) the first person (the **licensee**) is a financial services licensee; and

(b) the financial product is not a general insurance product, a superannuation product or an RSA product; and

(c) the financial product or service is not provided for use in connection with a business; and

Section 761H

---

- (d) the licensee is satisfied on reasonable grounds that the other person (the *client*) has previous experience in using financial services and investing in financial products that allows the client to assess:
  - (i) the merits of the product or service; and
  - (ii) the value of the product or service; and
  - (iii) the risks associated with holding the product; and
  - (iv) the client's own information needs; and
  - (v) the adequacy of the information given by the licensee and the product issuer; and
- (e) the licensee gives the client before, or at the time when, the product or advice is provided a written statement of the licensee's reasons for being satisfied as to those matters; and
- (f) the client signs a written acknowledgment before, or at the time when, the product or service is provided that:
  - (i) the licensee has not given the client a Product Disclosure Statement; and
  - (ii) the licensee has not given the client any other document that would be required to be given to the client under this Chapter if the product or service were provided to the client as a retail client; and
  - (iii) the licensee does not have any other obligation to the client under this Chapter that the licensee would have if the product or service were provided to the client as a retail client.

**761H References to this Chapter include references to regulations or other instruments made for the purposes of this Chapter**

- (1) A reference in a provision of this Chapter to this Chapter, or to a particular provision or group of provisions of this Chapter, includes (unless a contrary intention appears) a reference to regulations, or other instruments, made for the purposes of this Chapter, or for the purposes of that provision or any of those provisions, as the case requires.

- (2) Subsection (1) has effect as if provisions in Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to matters dealt with in this Chapter were part of this Chapter.

## Division 3—What is a financial product?

### Subdivision A—Preliminary

#### 762A Overview of approach to defining what a financial product is

##### *General definition*

- (1) Subdivision B sets out a general definition of **financial product**. Subject to subsections (2) and (3), a facility is a financial product if it falls within that definition.

##### *Specific inclusions*

- (2) Subdivision C identifies, or provides for the identification of, kinds of facilities that, subject to subsection (3), are financial products (whether or not they are within the general definition).

##### *Overriding exclusions*

- (3) Subdivision D identifies, or provides for the identification of, kinds of facilities that are not financial products. These facilities are not financial products:
  - (a) even if they are within the general definition; and
  - (b) even if they are within a class of facilities identified as mentioned in subsection (2).

#### 762B What if a financial product is part of a broader facility?

If a financial product is a component of a facility that also has other components, this Chapter, in applying to the financial product, only applies in relation to the facility to the extent it consists of the component that is the financial product.

Note: So, e.g., Part 7.9 does not require disclosures to be made in relation to those other components.



**762C Meaning of *facility***

In this Division:

*facility* includes:

- (a) intangible property; or
- (b) an arrangement or a term of an arrangement (including a term that is implied by law or that is required by law to be included); or
- (c) a combination of intangible property and an arrangement or term of an arrangement.

Note: 2 or more arrangements may be taken to constitute a single arrangement—see section 761B.

**Subdivision B—The general definition****763A General definition of *financial product***

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a ***financial product*** is a facility through which, or through the acquisition of which, a person does one or more of the following:
  - (a) makes a financial investment (see section 763B);
  - (b) manages financial risk (see section 763C);
  - (c) makes non-cash payments (see section 763D).This has effect subject to section 763E.
- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter, a particular facility that is of a kind through which people commonly make financial investments, manage financial risks or make non-cash payments is a ***financial product*** even if that facility is acquired by a particular person for some other purpose.
- (3) A facility does not cease to be a financial product merely because:
  - (a) the facility has been acquired by a person other than the person to whom it was originally issued; and
  - (b) that person, in acquiring the product, was not making a financial investment or managing a financial risk.

Section 763B

---

**763B When a person makes a financial investment**

For the purposes of this Chapter, a person (the *investor*) *makes a financial investment* if:

- (a) the investor gives money or money's worth (the *contribution*) to another person and any of the following apply:
  - (i) the other person uses the contribution to generate a financial return, or other benefit, for the investor;
  - (ii) the investor intends that the other person will use the contribution to generate a financial return, or other benefit, for the investor (even if no return or benefit is in fact generated);
  - (iii) the other person intends that the contribution will be used to generate a financial return, or other benefit, for the investor (even if no return or benefit is in fact generated); and
- (b) the investor has no day-to-day control over the use of the contribution to generate the return or benefit.

Note 1: Examples of actions that constitute making a financial investment under this subsection are:

- (a) a person paying money to a company for the issue to the person of shares in the company (the company uses the money to generate dividends for the person and the person, as a shareholder, does not have control over the day-to-day affairs of the company); or
- (b) a person contributing money to acquire interests in a registered scheme from the responsible entity of the scheme (the scheme uses the money to generate financial or other benefits for the person and the person, as a member of the scheme, does not have day-to-day control over the operation of the scheme).

Note 2: Examples of actions that do not constitute making a financial investment under this subsection are:

- (a) a person purchasing real property or bullion (while the property or bullion may generate a return for the person, it is not a return generated by the use of the purchase money by another person); or
- (b) a person giving money to a financial services licensee who is to use it to purchase shares for the person (while the purchase of the shares will be a financial investment made by the person, the

---

**Section 763C**

mere act of giving the money to the licensee will not of itself constitute making a financial investment).

**763C When a person *manages financial risk***

For the purposes of this Chapter, a person *manages financial risk* if they:

- (a) manage the financial consequences to them of particular circumstances happening; or
- (b) avoid or limit the financial consequences of fluctuations in, or in the value of, receipts or costs (including prices and interest rates).

Note 1: Examples of actions that constitute managing a financial risk are:

- (a) taking out insurance; or
- (b) hedging a liability by acquiring a futures contract or entering into a currency swap.

Note 2: An example of an action that does not constitute managing a financial risk is employing a security firm (while that is a way of managing the risk that thefts will happen, it is not a way of managing the financial consequences if thefts do occur).

**763D When a person *makes non-cash payments***

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person *makes non-cash payments* if they make payments, or cause payments to be made, otherwise than by the physical delivery of Australian or foreign currency in the form of notes and/or coins.

Note: Examples of actions that constitute making non-cash payments are:

- (a) making payments by means of a facility for direct debit of a deposit account; or
- (b) making payments by means of a facility for the use of cheques; or
- (c) making payments by means of a purchased payment facility within the meaning of the Payment Systems (Regulation) Act 1998, such as a smart card; or
- (d) making payments by means of traveller's cheques (whether denominated in Australian or foreign currency).

Section 763E

---

- (2) For the purposes of this Chapter, the following are not **making non-cash payments**, even if they might otherwise be covered by subsection (1):
- (a) making payments by means of a facility in relation to which one of the following applies:
    - (i) there is only one person to whom payments can be made by means of the facility;
    - (ii) the facility is, or is of a kind, specified in the regulations as being a facility that is not to be covered by this section because of restrictions relating to the number of people to whom payments can be made by means of the facility, or relating to the number of persons who can use the facility to make payments;
  - (b) making payments by means of:
    - (i) a letter of credit from a financial institution; or
    - (ii) a cheque drawn by a financial institution on itself; or
    - (iii) a guarantee given by a financial institution.

**763E What if a financial product is only incidental?**

- (1) If:
- (a) something (the **incidental product**) that, but for this section, would be a financial product because of this Subdivision is:
    - (i) an incidental component of a facility that also has other components; or
    - (ii) a facility that is incidental to one or more other facilities; and
  - (b) it is reasonable to assume that the main purpose of:
    - (i) if subparagraph (a)(i) applies—the facility referred to in that subparagraph, when considered as a whole; or
    - (ii) if subparagraph (a)(ii) applies—the incidental product, and the other facilities referred to in that subparagraph, when considered as a whole;is not a financial product purpose;

the incidental product is not a financial product because of this Subdivision (however, it may still be a financial product because of Subdivision C).

(2) In this section:

***financial product purpose*** means a purpose of:

- (a) making a financial investment; or
- (b) managing financial risk; or
- (c) making non-cash payments.

### **Subdivision C—Specific inclusions**

#### **764A Specific things that are financial products (subject to Subdivision D)**

- (1) Subject to Subdivision D, the following are ***financial products*** for the purposes of this Chapter:
- (a) a security;
  - (b) any of the following in relation to a registered scheme:
    - (i) an interest in the scheme;
    - (ii) a legal or equitable right or interest in an interest covered by subparagraph (i);
    - (iii) an option to acquire, by way of issue, an interest or right covered by subparagraph (i) or (ii);
  - (ba) any of the following in relation to a managed investment scheme that is not a registered scheme, other than a scheme (whether or not operated in this jurisdiction) in relation to which none of paragraphs 601ED(1)(a), (b) and (c) are satisfied:
    - (i) an interest in the scheme;
    - (ii) a legal or equitable right or interest in an interest covered by subparagraph (i);
    - (iii) an option to acquire, by way of issue, an interest or right covered by subparagraph (i) or (ii);
  - (c) a derivative;

Section 764A

---

- (d) a contract of insurance that is not a life policy, or a sinking fund policy, within the meaning of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*, but not including such a contract of insurance:
  - (i) to the extent that it provides for a benefit to be provided by an association of employees that is registered as an organisation, or recognised, under the *Fair Work (Registered Organisations) Act 2009* for a member of the association or a dependant of a member; or
  - (ii) to the extent that it provides for benefits, pensions or payments described in paragraph 11(3)(c) of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*; or
  - (iii) to the extent that it provides for the provision of a funeral benefit; or
  - (iv) issued by an employer to an employee of the employer;
- (e) a life policy, or a sinking fund policy, within the meaning of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*, that is a contract of insurance, but not including such a policy:
  - (i) to the extent that it provides for a benefit to be provided by an association of employees that is registered as an organisation, or recognised, under the *Fair Work (Registered Organisations) Act 2009* for a member of the association or a dependant of a member; or
  - (ii) to the extent that it provides for benefits, pensions or payments described in paragraph 11(3)(c) of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*; or
  - (iii) to the extent that it provides for the provision of a funeral benefit; or
  - (iv) issued by an employer to an employee of the employer;
- (f) a life policy, or a sinking fund policy, within the meaning of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*, that is not a contract of insurance, but not including such a policy:
  - (i) to the extent that it provides for a benefit to be provided by an association of employees that is registered as an organisation, or recognised, under the *Fair Work (Registered Organisations) Act 2009* for a member of the association or a dependant of a member; or

Section 764A

---

- (ii) to the extent that it provides for benefits, pensions or payments described in paragraph 11(3)(c) of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*; or
- (iii) to the extent that it provides for the provision of a funeral benefit; or
- (iv) issued by an employer to an employee of the employer;
- (g) a superannuation interest within the meaning of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*;
- (h) an RSA (retirement savings account) within the meaning of the *Retirement Savings Accounts Act 1997*;
- (i) any deposit-taking facility made available by an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*) in the course of its banking business (within the meaning of that Act), other than an RSA (RSAs are covered by paragraph (h));
- (j) a debenture, stock or bond issued or proposed to be issued by a government;
- (k) a foreign exchange contract that is not:
  - (i) a derivative (derivatives are covered by paragraph (c)); or
  - (ii) a contract to exchange one currency (whether Australian or not) for another that is to be settled immediately;
- (ka) an Australian carbon credit unit;
- (kb) an eligible international emissions unit;
- (l) a margin lending facility;
- (m) anything declared by the regulations to be a financial product for the purposes of this section.

Note: Even though something is expressly excluded from one of these paragraphs, it may still be a financial product (subject to Subdivision D) either because:

- (a) it is covered by another of these paragraphs; or
- (b) it is covered by the general definition in Subdivision B.

(1A) If a single contract of insurance provides 2 or more kinds of cover, paragraph (1)(d) applies separately in relation to that contract, in relation to each of those kinds of cover, as if the contract only provided that kind of cover.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.1** Preliminary

**Division 3** What is a financial product?

**Section 765A**

---

Note: Because of this subsection (including as it is affected by subsection (1B)), a single contract of insurance may constitute 2 or more separate general insurance products.

- (1B) If a contract of insurance provides a kind of cover in relation to 2 or more kinds of asset, subsection (1A) applies to the contract, in relation to each of those kinds of asset, as if the cover provided by the contract in relation to that kind of asset constituted a separate kind of cover.
- (2) For the purpose of paragraphs (1)(d), (e) and (f) and subsections (1A) and (1B), ***contract of insurance*** includes:
- (a) a contract that would ordinarily be regarded as a contract of insurance even if some of its provisions are not by way of insurance; and
  - (b) a contract that includes provisions of insurance in so far as those provisions are concerned, even if the contract would not ordinarily be regarded as a contract of insurance.

**Subdivision D—Specific exclusions**

**765A Specific things that are not financial products**

- (1) Despite anything in Subdivision B or Subdivision C, the following are not ***financial products*** for the purposes of this Chapter:
- (a) an excluded security;
  - (b) an undertaking by a body corporate to pay money to a related body corporate;
  - (c) health insurance provided as part of a health insurance business (as defined in Division 121 of the *Private Health Insurance Act 2007*);
  - (ca) insurance provided as part of a health-related business (as defined by section 131-15 of that Act) that is conducted through a health benefits fund (as defined by section 131-10 of that Act);
  - (d) insurance provided by the Commonwealth;
  - (e) State insurance or Northern Territory insurance, including insurance entered into by:



- (i) a State or the Northern Territory; and
  - (ii) some other insurer;
- as joint insurers;
- (f) insurance entered into by the Export Finance and Insurance Corporation, other than a short-term insurance contract within the meaning of the *Export Finance and Insurance Corporation Act 1991*;
  - (g) reinsurance;
  - (h) any of the following:
    - (i) a credit facility within the meaning of the regulations (other than a margin lending facility);
    - (ii) a facility for making non-cash payments (see section 763D), if payments made using the facility will all be debited to a credit facility covered by subparagraph (i);
  - (i) a facility:
    - (i) that is an approved RTGS system within the meaning of the *Payment Systems and Netting Act 1998*; or
    - (ii) for the transmission and reconciliation of non-cash payments (see section 763D), and the establishment of final positions, for settlement through an approved RTGS system within the meaning of the *Payment Systems and Netting Act 1998*;
  - (j) a facility that is a designated payment system for the purposes of the *Payment Systems (Regulation) Act 1998*;
  - (k) a facility for the exchange and settlement of non-cash payments (see section 763D) between providers of non-cash payment facilities;
  - (l) a facility that is:
    - (i) a financial market; or
    - (ii) a clearing and settlement facility; or
    - (iii) a payment system operated as part of a clearing and settlement facility; or
    - (iv) a derivative trade repository;

Section 765A

---

- (m) a contract to exchange one currency (whether Australian or not) for another that is to be settled immediately;
- (n) so much of an arrangement as is not a derivative because of paragraph 761D(3)(a);
- (p) an arrangement that is not a derivative because of subsection 761D(4);
- (q) an interest in a superannuation fund of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
- (r) any of the following:
  - (i) an interest in something that is not a managed investment scheme because of paragraph (c), (e), (f), (k), (l) or (m) of the definition of *managed investment scheme* in section 9;
  - (ii) a legal or equitable right or interest in an interest covered by subparagraph (i);
  - (iii) an option to acquire, by way of issue, an interest or right covered by subparagraph (i) or (ii);
- (s) any of the following in relation to a managed investment scheme (whether or not operated in this jurisdiction) in relation to which none of paragraphs 601ED(1)(a), (b) and (c) are satisfied and that is not a registered scheme:
  - (i) an interest in the scheme;
  - (ii) a legal or equitable right or interest in an interest covered by subparagraph (i);
  - (iii) an option to acquire, by way of issue, an interest or right covered by subparagraph (i) or (ii);
- (t) a deposit-taking facility that is, or is used for, State banking;
- (u) a benefit provided by an association of employees that is registered as an organisation, or recognised, under the *Fair Work (Registered Organisations) Act 2009* for a member of the association or a dependant of a member;
- (v) either of the following:
  - (i) a contract of insurance; or
  - (ii) a life policy or a sinking fund policy, within the meaning of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*, that is not a contract of insurance;

Section 765A

---

- issued by an employer to an employee of the employer;
- (w) a funeral benefit;
  - (x) physical equipment or physical infrastructure by which something else that is a financial product is provided;
  - (y) a facility, interest or other thing declared by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection not to be a financial product;
  - (z) a facility, interest or other thing declared by ASIC under subsection (2) not to be a financial product.
- (2) ASIC may declare that a specified facility, interest or other thing is not a financial product for the purposes of this Chapter. The declaration must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.

## Division 4—When does a person provide a financial service?

### 766A When does a person provide a *financial service*?

#### *General*

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, subject to paragraph (2)(b), a person provides a ***financial service*** if they:
- (a) provide financial product advice (see section 766B); or
  - (b) deal in a financial product (see section 766C); or
  - (c) make a market for a financial product (see section 766D); or
  - (d) operate a registered scheme; or
  - (e) provide a custodial or depository service (see section 766E); or
  - or
  - (f) engage in conduct of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

#### *Provision of traditional trustee company services by trustee company*

- (1A) Subject to paragraph (2)(b), the provision by a trustee company of a traditional trustee company service constitutes the provision, by the company, of a ***financial service***.

Note: Trustee companies may also provide other kinds of financial service mentioned in subsection (1).

- (1B) The regulations may, in relation to a traditional trustee company service of a particular class, prescribe the person or persons to whom a service of that class is taken to be provided. This subsection does not limit (and is not limited by) subsection (2).

Note: A traditional trustee company service is provided to a person as a retail client unless regulations provide otherwise (see subsection 761G(6A)).

*Regulations may deal with various matters*

- (2) The regulations may set out:
- (a) the circumstances in which persons facilitating the provision of a financial service (for example, by publishing information) are taken also to provide that service; or
  - (b) the circumstances in which persons are taken to provide, or are taken not to provide, a financial service.

*Exception for work ordinarily done by clerks or cashiers*

- (3) To avoid doubt, a person's conduct is not the provision of a **financial service** if it is done in the course of work of a kind ordinarily done by clerks or cashiers.

*Meaning of operating a registered scheme*

- (4) For the purposes of this section, a person is not **operating a registered scheme** merely because:
- (a) they are acting as an agent or employee of another person; or
  - (b) they are taking steps to wind up the scheme.

**766B Meaning of financial product advice**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, **financial product advice** means a recommendation or a statement of opinion, or a report of either of those things, that:
- (a) is intended to influence a person or persons in making a decision in relation to a particular financial product or class of financial products, or an interest in a particular financial product or class of financial products; or
  - (b) could reasonably be regarded as being intended to have such an influence.
- (1A) However, subject to subsection (1B), the provision or giving of an exempt document or statement does not constitute the provision of financial product advice.

Section 766B

---

- (1B) Subsection (1A) does not apply for the purpose of determining whether a recommendation or statement of opinion made by an outside expert, or a report of such a recommendation or statement of opinion, that is included in an exempt document or statement is financial product advice provided by the outside expert.
- (2) There are 2 types of financial product advice: personal advice and general advice.
- (3) For the purposes of this Chapter, **personal advice** is financial product advice that is given or directed to a person (including by electronic means) in circumstances where:
- (a) the provider of the advice has considered one or more of the person's objectives, financial situation and needs (otherwise than for the purposes of compliance with the *Anti-Money Laundering and Counter-Terrorism Financing Act 2006* or with regulations, or AML/CTF Rules, under that Act); or
  - (b) a reasonable person might expect the provider to have considered one or more of those matters.
- (4) For the purposes of this Chapter, **general advice** is financial product advice that is not personal advice.
- (5) The following advice is not financial product advice:
- (a) advice given by a lawyer in his or her professional capacity, about matters of law, legal interpretation or the application of the law to any facts;
  - (b) except as may be prescribed by the regulations—any other advice given by a lawyer in the ordinary course of activities as a lawyer, that is reasonably regarded as a necessary part of those activities;
  - (c) except as may be prescribed by the regulations—advice given by a registered tax agent or BAS agent (within the meaning of the *Tax Agent Services Act 2009*), that is given in the ordinary course of activities as such an agent and that is reasonably regarded as a necessary part of those activities.
- (6) If:

- (a) in response to a request made by a person (the *inquirer*) to another person (the *provider*), the provider tells the inquirer the cost, or an estimate of the likely cost, of a financial product (for example, an insurance product); and
- (b) that cost or estimate is worked out, or said by the provider to be worked out, by reference to a valuation of an item (for example, a house or car to which an insurance policy would relate), being a valuation that the provider suggests or recommends to the inquirer;

the acts of telling the inquirer the cost, or estimated cost, and suggesting or recommending the valuation, do not, of themselves, constitute the making of a recommendation (or the provision of any other kind of financial product advice) relating to the financial product.

(7) If:

- (a) in response to a request made by a person (the *inquirer*) to another person (the *provider*), the provider tells the inquirer information about:
  - (i) the cost of a financial product; or
  - (ii) the rate of return on a financial product; or
  - (iii) any other matter identified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; and
- (b) the request could also have been complied with (but was not also so complied with) by telling the inquirer equivalent information about one or more other financial products;

the act of telling the inquirer the information does not, of itself, constitute the making of a recommendation (or the provision of any other kind of financial product advice) in relation to the financial product referred to in paragraph (a).

- (8) Subsections (5), (6) and (7) are not intended to affect, in any way, the determination of whether situations not covered by those subsections do, or do not, constitute the provision of financial product advice.

Section 766C

---

(9) In this section:

**exempt document or statement** means:

- (a) a document prepared, or a statement given, in accordance with requirements of this Chapter, other than:
  - (i) a Statement of Advice; or
  - (ii) a document or statement of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; or
- (b) any other document or statement of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

**outside expert**, in relation to an exempt document or statement, means an expert who is not:

- (a) the person by whom, or on whose behalf, the exempt document or statement was prepared; or
- (b) an employee or director of that person.

**766C Meaning of dealing**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, the following conduct (whether engaged in as principal or agent) constitutes **dealing** in a financial product:
  - (a) applying for or acquiring a financial product;
  - (b) issuing a financial product;
  - (c) in relation to securities or managed investment interests—underwriting the securities or interests;
  - (d) varying a financial product;
  - (e) disposing of a financial product.
- (2) Arranging for a person to engage in conduct referred to in subsection (1) is also **dealing** in a financial product, unless the actions concerned amount to providing financial product advice.
- (3) A person is taken not to **deal** in a financial product if the person deals in the product on their own behalf (whether directly or through an agent or other representative), unless:



- (a) the person is an issuer of financial products; and
  - (b) the dealing is in relation to one or more of those products.
- (3A) For the purposes of subsection (3), a person (the **agent**) who deals in a product as an agent or representative of another person (the **principal**) is not taken to deal in the product on the agent's own behalf, even if that dealing, when considered as a dealing by the principal, is a dealing by the principal on the principal's own behalf.
- (4) Also, a transaction entered into by a person who is, or who encompasses or constitutes in whole or in part, any of the following entities:
- (a) a government or local government authority;
  - (b) a public authority or instrumentality or agency of the Crown;
  - (c) a body corporate or an unincorporated body;
- is taken not to be **dealing** in a financial product by that person if the transaction relates only to:
- (d) securities of that entity; or
  - (e) if the entity is a government—debentures, stocks or bonds issued or proposed to be issued by that government.
- (5) Paragraph (4)(c) does not apply if the entity:
- (a) carries on a business of investment in securities, interests in land or other investments; and
  - (b) in the course of carrying on that business, invests funds subscribed, whether directly or indirectly, after an offer or invitation to the public (within the meaning of section 82) made on terms that the funds subscribed would be invested.
- (6) A transaction entered into by a sub-underwriter of an issue of securities that relates only to the sub-underwriting is taken not to be **dealing** in a financial product.
- (7) The regulations may prescribe conduct that is taken to be, or not to be, **dealing** in a financial product. Regulations made for the purposes of this subsection have effect despite anything else in this section.

Section 766D

---

**766D Meaning of *makes a market* for a financial product**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person ***makes a market*** for a financial product if:
  - (a) either through a facility, at a place or otherwise, the person regularly states the prices at which they propose to acquire or dispose of financial products on their own behalf; and
  - (b) other persons have a reasonable expectation that they will be able to regularly effect transactions at the stated prices; and
  - (c) the actions of the person do not, or would not if they happened through a facility or at a place, constitute operating a financial market because of the effect of paragraph 767A(2)(a).
- (2) Paragraph (1)(a) does not apply to a person stating prices at which they propose to acquire or dispose of financial products if:
  - (a) the person is the issuer of the products; and
  - (b) the products are superannuation products, managed investment products or financial products referred to in paragraph 764A(1)(ba) (which relates to unregistered managed investment schemes).

**766E Meaning of provide a custodial or depository service**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a person (the ***provider***) provides a ***custodial or depository service*** to another person (the ***client***) if, under an arrangement between the provider and the client, or between the provider and another person with whom the client has an arrangement, (whether or not there are also other parties to any such arrangement), a financial product, or a beneficial interest in a financial product, is held by the provider in trust for, or on behalf of, the client or another person nominated by the client.
- (2) The following provisions apply in relation to a custodial or depository service:
  - (a) subject to paragraph (b), for the purposes of this Chapter, the time at which a custodial or depository service is provided is the time when the financial product or beneficial interest

concerned is first held by the provider as mentioned in subsection (1);

- (b) for the purposes of Part 7.6, and of any other provisions of this Act prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph, the continued holding of the financial product or beneficial interest concerned by the provider as mentioned in subsection (1) also constitutes the provision of a custodial or depository service.

Note: Because of paragraph (a) (subject to regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (b)), the requirements of Part 7.7 relating to financial services disclosure need only be complied with before the product or interest is first held by the provider. However, because of paragraph (b), the provider will be subject to the licensing and related requirements of Part 7.6 for so long as they continue to hold the product or interest.

- (3) However, the following conduct does not constitute providing a ***custodial or depository service***:
- (a) the operation of a clearing and settlement facility;
  - (b) the operation of a registered scheme, or the holding of the assets of a registered scheme;
  - (c) the operation of a regulated superannuation fund, an approved deposit fund or a pooled superannuation trust (within the meaning of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*) by the trustees of that fund or trust;
  - (ca) the operation of a statutory fund by a life company (within the meaning of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*);
  - (d) the provision of services to a related body corporate;
  - (e) any other conduct of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

## Division 5—What is a financial market?

### 767A What is a *financial market*?

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a *financial market* is a facility through which:
  - (a) offers to acquire or dispose of financial products are regularly made or accepted; or
  - (b) offers or invitations are regularly made to acquire or dispose of financial products that are intended to result or may reasonably be expected to result, directly or indirectly, in:
    - (i) the making of offers to acquire or dispose of financial products; or
    - (ii) the acceptance of such offers.
- (2) However, the following conduct does not constitute operating a *financial market* for the purposes of this Chapter:
  - (a) a person making or accepting offers or invitations to acquire or dispose of financial products on the person's own behalf, or on behalf of one party to the transaction only, unless the regulations specify circumstances in which such conduct does constitute operating a financial market and the person's conduct occurs in circumstances so specified;
  - (b) conducting treasury operations between related bodies corporate;
  - (c) a person, being the holder of a licence under an Australian law relating to the licensing of auctioneers, conducting an auction of forfeited shares;
  - (d) any other conduct of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

## **Division 6—What is a clearing and settlement facility?**

### **768A What is a clearing and settlement facility?**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a ***clearing and settlement facility*** is a facility that provides a regular mechanism for the parties to transactions relating to financial products to meet obligations to each other that:
- (a) arise from entering into the transactions; and
  - (b) are of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Example 1: A facility that provides a regular mechanism for stockbrokers to pay for the shares they buy and to be paid for the shares they sell, and for records of those transactions to be processed to facilitate registration of the new ownership of the shares, would be a ***clearing and settlement facility*** (assuming that the relevant obligations are of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this section).

Example 2: A facility that provides a regular mechanism for registering trade in derivatives on a futures market and that enables the calculation of payments that market participants owe by way of margins would also be a ***clearing and settlement facility*** (assuming that the relevant obligations are of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this section).

- (2) However, the following conduct does not constitute operating a ***clearing and settlement facility*** for the purposes of this Chapter:
- (a) an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*) acting in the ordinary course of its banking business;
  - (b) a person acting on their own behalf, or on behalf of one party to a transaction only;
  - (c) a person who provides financial services to another person dealing with the other person's accounts in the ordinary course of the first person's business activities;
  - (d) the actions of a participant in a clearing and settlement facility who has taken on the delivery or payment obligations, in relation to a particular financial product, of

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.1** Preliminary

**Division 6** What is a clearing and settlement facility?

**Section 768A**

---

another person who is a party to a transaction relating to a financial product;

- (e) conducting treasury operations between related bodies corporate;
- (h) operating a facility for the exchange and settlement of non-cash payments (see section 763D) between providers of non-cash payment facilities;
- (i) any other conduct of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

## **Division 7—General provisions relating to civil and criminal liability**

### **769A Part 2.5 of *Criminal Code* does not apply**

Despite section 1308A, Part 2.5 of the *Criminal Code* does not apply to any offences based on the provisions of this Chapter.

Note: For the purposes of offences based on provisions of this Chapter, corporate criminal responsibility is dealt with by section 769B, rather than by Part 2.5 of the *Criminal Code*.

### **769B People are generally responsible for the conduct of their agents, employees etc.**

- (1) Subject to subsections (7) and (8), conduct engaged in on behalf of a body corporate:
  - (a) by a director, employee or agent of the body, within the scope of the person's actual or apparent authority; or
  - (b) by any other person at the direction or with the consent or agreement (whether express or implied) of a director, employee or agent of the body, where the giving of the direction, consent or agreement is within the scope of the actual or apparent authority of the director, employee or agent;is taken, for the purposes of a provision of this Chapter, or a proceeding under this Chapter, to have been engaged in also by the body corporate.
- (2) Conduct engaged in by a person (for example, the giving of money or property) in relation to:
  - (a) a director, employee or agent of a body corporate, acting within the scope of their actual or apparent authority; or
  - (b) any other person acting at the direction or with the consent or agreement (whether express or implied) of a director, employee or agent of a body corporate, where the giving of the direction, consent or agreement is within the scope of the

Section 769B

---

actual or apparent authority of the director, employee or agent;

is taken, for the purposes of a provision of this Chapter, or a proceeding under this Chapter, to have been engaged in also in relation to the body corporate.

(3) If, in a proceeding under this Chapter in respect of conduct engaged in by a body corporate, it is necessary to establish the state of mind of the body, it is sufficient to show that a director, employee or agent of the body, being a director, employee or agent by whom the conduct was engaged in within the scope of the person's actual or apparent authority, had that state of mind. For this purpose, a person acting as mentioned in paragraph (1)(b) is taken to be an agent of the body corporate concerned.

(4) Subject to subsections (7) and (8), conduct engaged in on behalf of a person other than a body corporate:

(a) by an employee or agent of the person, acting within the scope of the actual or apparent authority of the employee or agent; or

(b) by any other person acting at the direction or with the consent or agreement (whether express or implied) of an employee or agent of the first-mentioned person, where the giving of the direction, consent or agreement is within the scope of the actual or apparent authority of the employee or agent;

is taken, for the purposes of a provision of this Chapter, or of a proceeding under this Chapter, to have been engaged in also by the first-mentioned person.

(5) Conduct engaged in by a person (for example, the giving of money or property) in relation to:

(a) an employee or agent of a person (the *principal*) other than a body corporate, acting within the scope of their actual or apparent authority; or

(b) any other person acting at the direction or with the consent or agreement (whether express or implied) of an employee or agent of a person (the *principal*) other than a body corporate,



where the giving of the direction, consent or agreement is within the scope of the actual or apparent authority of the employee or agent;

is taken, for the purposes of a provision of this Chapter, or of a proceeding under this Chapter, to have been engaged in also in relation to the principal.

- (6) If, in a proceeding under this Chapter in respect of conduct engaged in by a person other than a body corporate, it is necessary to establish the state of mind of the person, it is sufficient to show that an employee or agent of the person, being an employee or agent by whom the conduct was engaged in within the scope of the employee's or agent's actual or apparent authority, had that state of mind. For this purpose, a person acting as mentioned in paragraph (4)(b) is taken to be an agent of the person first referred to in subsection (4).
- (7) Nothing in this section, or in any other law (including the common law), has the effect that, for the purposes of a provision of Part 7.7 or 7.7A, or a proceeding under this Chapter that relates to a provision of Part 7.7 or 7.7A, a financial service provided by person in their capacity as an authorised representative of a financial services licensee is taken, or taken also, to have been provided by that financial services licensee.
- (8) Nothing in this section, or in any other law (including the common law), has the effect that, for the purposes of a provision of Division 2 of Part 7.9, or a proceeding under this Chapter that relates to a provision of Division 2 of Part 7.9, conduct engaged in by a person in their capacity as a regulated person (within the meaning of section 1011B) is taken, or taken also, to have been engaged in by another such regulated person.
- (8A) Nothing in this section, other than subsections (7) and (8), excludes or limits the operation of subsection 601FB(2) in relation to the provisions of this Chapter or to proceedings under this Chapter.
- (9) The regulations may provide that this section, or a particular provision of this section, has effect for specified purposes subject

Section 769C

---

to modifications specified in the regulations. The regulations have effect accordingly.

(10) In this section:

- (a) a reference to a proceeding *under* this Chapter includes a reference to:
  - (i) a prosecution for an offence based on a provision of this Chapter; and
  - (ii) a proceeding under a provision of Part 9.4B that relates to a provision of this Chapter; and
  - (iii) any other proceeding under any other provision of Chapter 9 that relates to a provision of this Chapter; and
- (b) a reference to *conduct* is a reference to an act, an omission to perform an act, or a state of affairs; and
- (c) a reference to the *state of mind* of a person includes a reference to the knowledge, intention, opinion, belief or purpose of the person and the person's reasons for the person's intention, opinion, belief or purpose.

Note: For the meaning of *offence based on* a provision, see the definition in section 9.

**769C Representations about future matters taken to be misleading if made without reasonable grounds**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, or of a proceeding under this Chapter, if:
  - (a) a person makes a representation with respect to any future matter (including the doing of, or refusing to do, any act); and
  - (b) the person does not have reasonable grounds for making the representation;the representation is taken to be misleading.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not limit the circumstances in which a representation may be misleading.
- (3) In this section:

*proceeding under this Chapter* has the same meaning as it has in section 769B.

## Part 7.2—Licensing of financial markets

### Division 1—Preliminary

#### 790A Definition

In this Part:

*clearing and settlement arrangements*, for transactions effected through a financial market, means arrangements for the clearing and settlement of those transactions. The arrangements may be part of the market's operating rules or be separate from those operating rules.

## **Division 2—Requirement to be licensed**

### **791A Need for a licence**

- (1) A person must only operate, or hold out that the person operates, a financial market in this jurisdiction if:
  - (a) the person has an Australian market licence that authorises the person to operate the market in this jurisdiction; or
  - (b) the market is exempt from the operation of this Part.

Note 1: A market licensee may also provide financial services incidental to the operation of the market: see paragraph 911A(2)(d).

Note 2: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (1), strict liability applies to paragraph (1)(b).

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

### **791B Other prohibitions on holding out**

A person must not hold out:

- (a) that the person has an Australian market licence; or
  - (b) that the operation of a financial market by the person in this jurisdiction is authorised by an Australian market licence; or
  - (c) that a financial market is exempt from the operation of this Part; or
  - (d) that the person is a participant in a licensed market;
- if that is not the case.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **791C Exemptions by Minister**

- (1) The Minister may exempt a particular financial market, or a class of financial market, from all or specified provisions of this Part. An

**Section 791C**

---

exemption may be unconditional, or subject to conditions specified in the exemption.

Note: The provisions of this Part include regulations made for the purposes of this Part (see section 761H).

- (2) The Minister may, at any time:
  - (a) vary an exemption to:
    - (i) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on the exemption; or
    - (ii) vary or revoke any of the conditions on the exemption; or
  - (b) revoke an exemption.
- (3) However, the Minister may only take action under subsection (2) after:
  - (a) giving notice, and an opportunity to make submissions on the proposed action, to the operator of each financial market known by the Minister to be covered by the exemption; and
  - (b) if the exemption covers a class of financial markets—a notice has been published on ASIC’s website allowing a reasonable period within which the operator of each financial market covered by the exemption may make submissions on the proposed action, and that period has ended.
- (4) If an exemption is expressed to apply in relation to a class of financial markets (whether or not it is also expressed to apply in relation to one or more financial markets otherwise than by reference to membership of a class), then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, is a legislative instrument.
- (5) If subsection (4) does not apply to an exemption, then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, must be in writing and the Minister must publish notice of it in the Gazette.

**791D When a market is taken to be operated in this jurisdiction**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a financial market is taken to be operated *in this jurisdiction* if it is operated by a body corporate that is registered under Chapter 2A.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not limit the circumstances in which a financial market is operated *in this jurisdiction* for the purposes of this Chapter.

## Division 3—Regulation of market licensees

### Subdivision A—Licensee's obligations

#### 792A General obligations

A market licensee must:

- (a) to the extent that it is reasonably practicable to do so, do all things necessary to ensure that the market is a fair, orderly and transparent market; and
- (b) comply with the conditions on the licence; and
- (c) have adequate arrangements (which may involve the appointment of an independent person or related entity) for operating the market, including arrangements for:
  - (i) handling conflicts between the commercial interests of the licensee and the need for the licensee to ensure that the market operates in the way mentioned in paragraph (a); and
  - (ii) monitoring and enforcing compliance with the market's operating rules; and
- (d) have sufficient resources (including financial, technological and human resources) to operate the market properly; and
- (e) if section 881A requires there to be compensation arrangements in relation to the market that are approved in accordance with Division 3 of Part 7.5—ensure that there are such approved compensation arrangements in relation to the market; and
- (f) if the licensee is a foreign body corporate—be registered under Division 2 of Part 5B.2; and
- (g) if the licence was granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets)—both:
  - (i) remain authorised to operate a financial market in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located; and



- (ii) get the Minister's approval under section 792H before that principal place of business becomes located in any other foreign country; and
- (h) if the licensee, or a holding company of the licensee, is a widely held market body (within the meaning of Division 1 of Part 7.4)—take all reasonable steps to ensure that an unacceptable control situation (within the meaning of that Division) does not exist in relation to the body; and
- (i) take all reasonable steps to ensure that no disqualified individual becomes, or remains, involved in the licensee (see Division 2 of Part 7.4).

### **792B Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters**

- (1) A market licensee must give written notice to ASIC, as soon as practicable, if it becomes aware that it may no longer be able to meet, or has breached, an obligation under section 792A. If ASIC considers it appropriate to do so, ASIC may give the Minister advice about the matter.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) A market licensee must give written notice to ASIC, as soon as practicable, as required by the following paragraphs:
  - (a) if the licensee provides a new class of financial service incidental to the operation of the market, the licensee must give notice that includes details of the new class;
  - (b) if the licensee takes any kind of disciplinary action against a participant in the market, the licensee must give notice that includes:
    - (i) the participant's name; and
    - (ii) the reason for and nature of the action taken;
  - (c) if the licensee has reason to suspect that a person has committed, is committing, or is about to commit a significant contravention of the market's operating rules or this Act, the licensee must give notice that includes:
    - (i) the person's name; and

**Section 792B**

---

- (ii) details of the contravention or impending contravention;  
and
- (iii) the licensee's reasons for that belief.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) If a market licensee becomes aware of:
- (a) a matter that the licensee considers has adversely affected, is adversely affecting, or may adversely affect the ability of a participant in the market, who is a financial services licensee, to meet the participant's obligations as a financial services licensee; or
  - (b) a matter, concerning a participant in the market who is a financial services licensee, that is of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
- the market licensee must give a written report to ASIC on the matter and send a copy of it to the participant.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) A market licensee whose licence was granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets) must, as soon as practicable, give written notice to ASIC if:
- (a) the licensee ceases to be authorised to operate a financial market in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located; or
  - (b) there is a significant change to the regulatory regime applying in relation to the market in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (5) As soon as practicable after:
- (a) a person becomes or ceases to be a director, secretary or senior manager of a market licensee or of a holding company of a market licensee (including when a person changes from one of those positions to another); or

Section 792C

---

- (b) a market licensee becomes aware that a person has come to have, or has ceased to have, more than 15% of the voting power in the licensee or in a holding company of the licensee;

the licensee must give written notice of this to ASIC. The notice must include such other information about the matter as is prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note 1: To the extent that the licensee is required to give the notice and information under any other provision of this Act, the licensee may comply with this subsection by doing so. It need not provide the same information twice.

Note 2: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **792C Giving ASIC information about a listed disclosing entity**

- (1) If a market licensee makes information about a listed disclosing entity available to participants in the market (whether or not the licensee also makes the information available to anyone else), the licensee must give ASIC the same information as soon as practicable.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) However, the licensee is not required to give ASIC any information of a kind that is excluded by the regulations.
- (3) ASIC may require the information to be given in a particular form.

### **792D Obligation to assist ASIC**

- (1) A market licensee must give such assistance to ASIC, or a person authorised by ASIC, as ASIC or the authorised person reasonably requests in relation to the performance of ASIC's functions.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Such assistance may include showing ASIC the licensee's books or giving ASIC other information.

Section 792E

---

**792E Obligation to give ASIC access to market facilities**

A market licensee must give a person authorised by ASIC such reasonable access to the market's facilities as the person requests for any of the purposes of this Chapter.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**792F Annual report**

- (1) A market licensee must, within 3 months after the end of its financial year, give ASIC an annual report on the extent to which the licensee complied with its obligations as a market licensee under this Chapter.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) The licensee must ensure that the annual report is accompanied by any information and statements prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) The licensee must also ensure that the annual report is accompanied by any audit report that the Minister requires under subsection (4).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) The Minister may, by giving written notice to a market licensee, require the licensee to obtain an audit report on the annual report and on any information or statements accompanying it. The Minister must nominate to prepare the audit report:

- (a) ASIC; or
- (b) a specified person or body that is suitably qualified.

- (5) ASIC must give the annual report and accompanying material to the Minister.

**792G Obligations to notify people about clearing and settlement arrangements in certain circumstances**

- (1) If, in relation to a category of transactions, being all transactions or a class of transactions effected through a licensed market, the market licensee:
- (a) does not have any clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions in that category; or
  - (b) has clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions in that category, but they are not arrangements with the operator of a clearing and settlement facility for the clearing and settlement of such transactions through the facility;
- the market licensee must, before a person becomes a participant in the market, give the person written advice:
- (c) if paragraph (a) applies—that the licensee does not have any clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions in that category, and that it is the responsibility of the parties to such transactions to make their own arrangements for the clearing and settlement of such transactions; or
  - (d) if paragraph (b) applies—setting out particulars of the clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions in that category.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Within a reasonable time before a market licensee ceases, in relation to a category of transactions, being all transactions or a class of transactions effected through a licensed market, to have clearing and settlement arrangements (the ***terminating arrangements***) with the operator of a particular clearing and settlement facility for the clearing and settlement of such transactions through the facility, the market licensee must give the participants in the market written advice:
- (a) if the terminating arrangements are not being replaced by any other clearing and settlement arrangements—that the licensee will no longer have clearing and settlement arrangements for that category of transactions, and that it will be the

**Section 792H**

---

responsibility of the parties to such transactions to make their own arrangements for the clearing and settlement of such transactions; or

- (b) if the terminating arrangements are being replaced by new clearing and settlement arrangements—setting out particulars of the new arrangements.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**792H Change of country by foreign licensee**

- (1) In the case of a licence granted under subsection 795B(2), the Minister may approve the location of the licensee's principal place of business in a new country only if:
- (a) the new country is not Australia; and
  - (b) the operation of the market in that country will be subject to requirements and supervision that are sufficiently equivalent, in relation to the degree of investor protection and market integrity they achieve, to the requirements and supervision to which financial markets are subject under this Act in relation to those matters.
- (2) If, in relation to a licence granted under subsection 795B(2), the licensee's principal place of business changes to become a place in Australia:
- (a) the licence ceases to be in force from the time of the change; and
  - (b) if the licensee wishes the market to continue to be licensed, the licensee may apply for the grant of a new licence under subsection 795B(1); and
  - (c) the application must be assessed in accordance with Subdivision A of Division 4, subject to such modifications (if any) of that Subdivision as are set out in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (3) An application referred to in paragraph (2)(b) may be made in advance of the change of location of the principal place of business, and a decision on the application may be made before

that time. However, any licence granted pursuant to the application does not come into force until the change occurs.

### **792I Making information about compensation arrangements publicly available**

A market licensee must take reasonable steps to ensure that information about the compensation arrangements that are in place under Part 7.5 is available to the public free of charge.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

## **Subdivision B—The market’s operating rules and procedures**

### **793A Content of the operating rules and procedures**

- (1) The operating rules of a licensed market must deal with the matters prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.
- (2) The regulations may also prescribe matters in respect of which a licensed market must have written procedures.
- (3) However, subsections (1) and (2) do not apply if the licensee is also authorised to operate the market in the foreign country in which its principal place of business is located and the licence was granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets).
- (4) In a subsection (3) case, ASIC may determine, by giving written notice to the licensee, matters in respect of which the licensed market must have written procedures.

### **793B Legal effect of operating rules**

- (1) The operating rules (other than listing rules) of a licensed market have effect as a contract under seal:
  - (a) between the licensee and each participant in the market; and
  - (b) between a participant and each other participant;

Section 793C

---

under which each of those persons agrees to observe the operating rules to the extent that they apply to the person and to engage in conduct that the person is required by the operating rules to engage in.

- (2) However, if there is an inconsistency between the operating rules of a financial market, and any of the following other rules:

- (a) the market integrity rules;
- (b) the derivative transaction rules;
- (c) the derivative trade repository rules;

those other rules prevail over the operating rules to the extent of the inconsistency.

Note 1: If there is an inconsistency between the market integrity rules and the derivative transaction rules or the derivative trade repository rules, the market integrity rules prevail: see subsection 798H(3).

Note 2: If there is an inconsistency between the derivative transaction rules and the derivative trade repository rules, the derivative transaction rules prevail: see subsection 901E(2).

- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to a financial market the operator of which is licensed under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets).

**793C Enforcement of operating rules**

- (1) If a person who is under an obligation to comply with or enforce any of a licensed market's operating rules fails to meet that obligation, an application to the Court may be made by:
- (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) the licensee; or
  - (c) the operator of a clearing and settlement facility with which the licensee has clearing and settlement arrangements; or
  - (d) a person aggrieved by the failure.
- (2) After giving an opportunity to be heard to the applicant and the person against whom the order is sought, the Court may make an order giving directions to:
- (a) the person against whom the order is sought; or



- (b) if that person is a body corporate—the directors of the body corporate;  
about compliance with, or enforcement of, the operating rules.
- (3) For the purposes of this section, a body corporate that is, with its acquiescence, included in the official list of a licensed market, or an associate of such a body corporate, is taken to be under an obligation to comply with the operating rules of that market to the extent to which those rules purport to apply to the body corporate or associate.
- (4) For the purposes of this section, if a disclosing entity that is an undertaking to which interests in a registered scheme relate is, with the responsible entity's acquiescence, included in the official list of a licensed market, the responsible entity, or an associate of the responsible entity, is taken to be under an obligation to comply with the operating rules of that market to the extent to which those rules purport to apply to the responsible entity or associate.
- (5) For the purposes of this section, if a body corporate fails to comply with or enforce provisions of the operating rules of a licensed market, a person who holds financial products of the body corporate that are able to be traded on the market is taken to be a person aggrieved by the failure.
- (6) There may be other circumstances in which a person may be aggrieved by a failure for the purposes of this section.

### **793D Changing the operating rules**

#### *Licensed markets other than subsection 795B(2) markets*

- (1) As soon as practicable after a change is made to the operating rules of a licensed market, other than a market licensed under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets), the licensee must lodge with ASIC written notice of the change. The notice must:
- (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the change was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the change.

Section 793E

---

- (2) If no notice is lodged as required by subsection (1) with ASIC within 21 days after the change is made, the change ceases to have effect at the end of that period.

*Subsection 795B(2) markets*

- (3) As soon as practicable after a change is made to the operating rules of a market the operation of which is licensed under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets), the licensee must lodge with ASIC written notice of the change. The notice must:
- (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the change was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the change.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**793E Disallowance of changes to operating rules**

- (1) This section does not apply in respect of an Australian market licence granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets).
- (2) As soon as practicable after receiving a notice under section 793D from a market licensee, ASIC must send a copy of the notice to the Minister.
- (3) Within 28 days after ASIC receives the notice from the licensee, the Minister may disallow all or a specified part of the change to the operating rules.
- (4) In deciding whether to do so, the Minister must have regard to the consistency of the change with the licensee's obligations under this Part (including in particular the obligation mentioned in paragraph 792A(a)).

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 798A.

- (5) As soon as practicable after all or a part of a change is disallowed, ASIC must give notice of the disallowance to the licensee. The change ceases to have effect, to the extent of the disallowance, when the licensee receives the notice.

## **Subdivision C—Powers of the Minister and ASIC**

### **794A Minister's power to give directions**

- (1) If the Minister considers that a market licensee is not complying with its obligations as a market licensee under this Chapter, the Minister may give the licensee a written direction to do specified things that the Minister believes will promote compliance by the licensee with those obligations.
- (2) The licensee must comply with the direction.
- (3) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.
- (4) The Minister may vary or revoke a direction at any time by giving written notice to the licensee.

### **794B Minister's power to require special report**

- (1) The Minister may give a market licensee a written notice requiring the licensee to give ASIC a special report on specified matters. ASIC must give the report to the Minister.
- (2) The notice may also require the licensee to give ASIC an audit report on the special report. The Minister must nominate to prepare the audit report:
  - (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) a specified person or body that is suitably qualified.
- (3) The licensee must give the special report, and audit report (if any), to ASIC within the time required by the notice.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Section 794C

---

**794C ASIC assessment of licensee's compliance**

- (1) ASIC may do an assessment of how well a market licensee is complying with any or all of its obligations as a market licensee under this Chapter. In doing the assessment, ASIC may take account of any information and reports that it thinks appropriate, including information and reports from an overseas regulatory authority.
- (2) If the market licensee is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this subsection, ASIC must, in respect of the obligation in paragraph 792A(c), do such an assessment at least once a year.
- (3) As soon as practicable after doing an assessment under this section, ASIC must give a written report on the assessment to the licensee and to the Minister.
- (4) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to any other person's affairs to a material extent, ASIC may, at the person's request or of its own motion, give the person a copy of the written report on the assessment or the relevant part of the report.
- (5) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to a serious contravention of a law of the Commonwealth or of a State or Territory, ASIC may give a copy of the written report on the assessment, or the relevant part of the report, to:
  - (a) the Australian Federal Police; or
  - (b) the Chief Executive Officer of the Australian Crime Commission or a member of the staff of the ACC (within the meaning of the *Australian Crime Commission Act 2002*); or
  - (c) the Director of Public Prosecutions; or
  - (d) an agency prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (6) Either the Minister or ASIC may cause the written report on an assessment, or part of the report on an assessment, to be printed and published.

### **794D ASIC's power to give directions**

- (1) If ASIC is of the opinion that it is necessary, or in the public interest, to protect people dealing in a financial product or class of financial products by:

- (a) giving a direction to a market licensee to suspend dealings in the financial product or class of financial products; or
- (b) giving some other direction in relation to those dealings;

ASIC may give written advice to the licensee of that opinion and the reasons for it.

*Example:* Under paragraph (b), ASIC could give a direction to limit the kinds of dealings that are allowed in the financial product or class of financial products or to require a participant in the market to act in a specified manner in relation to dealings in the financial product or class of financial products.

- (2) If, after receiving ASIC's advice and reasons, the licensee does not take:

- (a) in the case of a proposed direction to suspend dealings in the financial products—action to prevent such dealings; or
- (b) in any other case—such other action as in ASIC's view is adequate to address the situation raised in the advice;

and ASIC still considers that it is appropriate to give the direction to the licensee, ASIC may give the licensee the written direction with a statement setting out its reasons for making the direction.

- (3) The direction has effect for the period specified in it (which may be up to 21 days). During that period, the licensee must comply with the direction and must not allow any dealings to take place contrary to it.

*Note:* Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.

- (5) As soon as practicable after making or varying (see subsection (7)) a direction, ASIC must:

**Section 794E**

---

- (a) give a copy of the direction or variation to the operator of each clearing and settlement facility with which the market licensee has clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions effected through the market; and
  - (b) give a written report to the Minister setting out ASIC's reasons for making the direction or variation; and
  - (c) give a copy of the report to the licensee.
- (6) If, at any time after the licensee receives ASIC's advice under subsection (1), the licensee requests in writing that ASIC refer the matter to the Minister, ASIC must do so immediately. In that event, the Minister may, if he or she considers it appropriate, require ASIC not to make, or to revoke, the direction. ASIC must immediately comply with such a requirement.
- (7) ASIC may vary a direction by giving written notice to the licensee if ASIC is of the opinion that the variation is necessary, or in the public interest, to protect people dealing in a financial product or class of financial products.
- (8) ASIC may revoke a direction by giving written notice to the licensee. ASIC must also give written notice of the revocation to the operator of each clearing and settlement facility with which the market licensee has clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions effected through the market.

**794E Additional directions to clearing and settlement facilities**

- (1) If ASIC gives a direction under section 794D, it may also give a written direction to the operator of each clearing and settlement facility with which the market licensee has clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions effected through the market:
- (a) prohibiting the operator from acting in a manner inconsistent with the section 794D direction; and
  - (b) requiring the operator to do all that the operator is reasonably capable of doing to give effect to the section 794D direction.
- (2) The operator must comply with the direction given to it under this section.

Section 794E

---

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) If the operator fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the operator comply with the direction.

## Division 4—The Australian market licence

### Subdivision A—How to get a licence

#### 795A How to apply for a licence

- (1) A body corporate may apply for an Australian market licence by lodging with ASIC an application that:
  - (a) includes the information required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; and
  - (b) is accompanied by the documents (if any) required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; and
  - (c) complies with the requirements of section 881B (relating to compensation arrangements).

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (2) ASIC must, within a reasonable time, give the application to the Minister with advice about the application.

#### 795B When a licence may be granted

##### *General*

- (1) The Minister may grant an applicant an Australian market licence if the Minister is satisfied that:
  - (a) the application was made in accordance with section 795A; and
  - (b) the applicant will comply with the obligations that will apply if the licence is granted; and
  - (c) the applicant has adequate operating rules, and procedures, (see Subdivision B of Division 3) to ensure, as far as is reasonably practicable, that the market will operate as mentioned in paragraph 792A(a); and
  - (d) the applicant has adequate arrangements (which may involve the appointment of an independent person or related entity) for operating the market, including arrangements for:



- (i) handling conflicts between the commercial interests of the licensee and the need for the licensee to ensure that the market operates in the way mentioned in paragraph 792A(a); and
- (ii) monitoring and enforcing compliance with the market's operating rules; and
- (e) the applicant has adequate clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions effected through the market, if the Minister considers that the applicant should have such arrangements; and
- (f) neither subsection 881D(2) nor 882A(2) (relating to compensation arrangements) requires the Minister to reject the application; and
- (g) no unacceptable control situation (see Division 1 of Part 7.4) is likely to result if the licence is granted; and
- (h) no disqualified individual appears to be involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4).

This subsection has effect subject to subsections (3) and (4).

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 798A in deciding whether to grant a licence.

*Alternative criteria for granting licence for overseas market*

- (2) If an applicant is authorised to operate a financial market in the foreign country in which its principal place of business is located, the Minister may grant the applicant an Australian market licence authorising the applicant to operate the same market in this jurisdiction. The Minister must be satisfied that:
  - (a) the application was made in accordance with section 795A; and
  - (b) the applicant will comply with the obligations that will apply if the licence is granted; and
  - (c) the operation of the market in that country is subject to requirements and supervision that are sufficiently equivalent, in relation to the degree of investor protection and market integrity they achieve, to the requirements and supervision to

**Section 795C**

---

which financial markets are subject under this Act in relation to those matters; and

- (d) the applicant undertakes to cooperate with ASIC by sharing information and in other appropriate ways; and
- (e) no unacceptable control situation (see Division 1 of Part 7.4) is likely to result if the licence is granted; and
- (f) no disqualified individual appears to be involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4); and
- (g) any other requirements that are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph are satisfied.

This subsection has effect subject to subsections (3) and (4).

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 798A in deciding whether to grant a licence.

*Foreign bodies*

- (3) If the applicant is a foreign body corporate, the Minister:
  - (a) must not grant the applicant a licence unless the applicant is registered under Division 2 of Part 5B.2; and
  - (b) may otherwise grant a licence under either subsection (1) or (2) (if the relevant criteria are satisfied).

*Disqualified individuals*

- (4) The Minister must not grant the applicant a licence unless:
  - (a) ASIC has notified the Minister that, as far as ASIC is aware, no disqualified individual is involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4); or
  - (b) 42 days have passed since the application was made and ASIC has not given a notice under subsection 853D(2) to the applicant within that 42 days.

**795C Publication of notice of licence grant**

If the Minister grants an Australian market licence, the Minister must publish a notice in the *Gazette* stating:

- (a) the name of the licensee; and

- (b) when the licence was granted; and
- (c) the conditions on the licence.

#### **795D More than one licence in the same document**

If the Minister grants a person 2 or more of the following:

- (a) an Australian market licence;
  - (b) an Australian CS facility licence;
- they may be included in the same document.

#### **795E More than one market covered by the same licence**

- (1) The same Australian market licence may authorise the licensee to operate 2 or more financial markets.
- (2) In that case, a reference in this Chapter to the market to which an Australian market licence relates is taken instead to be a reference to each of those financial markets severally.
- (3) Before varying the conditions on an Australian market licence so as to add another market that the licensee is authorised to operate, the Minister must be satisfied of the matters listed in subsection 795B(1) or (2) (as appropriate) in relation to the market.
- (4) An Australian market licence that authorises the licensee to operate 2 or more financial markets may be suspended or cancelled under Subdivision C in respect of one or some of those markets only, as if the licensee held a separate licence for each of the markets.

### **Subdivision B—The conditions on the licence**

#### **796A The conditions on the licence**

- (1) The Minister may, at any time:
  - (a) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on an Australian market licence; or
  - (b) vary or revoke conditions imposed on such a licence;

Section 796A

---

by giving written notice to the licensee. The Minister must also publish a notice in the *Gazette* with details of the action and when it took effect.

Note: As well as the requirements in this section, the Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 798A.

- (2) The Minister may do so:
- (a) on his or her own initiative, subject to subsection (3); or
  - (b) if the licensee lodges with ASIC an application for the Minister to do so, which is accompanied by the prescribed documents, if any.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (3) The Minister may only impose conditions or additional conditions, or vary the conditions, on the licence on his or her own initiative if:
- (a) he or she considers it appropriate to do so having regard to:
    - (i) the licensee's obligations as a market licensee under this Chapter; and
    - (ii) any change in market operations or the conditions in which the market is operating; and
  - (b) the Minister gives the licensee written notice of the proposed action and an opportunity to make a submission before it takes effect.

This subsection does not apply to the Minister imposing conditions when a licence is granted.

- (4) The Minister must ensure that each Australian market licence is subject to conditions that specify:
- (a) the particular market that the licensee is authorised to operate; and
  - (b) the class or classes of financial products that can be dealt with on the market; and
  - (c) if the Minister considers that the licensee should have clearing and settlement arrangements for transactions effected through the market—the type of clearing and settlement arrangements that are adequate.

Note: If compensation arrangements in relation to the market are approved under Division 3 of Part 7.5, there must also be conditions as required by subsection 882A(4) or paragraph 882B(4)(b).

- (6) ASIC must give the Minister any application and documents lodged under subsection (2).

### **Subdivision C—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled**

#### **797A Varying licences**

- (1) The Minister may vary an Australian market licence to take account of a change in the licensee's name if the licensee lodges with ASIC an application for the variation, accompanied by the prescribed documents, if any.

Note 1: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 796A.

Note 2: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (2) The Minister must give written notice of the variation to the licensee.
- (3) ASIC must give the Minister any application and documents lodged under subsection (1).

#### **797B Immediate suspension or cancellation**

The Minister may, by giving written notice to a market licensee, suspend the licence for a specified period, or cancel it, if:

- (a) the licensee ceases to carry on the business of operating the market; or
- (b) the licensee becomes a Chapter 5 body corporate; or
- (c) the licensee asks the Minister to do so; or
- (d) in the case of a licence granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets):
- (i) the licensee ceases to be authorised to operate a financial market in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located; or

Section 797C

---

- (ii) there is a change to the regulatory regime applying in relation to the market to which the licence relates in the country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located, and, because of that change, the Minister is no longer satisfied as mentioned in paragraph 795B(2)(c); or
- (e) in the case of a licensee that is a leviable entity (within the meaning of the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017*)—the following have not been paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
  - (i) an amount of levy (if any) payable in respect of the licensee;
  - (ii) an amount of late payment penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy;
  - (iii) an amount of shortfall penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy.

**797C Suspension or cancellation following hearing and report**

- (1) If the Minister considers that a market licensee has breached, or is in breach of, one or more of its obligations as a market licensee under this Chapter, the Minister may give the licensee a written notice that requires the licensee to show cause, at a hearing before a specified person, why the licence should not be suspended or cancelled.
- (2) The notice must specify:
  - (a) the grounds on which it is proposed to suspend or cancel the licence; and
  - (b) a reasonable time and place at which the hearing is to be held.However, if the licensee consents, the person conducting the hearing may fix a different time or place.
- (3) The person conducting the hearing must:
  - (a) give the licensee an opportunity to be heard at the hearing; and

- (b) give the Minister:
  - (i) a report about the hearing; and
  - (ii) a recommendation about the grounds in the notice on which it is proposed to suspend or cancel the licence.
- (4) After considering the report and recommendation, the Minister may:
  - (a) decide to take no further action in relation to the matter and give written advice of that decision to the licensee; or
  - (b) suspend the licence for a specified period, or cancel the licence, by giving written notice to the licensee.

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 798A.

### **797D Effect of suspension**

- (1) A person whose Australian market licence is suspended is taken not to hold that licence while it is suspended.
- (2) However, the Minister may specify in the written notice to the licensee that subsection (1) does not apply for specified purposes.

### **797E Variation or revocation of suspension**

The Minister may at any time vary or revoke a suspension of an Australian market licence by giving written notice to the licensee.

### **797F Publication of notice of licence suspension or cancellation**

- (1) If the Minister:
  - (a) suspends, or varies or revokes a suspension of, an Australian market licence; or
  - (b) cancels an Australian market licence;the Minister must publish a notice in the *Gazette* to that effect.
- (2) The notice must state when the action took effect.

Section 797G

---

**797G Suspension and cancellation only in accordance with this Subdivision**

An Australian market licence cannot be varied, suspended or cancelled otherwise than in accordance with this Subdivision.

Note: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 796A.



## **Division 5—Other matters**

### **798A Matters to be taken into account by the Minister**

- (1) The Minister must have regard to certain matters in deciding whether to:
  - (a) grant an applicant an Australian market licence under section 795B; or
  - (b) impose, vary or revoke conditions on such a licence under section 796A; or
  - (c) suspend or cancel such a licence under section 797C; or
  - (d) disallow a change to the operating rules of a licensed market under section 793E.
  
- (2) These are the matters the Minister must have regard to:
  - (a) the structure, or proposed structure, of the market;
  - (b) the nature of the activities conducted, or proposed to be conducted, on the market;
  - (c) the size, or proposed size, of the market;
  - (d) the nature of the financial products dealt with, or proposed to be dealt with, on the market;
  - (e) the participants, or proposed participants, in the market and:
    - (i) whether those participants, in effecting transactions through the market, are, or will be, providing financial services to other persons; and
    - (ii) whether those participants acquire or dispose, or will acquire or dispose, of financial products through the market as retail clients or as wholesale clients; and
    - (iii) whether those participants are also, or will also be, participants in any other financial markets;
  - (f) the technology used, or proposed to be used, in the operation of the market;
  - (g) whether it would be in the public interest to take the action referred to in subsection (1);
  - (h) any relevant advice received from ASIC.

Section 798B

---

The Minister may also have regard to any other matter that the Minister considers relevant.

- (3) If the Minister is deciding whether to take the action referred to in paragraph (1)(a), (b) or (c) in respect of an Australian market licence granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets), the Minister must also have regard to:
- (a) the criteria that the licensee or applicant satisfied to obtain an authorisation to operate the same market in the foreign country in which their principal place of business is located; and
  - (b) the obligations they must continue to satisfy to keep the authorisation; and
  - (c) the level of supervision to which the operation of the market in that country is subject; and
  - (d) whether adequate arrangements exist for cooperation between ASIC and the authority that is responsible for that supervision.

**798B ASIC may give advice to Minister**

ASIC may give advice to the Minister in relation to:

- (a) any matter in respect of which the Minister has a discretion under this Part; or
- (b) any other matter concerning financial markets.

Note: In some cases, the Minister must have regard to ASIC's advice: see paragraph 798A(2)(h).

**798C Market licensee or related body corporate etc. listing on market**

- (1) Any of the following kinds of entity or scheme (the *listed entity*) may be included in a market's official list:
- (a) the market licensee for the market;
  - (b) a related body corporate of the market licensee;
  - (c) a managed investment scheme whose responsible entity is a related body corporate of the market licensee;

- (d) a trust whose trustee is a related body corporate of the market licensee.

Note: There are certain matters that must be included in the market's listing rules before such an entity or scheme is included in the official list (see subsection (4)).

- (2) In such a case, the financial products of the listed entity may be traded on the market, if either or both the listed entity and the market licensee have entered into such arrangements as ASIC requires:
- (a) for dealing with possible conflicts of interest that might arise from the listed entity's financial products being able to be traded on the market; and
  - (b) for the purposes of ensuring the integrity of trading in the listed entity's financial products.

Note: For fees in respect of ASIC performing functions under such arrangements, see Part 9.10.

- (3) The listed entity, and the market licensee (if applicable), with whom ASIC has entered into arrangements for the purposes of subsection (2) must comply with the arrangements.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) Before, and at all times while, the listed entity is included in the market's official list, the market's listing rules must provide for ASIC, instead of the market licensee, to make decisions and to take action (or to require the market licensee to take action on ASIC's behalf) in relation to these matters, and matters related to these matters:
- (a) the admission of the listed entity to the market's official list; and
  - (b) the removal of the listed entity from that list; and
  - (c) allowing, stopping or suspending the trading on the market of the listed entity's financial products.

Note: For fees in respect of ASIC performing this function, see Part 9.10.

Section 798D

---

- (5) ASIC has the powers and functions that are provided for it in any listing rules or arrangements made for the purposes of this section.
- (6) The products of an entity or scheme referred to in subsection (1) must not be traded on the market licensee's market otherwise than as allowed by this section.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (7) This section does not apply if the licence of the market licensee was granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets). Instead, the law of the country in which the market licensee's principal place of business is located applies for all purposes connected with the inclusion of the listed entity in the market's official list.

**798D Exemptions and modifications for self-listing licensees or related bodies corporate etc.**

- (1) ASIC may:
  - (a) exempt an entity or scheme referred to in subsection 798C(1) whose financial products are able to be traded on the market from a modifiable provision (see subsection (7)); or
  - (b) declare that a modifiable provision applies to an entity or scheme referred to in subsection 798C(1) whose financial products are able to be traded on the market as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the declaration.
- (2) An exemption or declaration must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.
- (3) An exemption may apply unconditionally or subject to specified conditions.
- (4) If an exemption is granted subject to specified conditions, the entity or scheme must comply with those conditions.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Section 798DA

---

- (5) If an exemption is granted subject to specified conditions, the Court may, on ASIC's application, order the entity or scheme to comply with one or more of those conditions in a specified way.
- (6) If conduct (including an omission) of a person would not have constituted an offence if:
- (a) a particular condition had not been imposed on an exemption under paragraph (1)(a); or
  - (b) a particular declaration under paragraph (1)(b) had not been made;

that conduct does not constitute an offence unless, before the conduct occurred (in addition to complying with the gazettal requirement of subsection (2)), ASIC gave written notice setting out the text of the condition or the declaration to the person. In a prosecution for an offence to which this subsection applies, the prosecution must prove that this additional notification requirement was complied with before the conduct occurred.

- (7) In this section:

***modifiable provision*** means:

- (a) section 205G and any of the provisions of Chapter 6, 6A, 6B, 6C, 6CA or 7; or
- (b) regulations made for the purposes of that section or any of those provisions.

**798DA Market licensee, related body corporate etc. or competitor participating in market**

- (1) This section applies if any of the following is a participant (the ***participant***) in a market:
- (a) the market licensee;
  - (b) a related body corporate of the market licensee;
  - (c) a partnership if a partner in the partnership is a related entity of the market licensee;
  - (d) an entity if:

**Section 798DA**

---

- (i) the entity conducts, or participates in, a business that is in competition with a business conducted by the market licensee, or by a related body corporate of the market licensee; and
  - (ii) the entity requests that ASIC make decisions and take action in relation to the matters referred to in subsection (2).
- (2) Before, and at all times while, the participant is participating in the market, the market's operating rules must provide for ASIC, instead of the market licensee, to make decisions and to take action (or to require the market licensee to take action on ASIC's behalf) in relation to these matters, and matters related to these matters:
  - (a) the admission of the participant to the market; and
  - (b) the expulsion and suspension of the participant from the market; and
  - (c) the disciplining of the participant; and
  - (d) the participant's compliance with the operating rules or this Act, including:
    - (i) the method of determining whether the participant has complied with those rules or this Act; and
    - (ii) any action (including the imposition of a fine or penalty) to be taken in respect of contraventions of those rules or this Act.

Note: For fees in respect of ASIC performing this function, see Part 9.10.

- (3) ASIC has the powers and functions that are provided for it in any operating rules made for the purposes of this section.
- (4) A participant referred to in subsection (1) must not participate in the market licensee's market otherwise than as allowed by this section.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (5) This section does not apply if the licence of the market licensee was granted under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets). Instead, the law of the country in which the market licensee's principal

place of business is located applies for all purposes connected with the participation of the participant in the market.

- (6) To avoid doubt, subsection (1) does not authorise a market licensee to participate in its own market.

### **798E Other potential conflict situations**

- (1) The regulations may make provision in relation to the rules and procedures that are to apply in the case of conflicts, or potential conflicts, between the commercial interests of the licensee and the need for the licensee to ensure that the market operates in the way mentioned in paragraph 792A(a).
- (2) In particular, such regulations may deal with the following:
- (a) identifying when such a conflict, or potential conflict, is taken to arise;
  - (b) empowering ASIC, instead of the licensee, to make decisions and to take action under the market's operating rules in relation to such a conflict or potential conflict;
  - (c) empowering ASIC to require the licensee to take action under the market's operating rules (whether or not on ASIC's behalf) in relation to such a conflict or potential conflict.

Note: For fees in respect of ASIC performing this function, see Part 9.10.

- (3) Subsection (2) does not limit the generality of subsection (1).

Section 798F

---

## Part 7.2A—Supervision of financial markets

### 798F ASIC to supervise financial markets

ASIC has the function of supervising financial markets the operators of which are licensed under subsection 795B(1).

### 798G Market integrity rules

- (1) ASIC may, by legislative instrument, make rules (the *market integrity rules*) that deal with the following:
  - (a) the activities or conduct of licensed markets;
  - (b) the activities or conduct of persons in relation to licensed markets;
  - (c) the activities or conduct of persons in relation to financial products traded on licensed markets.

Note: The market integrity rules will not apply in relation to all licensed markets: see subsection 798H(2).

- (2) The market integrity rules may include a penalty amount for a rule. A penalty amount must not exceed \$1,000,000.
- (3) ASIC must not make a market integrity rule unless the Minister has consented, in writing, to the making of the rule.

#### *Emergency rules*

- (4) Despite subsection (3), ASIC may make a market integrity rule without the consent of the Minister if ASIC is of the opinion that it is necessary, or in the public interest, to protect people dealing in a financial product or class of financial products.
- (5) However, if ASIC does so, ASIC must:
  - (a) provide the Minister, on the following day, with a written explanation of the need for the rule; and



- (b) amend or revoke the rule in accordance with any written directions of the Minister.

*Minister's instruments are not legislative instruments*

- (6) None of the following is a legislative instrument:
  - (a) a consent given under subsection (3);
  - (b) a direction given under paragraph (5)(b).

### **798H Complying with market integrity rules**

- (1) The following entities must comply with the market integrity rules:
  - (a) operators of licensed markets;
  - (b) participants in licensed markets;
  - (c) entities prescribed by the regulations for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E). For relief from liability to a civil penalty relating to this subsection, see section 1317S.

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a financial market the operator of which is licensed under subsection 795B(2) (overseas markets).
- (3) If there is an inconsistency between the market integrity rules and the derivative transaction rules or the derivative trade repository rules, the market integrity rules prevail to the extent of the inconsistency.

### **798J Directions by ASIC**

- (1) If ASIC is of the opinion that it is necessary, or in the public interest, to protect people dealing in a financial product or class of financial products by:
  - (a) giving a direction to an entity to suspend dealings in the financial product or class of financial products; or
  - (b) giving some other direction in relation to those dealings;

Section 798J

---

ASIC may give written advice to the entity of that opinion and the reasons for it.

Note: ASIC may also give directions to entities that are market licensees under section 794D. A failure to comply with a direction under that section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) If, after receiving ASIC's advice and reasons, the entity does not take:
  - (a) in the case of a proposed direction to suspend dealings in the financial products—action to prevent such dealings; or
  - (b) in any other case—such other action as in ASIC's view is adequate to address the situation raised in the advice;and ASIC still considers that it is appropriate to give the direction to the entity, ASIC may give the entity the written direction with a statement setting out its reasons for making the direction.
- (3) The direction has effect for the period specified in it (which may be up to 21 days). During that period, the entity must comply with the direction and must not allow any dealings to take place contrary to it.
- (4) If the entity fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the entity comply with the direction.
- (5) If, at any time after the entity receives ASIC's advice under subsection (1), the entity requests in writing that ASIC refer the matter to the Minister, ASIC must do so immediately. In that event, the Minister may, if he or she considers it appropriate, require ASIC not to make, or to revoke, the direction. ASIC must immediately comply with such a requirement.
- (6) ASIC may vary a direction by giving written notice to the entity if ASIC is of the opinion that the variation is necessary, or in the public interest, to protect people dealing in a financial product or class of financial products.
- (7) ASIC may revoke a direction by giving written notice to the entity.

- (8) A direction given under subsection (2) is not a legislative instrument.

### **798K Alternatives to civil proceedings**

- (1) The regulations may provide for a person who is alleged to have contravened subsection 798H(1) (complying with market integrity rules) to do one or more of the following as an alternative to civil proceedings:
- (a) pay a penalty to the Commonwealth;
  - (b) undertake or institute remedial measures (including education programs);
  - (c) accept sanctions other than the payment of a penalty to the Commonwealth;
  - (d) enter into a legally enforceable undertaking.
- (2) The penalty payable under regulations made under paragraph (1)(a) in relation to a market integrity rule must not exceed three-fifths of the penalty amount set out in the market integrity rules for the rule.
- (3) Without limiting regulations that may be made under paragraph (1)(d), those regulations may provide for one or more of the following kinds of undertakings:
- (a) an undertaking to take specified action within a specified period;
  - (b) an undertaking to refrain from taking specified action;
  - (c) an undertaking to pay a specified amount within a specified period to the Commonwealth or to some other specified person.

### **798L Exemptions and modifications by regulations**

- (1) The regulations may:
- (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial market or class of financial markets from all or specified provisions of this Part; or

Section 798M

---

- (c) provide that this Part applies in relation to a person or a financial market, or a class of persons or financial markets, as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (2) For the purpose of this section, the provisions of this Part include definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part.

**798M Exemptions by Minister**

- (1) The Minister may exempt a particular financial market, or class of financial markets, from all or specified provisions of this Part. An exemption may be unconditional, or subject to conditions specified in the exemption.

Note: The provisions of this Part include regulations made for the purposes of this Part (see section 761H).

- (2) The Minister may, at any time:
  - (a) vary an exemption to:
    - (i) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on the exemption; or
    - (ii) vary or revoke any of the conditions on the exemption; or
  - (b) revoke an exemption.
- (3) However, the Minister may only take action under subsection (2) after:
  - (a) giving notice, and an opportunity to make submissions on the proposed action, to the operator of each financial market known by the Minister to be covered by the exemption; and
  - (b) if the exemption covers a class of financial markets—a notice has been published on ASIC’s website allowing a reasonable period within which the operator of each financial market covered by the exemption may make submissions on the proposed action, and that period has ended.

Section 798M

---

- (4) If an exemption is expressed to apply in relation to a class of financial markets (whether or not it is also expressed to apply in relation to one or more financial markets otherwise than by reference to membership of a class), then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, is a legislative instrument.
- (5) If subsection (4) does not apply to an exemption, then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, must be in writing and the Minister must publish notice of it in the Gazette.

## Part 7.3—Licensing of clearing and settlement facilities

### Division 1—Requirement to be licensed

#### 820A Need for a licence

- (1) A person must only operate, or hold out that the person operates, a clearing and settlement facility in this jurisdiction if:
- (a) the person has an Australian CS facility licence that authorises the person to operate the facility in this jurisdiction; or
  - (b) the facility is exempt from the operation of this Part.

Note 1: A CS facility licensee may also provide financial services incidental to the operation of the facility: see paragraph 911A(2)(d).

Note 2: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence: see subsection 1311(1).

- (2) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (1), strict liability applies to paragraph (1)(b).

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

#### 820B Other prohibitions on holding out

A person must not hold out:

- (a) that the person has an Australian CS facility licence; or
- (b) that the operation of a clearing and settlement facility by the person in this jurisdiction is authorised by an Australian CS facility licence; or
- (c) that a clearing and settlement facility is exempt from the operation of this Part;

if that is not the case.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **820C Exemptions by Minister**

- (1) The Minister may exempt a particular clearing and settlement facility, or class of clearing and settlement facilities, from all or specified provisions of this Part. An exemption may be unconditional, or subject to conditions specified in the exemption.

Note: The provisions of this Part include regulations made for the purposes of this Part (see section 761H).

- (2) The Minister may, at any time:
- (a) vary an exemption to:
    - (i) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on the exemption; or
    - (ii) vary or revoke any of the conditions on the exemption; or
  - (b) revoke an exemption.
- (3) However, the Minister may only take action under subsection (2) after:
- (a) giving notice, and an opportunity to make submissions on the proposed action, to the operator of each clearing and settlement facility known by the Minister to be covered by the exemption; and
  - (b) if the exemption covers a class of clearing and settlement facilities—a notice has been published on ASIC's website allowing a reasonable period within which the operator of each clearing and settlement facility covered by the exemption may make submissions on the proposed action, and that period has ended.
- (4) If an exemption is expressed to apply in relation to a class of clearing and settlement facilities (whether or not it is also expressed to apply in relation to one or more clearing and settlement facilities otherwise than by reference to membership of a class), then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, is a legislative instrument.

Section 820D

---

- (5) If subsection (4) does not apply to an exemption, then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, must be in writing and the Minister must publish notice of it in the Gazette.

**820D When a clearing and settlement facility is taken to be operated in this jurisdiction**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a clearing and settlement facility is taken to be operated *in this jurisdiction* if it is operated by a body corporate that is registered under Chapter 2A.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not limit the circumstances in which a clearing and settlement facility is operated *in this jurisdiction* for the purposes of this Chapter.



## **Division 2—Regulation of CS facility licensees**

### **Subdivision A—Licensee’s obligations**

#### **821A General obligations**

A CS facility licensee must:

- (aa) to the extent that it is reasonably practicable to do so:
  - (i) comply with standards determined under section 827D;  
and
  - (ii) do all other things necessary to reduce systemic risk;  
and
- (a) to the extent that it is reasonably practicable to do so, do all things necessary to ensure that the facility’s services are provided in a fair and effective way; and
- (b) comply with the conditions on the licence; and
- (c) have adequate arrangements (whether they involve a self-regulatory structure or the appointment of an independent person or related entity) for supervising the facility, including arrangements for:
  - (i) handling conflicts between the commercial interests of the licensee and the need for the licensee to ensure that the facility’s services are provided in a fair and effective way; and
  - (ii) enforcing compliance with the facility’s operating rules;  
and
- (d) have sufficient resources (including financial, technological and human resources) to operate the facility properly and for the required supervisory arrangements to be provided; and
- (e) if the licensee is a foreign body corporate—be registered under Division 2 of Part 5B.2; and
- (f) if the licence was granted under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities)—both:

**Section 821B**

---

- (i) remain authorised to operate a clearing and settlement facility in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located; and
  - (ii) get the Minister's approval under section 821F before that principal place of business becomes located in any other foreign country; and
- (g) if the licensee, or a holding company of the licensee, is a widely held market body (within the meaning of Division 1 of Part 7.4)—take all reasonable steps to ensure that an unacceptable control situation (within the meaning of that Division) does not exist in relation to the body; and
- (h) take all reasonable steps to ensure that no disqualified individual becomes, or remains, involved in the licensee (see Division 2 of Part 7.4).

**821B Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters**

- (1) A CS facility licensee must give written notice to ASIC, as soon as practicable, if it becomes aware that it may no longer be able to meet, or has breached, an obligation under section 821A. If ASIC considers it appropriate to do so, ASIC may give the Minister advice about the matter.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) A CS facility licensee must give written notice to ASIC, as soon as practicable, as required by the following paragraphs:
- (a) if the licensee provides a new class of financial service incidental to the operation of the facility, the licensee must give notice that includes details of the new class;
  - (b) if the licensee takes any kind of disciplinary action against a participant in the facility, the licensee must give notice that includes:
    - (i) the participant's name; and
    - (ii) the reason for and nature of the action taken;
  - (c) if the licensee has reason to suspect that a person has committed, is committing, or is about to commit a significant

contravention of the facility's operating rules or this Act, the licensee must give notice that includes:

- (i) the person's name; and
- (ii) details of the contravention or impending contravention; and
- (iii) the licensee's reasons for that belief.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) A CS facility licensee whose licence was granted under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities) must, as soon as practicable, give written notice to ASIC if:
- (a) the licensee ceases to be authorised to operate a clearing and settlement facility in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located; or
  - (b) there is a significant change to the regulatory regime applying in relation to the facility in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) As soon as practicable after:
- (a) a person becomes or ceases to be a director, secretary or senior manager of a CS facility licensee or of a holding company of a CS facility licensee (including when a person changes from one of those positions to another); or
  - (b) a CS facility licensee becomes aware that a person has come to have, or has ceased to have, more than 15% of the voting power in the licensee or in a holding company of the licensee;

the licensee must give written notice of this to ASIC. The notice must include such other information about the matter as is prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: To the extent that the licensee is required to give the notice and information under any other provision of this Act, the licensee may

## Section 821BA

---

comply with this subsection by doing so. It need not provide the same information twice.

### **821BA Obligation to notify Reserve Bank of certain matters**

- (1) A CS facility licensee must give written notice to the Reserve Bank of Australia (the *Reserve Bank*), as soon as practicable, if:
  - (a) the licensee becomes aware that it has failed to comply with standards determined under section 827D, or is likely to fail to comply with such standards; or
  - (b) the licensee becomes aware that it may no longer be able to meet, or has breached, its obligation under subparagraph 821A(aa)(ii).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) If the Reserve Bank considers it appropriate to do so, the Reserve Bank may give the Minister advice about the matter.

### **821C Obligation to assist**

#### *ASIC*

- (1) A CS facility licensee must give such assistance to ASIC, or a person authorised by ASIC, as ASIC or the authorised person reasonably requests in relation to the performance of ASIC's functions.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Such assistance may include showing ASIC the licensee's books or giving ASIC other information.

#### *Reserve Bank*

- (3) A CS facility licensee must give such assistance to the Reserve Bank of Australia (the *Reserve Bank*), or a person authorised by the Reserve Bank, as the Reserve Bank or the authorised person

reasonably requests in relation to the performance of the Reserve Bank's functions under this Part.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) Such assistance may include showing the Reserve Bank the licensee's books or giving the Reserve Bank other information.

### **821D Obligation to give ASIC access to the facility**

A CS facility licensee must give a person authorised by ASIC such reasonable access to the facility as the person requests for any of the purposes of this Chapter.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **821E Annual report**

- (1) A CS facility licensee must, within 3 months after the end of its financial year, give ASIC an annual report on the extent to which the licensee complied with its obligations as a CS facility licensee under this Chapter.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) The licensee must ensure that the annual report is accompanied by any information and statements prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) The licensee must also ensure that the annual report is accompanied by any audit report that the Minister requires under subsection (4).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) The Minister may, by giving written notice to a CS facility licensee, require the licensee to obtain an audit report on the annual

Section 821F

---

report and on any information or statements accompanying it. The Minister must nominate to prepare the audit report:

- (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) a specified person or body that is suitably qualified.
- (5) ASIC must give the annual report and accompanying material to the Minister.

**821F Change of country by foreign licensee**

- (1) In the case of a licence granted under subsection 824B(2), the Minister may approve the location of the licensee's principal place of business in a new country only if:
- (a) the new country is not Australia; and
  - (b) the operation of the facility in that country will be subject to requirements and supervision that are sufficiently equivalent, in relation to the degree of protection from systemic risk and the level of effectiveness and fairness of services they achieve, to the requirements and supervision to which clearing and settlement facilities are subject under this Act in relation to those matters.
- (2) If, in relation to a licence granted under subsection 824B(2), the licensee's principal place of business changes to become a place in Australia:
- (a) the licence ceases to be in force from the time of the change; and
  - (b) if the licensee wishes the facility to continue to be licensed, the licensee may apply for the grant of a new licence under subsection 824B(1); and
  - (c) the application must be assessed in accordance with Subdivision A of Division 3, subject to such modifications (if any) of that Subdivision as are set out in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (3) An application referred to in paragraph (2)(b) may be made in advance of the change of location of the principal place of business, and a decision on the application may be made before

that time. However, any licence granted pursuant to the application does not come into force until the change occurs.

### **Subdivision B—The facility’s operating rules and procedures**

#### **822A Content of the operating rules and procedures**

- (1) The operating rules of a licensed CS facility must deal with the matters prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.
- (2) The regulations may also prescribe matters in respect of which a licensed CS facility must have written procedures.
- (3) However, subsections (1) and (2) do not apply if the licensee is also authorised to operate the facility in the foreign country in which its principal place of business is located and the licence was granted under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities).
- (4) In a subsection (3) case, ASIC may determine, by giving written notice to the licensee, matters in respect of which the licensed CS facility must have written procedures.

#### **822B Legal effect of operating rules**

- (1) The operating rules of a licensed CS facility have effect as a contract under seal:
  - (a) between the licensee and each issuer of financial products in respect of which the facility provides its services; and
  - (b) between the licensee and each participant in the facility; and
  - (c) between each issuer of financial products in respect of which the facility provides its services and each participant in the facility; and
  - (d) between a participant in the facility and each other participant in the facility;under which each of those persons agrees to observe the operating rules to the extent that they apply to the person and to engage in

Section 822C

---

conduct that the person is required by the operating rules to engage in.

- (2) However, if there is an inconsistency between the operating rules of a licensed CS facility and any of the following other rules:
- (a) the derivative transaction rules;
  - (b) the derivative trade repository rules;
- those other rules prevail over the operating rules to the extent of the inconsistency.

Note: If there is an inconsistency between the derivative transaction rules and the derivative trade repository rules, the derivative transaction rules prevail: see subsection 901E(2).

**822C Enforcement of operating rules**

- (1) If a person who is under an obligation to comply with or enforce any of a licensed CS facility's operating rules fails to meet that obligation, an application to the Court may be made by:
- (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) the licensee; or
  - (c) the operator of a financial market with which the facility has arrangements to provide services for transactions effected through the market; or
  - (d) a person aggrieved by the failure.
- (2) After giving an opportunity to be heard to the applicant and the person against whom the order is sought, the Court may make an order giving directions to:
- (a) the person against whom the order is sought; or
  - (b) if that person is a body corporate—the directors of the body corporate;
- about compliance with, or enforcement of, the operating rules.



## **822D Changing the operating rules**

### *Licensed CS facilities other than subsection 824B(2) facilities*

- (1) As soon as practicable after a change is made to the operating rules of a licensed CS facility, other than a facility licensed under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities), the licensee must lodge with ASIC written notice of the change. The notice must:
  - (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the change was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the change.
- (2) If no notice is lodged with ASIC, as required by subsection (1), within 21 days after the change is made, the change ceases to have effect at the end of that period.

### *Subsection 824B(2) facilities*

- (3) As soon as practicable after a change is made to the operating rules of a clearing and settlement facility the operation of which is licensed under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities), the licensee must lodge with ASIC written notice of the change. The notice must:
  - (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the change was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the change.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

## **822E Disallowance of changes to operating rules**

- (1) This section does not apply in respect of an Australian CS facility licence granted under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities).

Section 823A

---

- (2) As soon as practicable after receiving a notice under section 822D from a CS facility licensee, ASIC must send a copy of the notice to the Minister.
- (3) Within 28 days after ASIC receives the notice from the licensee, the Minister may disallow all or a specified part of the change to the operating rules.
- (4) In deciding whether to do so, the Minister must have regard to the consistency of the change with the licensee's obligations under this Part (including in particular the obligations mentioned in paragraphs 821A(aa) and (a)).

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 827A.
- (5) As soon as practicable after all or a part of a change is disallowed, ASIC must give notice of the disallowance to the licensee. The change ceases to have effect, to the extent of the disallowance, when the licensee receives the notice.

**Subdivision C—Powers of the Minister, ASIC and the Reserve Bank in relation to licensees**

**823A Minister's power to give directions**

- (1) If the Minister considers that a CS facility licensee is not complying with its obligations as a CS facility licensee under this Chapter, the Minister may give the licensee a written direction to do specified things that the Minister believes will promote compliance by the licensee with those obligations.
- (2) The licensee must comply with the direction.
- (3) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.
- (4) The Minister may vary or revoke a direction at any time by giving written notice to the licensee.

### **823B Minister's power to require special report**

- (1) The Minister may give a CS facility licensee a written notice requiring the licensee to give ASIC a special report on specified matters. ASIC must give the report to the Minister.
- (2) The notice may also require the licensee to give ASIC an audit report on the special report. The Minister must nominate to prepare the report:
  - (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) a specified person or body that is suitably qualified.
- (3) The licensee must give the special report, and audit report (if any), to ASIC within the time required by the notice.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **823C ASIC assessment of licensee's compliance**

- (1) ASIC may do an assessment of how well a CS facility licensee is complying with its obligations as a CS facility licensee under this Chapter (other than its obligation under paragraph 821A(aa)). In doing the assessment, ASIC may take account of any information and reports that it thinks appropriate, including information and reports from an overseas regulatory authority.
- (2) If the CS facility licensee is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this subsection, ASIC must, in respect of the obligation in paragraph 821A(c), do such an assessment at least once a year.
- (3) As soon as practicable after doing an assessment under this section, ASIC must give a written report on the assessment to the Minister and a copy of the written report to the Reserve Bank of Australia.
- (4) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to any other person's affairs to a material extent, ASIC may, at the person's request or of its own motion, give the person a copy of the written report on the assessment or the relevant part of the report.

Section 823CA

---

- (5) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to a serious contravention of a law of the Commonwealth or of a State or Territory, ASIC may give a copy of the written report on the assessment, or the relevant part of the report, to:
- (a) the Australian Federal Police; or
  - (b) the Chief Executive Officer of the Australian Crime Commission or a member of the staff of the ACC (within the meaning of the *Australian Crime Commission Act 2002*); or
  - (c) the Director of Public Prosecutions; or
  - (d) an agency prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (6) Either the Minister or ASIC may cause the written report on an assessment, or part of the report on an assessment, to be printed and published.

**823CA Reserve Bank assessment of licensee's compliance**

- (1) The Reserve Bank of Australia (the **Reserve Bank**) may do an assessment of how well a CS facility licensee is complying with its obligation under paragraph 821A(aa). In doing the assessment, the Reserve Bank may take account of any information and reports that it thinks appropriate, including information and reports from an overseas regulatory authority.
- (1A) If the CS facility licensee is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this subsection, the Reserve Bank must do such an assessment at least once a year.
- (2) As soon as practicable after doing an assessment under this section, the Reserve Bank must give a written report on the assessment to the Minister and a copy of the written report to ASIC.
- (3) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to any other person's affairs to a material extent, the Reserve Bank may, at the person's request or of its own motion, give the person a copy of the written report on the assessment or the relevant part of the report.

- (4) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to a serious contravention of a law of the Commonwealth or of a State or Territory, the Reserve Bank may give a copy of the written report on the assessment, or the relevant part of the report, to:
- (a) the Australian Federal Police; or
  - (b) the Chief Executive Officer of the Australian Crime Commission or a member of the staff of the ACC (within the meaning of the *Australian Crime Commission Act 2002*); or
  - (c) the Director of Public Prosecutions; or
  - (d) an agency prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (5) Either the Minister or the Reserve Bank may cause the written report on an assessment, or part of the report on an assessment, to be printed and published.

**823D Directions power—protecting dealings in financial products and ensuring fair and effective provision of services by CS facilities**

- (1) If ASIC:
- (a) considers that it is necessary, or in the public interest, to protect people dealing in a financial product or class of financial products; or
  - (b) considers that a CS facility licensee has not done all things reasonably practicable to ensure the facility's services are provided in a fair and effective way;
- ASIC may give the licensee written advice that it intends to give the licensee a specified direction under this section. The advice must include the reasons for ASIC's intention to give the direction.
- (2) As soon as practicable after giving the advice to the licensee, ASIC must give notice of the advice to the operator of each financial market with which the facility has arrangements to provide services for transactions effected through the market.

Section 823D

---

- (3) For the purpose of remedying the matter mentioned in subsection (1), ASIC may give the following directions to the licensee under this section:
- (a) a direction not to provide the licensee's services in relation to any transactions, of which the licensee receives notice after the direction takes effect, that relate to a specified financial product or class of financial products;
  - (b) any other direction concerning dealings with transactions that relate to a specified financial product or class of financial products.
- (4) If, after receiving ASIC's advice and reasons:
- (a) the licensee does not take steps that in ASIC's view are adequate to address the situation; and
  - (b) ASIC still considers that it is appropriate to give the direction to the licensee;
- ASIC may give the licensee the direction, in writing, with a statement setting out the reasons for giving the direction.
- (5) The direction has effect until the earlier of the following times:
- (a) the time ASIC revokes the direction in accordance with subsection (10);
  - (b) the end of the period (which may be up to 21 days) specified in the direction as the period during which the direction is effective ends.
- While the direction has effect, the licensee must comply with the direction and must not provide any services contrary to it.
- Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).
- (6) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.
- (7) As soon as practicable after making or varying (see subsection (9)) a direction, ASIC must:
- (a) give a copy of the direction or variation to:

Section 823E

---

- (i) if the direction relates to a specified financial product—the issuer of that product; and
  - (ii) each of the operators mentioned in subsection (2); and
  - (b) give a written report to the Minister setting out ASIC’s reasons for making the direction or variation; and
  - (c) give a copy of the report to the licensee.
- (8) If, at any time after the licensee receives ASIC’s advice under subsection (1), the licensee requests in writing that ASIC refer the matter to the Minister, ASIC must do so immediately. In that event, the Minister may, if he or she considers it appropriate, require ASIC not to make, or to revoke, the direction. ASIC must immediately comply with such a requirement.
- (9) ASIC may vary a direction by giving written notice to the licensee.
- (10) ASIC may revoke a direction by giving written notice to the licensee. ASIC must also give written notice of the revocation to each of the operators mentioned in subsection (2).

**823E Directions power—reduction of systemic risk**

- (1) If ASIC considers that a CS facility licensee has not done all things reasonably practicable to reduce systemic risk in the provision of the facility’s services, ASIC may give the licensee a direction, in writing, to take:
- (a) specified measures to comply with the whole or a part of a standard determined under section 827D; or
  - (b) any other action that ASIC considers will reduce systemic risk in the provision of the facility’s services.
- (2) The direction may deal with the time by which, or period during which, it is to be complied with. The time or period must be reasonable.
- (3) The licensee must comply with the direction.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Section 823E

---

- (3A) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.
- (4) ASIC may vary the direction by giving written notice to the licensee.
- (5) The direction has effect until ASIC revokes it by giving written notice to the licensee.
- (6) ASIC may revoke the direction if, at the time of revocation, it considers that the direction is no longer necessary or appropriate.
- (7) Before giving, varying or revoking the direction, ASIC must consult the Reserve Bank of Australia. However, a failure to consult the Reserve Bank of Australia does not invalidate the direction, variation or revocation.
- (8) The Reserve Bank of Australia may at any time request ASIC to make a direction under this section. However, ASIC is not required to comply with the request.



## **Division 3—The Australian CS facility licence**

### **Subdivision A—How to get a licence**

#### **824A How to apply for a licence**

- (1) A body corporate may apply for an Australian CS facility licence by lodging with ASIC an application that:
  - (a) includes the information required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; and
  - (b) is accompanied by the documents (if any) required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (2) ASIC must, within a reasonable time, give the application to the Minister with advice about the application.

#### **824B When a licence may be granted**

##### *General*

- (1) The Minister may grant an applicant an Australian CS facility licence if the Minister is satisfied that:
  - (a) the application was made in accordance with section 824A; and
  - (b) the applicant will comply with the obligations that will apply if the licence is granted; and
  - (c) the applicant has adequate operating rules, and procedures, (see Subdivision B of Division 2) for the facility to ensure, as far as is reasonably practicable, that systemic risk is reduced and the facility is operated in a fair and effective way; and
  - (d) the applicant has adequate arrangements (whether they involve a self-regulatory structure or the appointment of an independent person or related entity) for supervising the facility, including arrangements for:

**Section 824B**

---

- (i) handling conflicts between the commercial interests of the licensee and the need for the licensee to reduce systemic risk and ensure that the facility's services are provided in a fair and effective way; and
- (ii) enforcing compliance with the facility's operating rules; and
- (e) no unacceptable control situation (see Division 1 of Part 7.4) is likely to result if the licence is granted; and
- (f) no disqualified individual appears to be involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4).

This subsection has effect subject to subsections (3) and (4).

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 827A in deciding whether to grant a licence.

*Alternative criteria for granting licence to overseas clearing and settlement facility*

- (2) If an applicant is authorised to operate a clearing and settlement facility in the foreign country in which its principal place of business is located, the Minister may grant the applicant an Australian CS facility licence authorising the applicant to operate the same facility in this jurisdiction. The Minister must be satisfied that:
  - (a) the application was made in accordance with section 824A; and
  - (b) the applicant will comply with the obligations that will apply if the licence is granted; and
  - (c) the operation of the facility in that country is subject to requirements and supervision that are sufficiently equivalent, in relation to the degree of protection from systemic risk and the level of effectiveness and fairness of services they achieve, to the requirements and supervision to which clearing and settlement facilities are subject under this Act in relation to those matters; and
  - (d) the applicant undertakes to cooperate with ASIC and the Reserve Bank of Australia by sharing information and in other ways; and

- (e) no unacceptable control situation (see Division 1 of Part 7.4) is likely to result if the licence is granted; and
- (f) no disqualified individual appears to be involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4); and
- (g) any other requirements that are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection are satisfied.

This subsection has effect subject to subsections (3) and (4).

Note: The Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 827A in deciding whether to grant a licence.

*Foreign bodies*

- (3) If the applicant is a foreign body corporate, the Minister:
  - (a) must not grant the applicant a licence unless the applicant is registered under Division 2 of Part 5B.2; and
  - (b) may otherwise grant a licence under either subsection (1) or (2) (subject to the relevant criteria being satisfied).

*Disqualified individuals*

- (4) The Minister must not grant the applicant a licence unless:
  - (a) ASIC has notified the Minister that, as far as ASIC is aware, no disqualified individual is involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4); or
  - (b) 42 days have passed since the application was made and ASIC has not given a notice under subsection 853D(2) to the applicant within that 42 days.

**824C Publication of notice of licence grant**

If the Minister grants an Australian CS facility licence, the Minister must publish a notice in the *Gazette* stating:

- (a) the name of the licensee; and
- (b) the date on which the licence was granted; and
- (c) the conditions on the licence.

Section 824D

---

**824D More than one licence in the same document**

If the Minister grants a person 2 or more of the following:

- (a) an Australian CS facility licence;
  - (b) an Australian market licence;
- they may be included in the same document.

**824E More than one CS facility covered by the same licence**

- (1) The same Australian CS facility licence may authorise the licensee to operate 2 or more clearing and settlement facilities.
- (2) In that case, a reference in this Chapter to the clearing and settlement facility to which an Australian CS facility licence relates is taken instead to be a reference to each of those facilities severally.
- (3) Before varying the conditions on an Australian CS facility licence so as to add another facility that the licensee is authorised to operate, the Minister must be satisfied of the matters listed in subsection 824B(1) or (2) (as appropriate) in relation to the facility.
- (4) An Australian CS facility licence that authorises the licensee to operate 2 or more clearing and settlement facilities may be suspended or cancelled under Subdivision C in respect of one or some of those facilities only, as if the licensee held a separate licence for each of the facilities.

**Subdivision B—The conditions on the licence**

**825A The conditions on the licence**

- (1) The Minister may, at any time:
  - (a) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on an Australian CS facility licence; or
  - (b) vary or revoke conditions imposed on such a licence;

by giving written notice to the licensee. The Minister must also publish a notice in the *Gazette* with details of the action and when it took effect.

Note: As well as the requirements in this section, the Minister must also have regard to the matters in section 827A.

- (2) The Minister may do so:
- (a) on the Minister's own initiative, subject to subsection (3); or
  - (b) if the licensee lodges with ASIC an application for the Minister to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (3) The Minister may only impose conditions or additional conditions, or vary the conditions, on the licence on his or her own initiative if:
- (a) he or she considers it appropriate to do so having regard to:
    - (i) the licensee's obligations as a CS facility licensee under this Chapter; and
    - (ii) any change in the facility's operations or the conditions in which the facility is operating; and
  - (b) the Minister gives the licensee written notice of the proposed action and an opportunity to make a submission before it takes effect.

This subsection does not apply to the Minister imposing conditions when a licence is granted.

- (4) The Minister must ensure that each Australian CS facility licence is subject to conditions that specify:
- (a) the particular facility that the licensee is authorised to operate; and
  - (b) the class or classes of financial products in respect of which the facility can provide services.
- (5) ASIC must give the Minister any application and documents lodged under subsection (2).

Section 826A

---

**Subdivision C—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled**

**826A Varying licences**

- (1) The Minister may vary an Australian CS facility licence to take account of a change in the licensee's name if the licensee lodges with ASIC an application for the variation, accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note 1: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 825A.

Note 2: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (2) The Minister must give written notice of the variation to the licensee.
- (3) ASIC must give the Minister any application and documents lodged under subsection (1).

**826B Immediate suspension or cancellation**

The Minister may, by giving written notice to a CS facility licensee, suspend the licence for a specified period, or cancel it, if:

- (a) the licensee ceases to carry on the business of operating the facility; or
- (b) the licensee becomes a Chapter 5 body corporate; or
- (c) the licensee asks the Minister to do so; or
- (d) in the case of a licence granted under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities):
- (i) the licensee ceases to be authorised to operate a clearing and settlement facility in the foreign country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located; or
- (ii) there is a change to the regulatory regime applying in relation to the facility to which the licence relates in the country in which the licensee's principal place of business is located, and, because of that change, the

Minister is no longer satisfied as mentioned in paragraph 824B(2)(c); or

- (e) in the case of a licensee that is a leviable entity (within the meaning of the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017*)—the following have not been paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
- (i) an amount of levy (if any) payable in respect of the licensee;
  - (ii) the amount of late payment penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy;
  - (iii) the amount of shortfall penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy.

### **826C Suspension or cancellation following hearing and report**

- (1) If the Minister considers that a CS facility licensee has breached one or more of its obligations as a CS facility licensee under this Chapter, the Minister may give the licensee a written notice that requires the licensee to show cause, at a hearing before a specified person, why the licence should not be suspended or cancelled.
- (2) The notice must specify:
- (a) the grounds on which it is proposed to suspend or cancel the licence; and
  - (b) a reasonable time and place at which the hearing is to be held.
- However, if the licensee consents, the person conducting the hearing may fix a different time or place.
- (3) The person conducting the hearing must:
- (a) give the licensee an opportunity to be heard at the hearing; and
  - (b) give the Minister:
    - (i) a report about the hearing; and
    - (ii) a recommendation about the grounds in the notice on which it is proposed to suspend or cancel the licence.

## Section 826D

---

- (4) After considering the report and recommendation, the Minister may:
- (a) decide to take no further action in relation to the matter and give written advice of that decision to the licensee; or
  - (b) suspend the licence for a specified period, or cancel the licence, by giving written notice to the licensee.

Note: The Minister must have regard to the matters in section 827A.

### **826D Effect of suspension**

- (1) A person whose Australian CS facility licence is suspended is taken not to hold that licence while it is suspended.
- (2) However, the Minister may specify in the written notice to the licensee that subsection (1) does not apply for specified purposes.

### **826E Variation or revocation of suspension**

The Minister may at any time vary or revoke a suspension of an Australian CS facility licence by giving written notice to the licensee.

### **826F Publication of notice of licence suspension or cancellation**

- (1) If the Minister:
  - (a) suspends, or varies or revokes a suspension of, an Australian CS facility licence; or
  - (b) cancels an Australian CS facility licence;the Minister must publish a notice in the *Gazette* to that effect.
- (2) The notice must state when the action took effect.

### **826G Suspension and cancellation only in accordance with this Subdivision**

An Australian CS facility licence cannot be varied, suspended or cancelled otherwise than in accordance with this Subdivision.



Note: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 825A.

## **Division 4—Other matters**

### **827A Matters to be taken into account by the Minister**

- (1) The Minister must have regard to certain matters in deciding whether to:
  - (a) grant an applicant an Australian CS facility licence under section 824B; or
  - (b) impose, vary or revoke conditions on such a licence under section 825A; or
  - (c) suspend or cancel such a licence under section 826C; or
  - (d) disallow a change to the operating rules of a licensed CS facility under section 822E.
  
- (2) These are the matters the Minister must have regard to:
  - (a) the structure, or proposed structure, of the facility;
  - (b) the nature of the services provided, or proposed to be provided, by the facility;
  - (c) the size, or proposed size, of the facility;
  - (d) the nature of the financial products in respect of which the facility provides services or proposes to provide services;
  - (e) the participants, or proposed participants, in the facility and whether those participants:
    - (i) in using the facility's services, are, or will be, providing financial services to other persons; or
    - (ii) use, or will use, the facility's services in respect of financial products they acquire or dispose of as retail clients or as wholesale clients; or
    - (iii) are, or will be, participants in a financial market, or other clearing and settlement facilities, as well;
  - (f) the technology used, or proposed to be used, in the operation of the facility;
  - (g) whether it would be in the public interest to take the action referred to in subsection (1);

(h) any relevant advice received from ASIC or the Reserve Bank of Australia.

The Minister may also have regard to any other matter that the Minister considers relevant.

- (3) If the Minister is deciding whether to take the action mentioned in paragraph (1)(a), (b) or (c) in respect of an Australian CS facility licence granted under subsection 824B(2) (overseas clearing and settlement facilities), the Minister must also have regard to:
- (a) the criteria that the licensee or applicant satisfied to obtain an authorisation to operate the same facility in the foreign country in which their principal place of business is located; and
  - (b) the obligations they must continue to satisfy to keep the authorisation; and
  - (c) the level of supervision to which the facility is subject in that country; and
  - (d) whether adequate arrangements exist for cooperation between ASIC, the Reserve Bank of Australia and the authority, or authorities, that are responsible for that supervision.

### **827B ASIC may give advice to Minister**

ASIC may give advice to the Minister in relation to:

- (a) any matter in respect of which the Minister has a discretion under this Part; or
- (b) any other matter concerning clearing and settlement facilities.

Note: In some cases, the Minister must have regard to ASIC's advice: see paragraph 827A(2)(h).

### **827C Reserve Bank may give advice to Minister**

The Reserve Bank of Australia may give advice to the Minister in relation to any matter concerning clearing and settlement facilities.

Note: In some cases, the Minister must have regard to the Reserve Bank's advice: see paragraph 827A(2)(h).

Section 827D

---

**827D Reserve Bank may determine financial stability standards**

- (1) The Reserve Bank of Australia (the *Reserve Bank*) may, in writing, determine standards for the purposes of ensuring that CS facility licensees conduct their affairs in a way that causes or promotes overall stability in the Australian financial system.
  - (2) The standards are to be complied with by:
    - (a) all CS facility licensees; or
    - (b) a specified class of CS facility licensees, in the case of a standard that is expressed to apply only in relation to that class.
  - (2A) If there is an inconsistency between the standards and the derivative transaction rules or the derivative trade repository rules, the standards prevail to the extent of the inconsistency.
  - (3) Before the Reserve Bank determines a standard, it must consult with:
    - (a) the CS facility licensees that will be required to comply with the standard; and
    - (b) ASIC.
  - (4) A standard may impose different requirements to be complied with in different situations or in respect of different activities.
  - (5) A standard:
    - (a) comes into force:
      - (i) unless subparagraph (ii) applies—on the day on which the determination of the standard is made; or
      - (ii) if that determination specifies a later day as the day on which the standard comes into force—on the day so specified; and
    - (b) continues in force until it is revoked.
  - (6) The Reserve Bank may vary a standard in writing. Before it does so, it must consult with:
    - (a) the CS facility licensees that will be required to comply with the standard if it is varied as proposed; and
-

- (b) ASIC.
- (7) If the Reserve Bank determines or varies a standard, it must, as soon as practicable:
- (a) cause a notice advising of the determination of the standard, or of the variation of the standard, and summarising the purpose and effect of the standard or variation, to be published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) make the text of the notice available on the internet; and
  - (c) give a copy of the standard, or of the variation, to the following:
    - (i) each CS facility licensee to which the standard applies;
    - (ii) the Minister;
    - (iii) ASIC.
- (8) The Reserve Bank may revoke a standard in writing. Before it does so, it must consult with ASIC.
- (9) If the Reserve Bank revokes a standard, it must, as soon as practicable:
- (a) cause a notice advising of the revocation of the standard to be published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) make the text of the notice available on the internet; and
  - (c) give notice of the revocation of the standard to the following:
    - (i) each CS facility licensee to which the standard applied;
    - (ii) the Minister;
    - (iii) ASIC.
- (10) The Reserve Bank must take reasonable steps to ensure that copies of the current text of the standards are available for inspection and purchase.

## Part 7.4—Limits on involvement with licensees

### Division 1—Limit on control of certain licensees

#### Subdivision A—15% voting power limit

##### 850A Scope of Division

- (1) This Division applies in relation to a body corporate that:
  - (a) has an Australian market licence or an Australian CS facility licence; or
  - (b) is the holding company of a body corporate that has an Australian market licence or an Australian CS facility licence;and that is specified in regulations made for the purposes of this section.
- (2) In this Division, such a body is called a *widely held market body*.

##### 850B Meaning of unacceptable control situation

- (1) For the purposes of this Division, an *unacceptable control situation* exists in relation to a widely held market body and in relation to a particular person if the person's voting power in the body is more than:
  - (a) 15%; or
  - (b) in relation to a body other than the Australian Stock Exchange Limited—if an approval of a higher percentage is in force under Subdivision B in relation to the body and in relation to the person, that higher percentage; or
  - (c) in relation to the Australian Stock Exchange Limited—if the regulations prescribe a higher percentage in relation to the Australian Stock Exchange Limited in relation to the person, that higher percentage.

- (2) Regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (1)(c) may not take effect earlier than the day after the last day on which the regulations may be disallowed under Part 5 of the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

### **850C Acquisitions of shares**

If:

- (a) a person, or 2 or more persons under an arrangement, acquire shares in a body corporate; and
- (b) the acquisition has the result, in relation to a widely held market body, that:
  - (i) an unacceptable control situation comes into existence in relation to the body and in relation to a person; or
  - (ii) if an unacceptable control situation already exists in relation to the body and in relation to a person—there is an increase in the voting power of the person in the body;

the person or persons mentioned in paragraph (a) contravene this section.

Note: A contravention of this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **850D Remedial orders**

- (1) If an unacceptable control situation exists in relation to a widely held market body, the Court may make such orders as the Court considers appropriate for the purpose of ensuring that the unacceptable control situation ceases to exist.
- (2) However, the Court may only make orders under this section on application by:
  - (a) the Minister; or
  - (b) ASIC; or
  - (c) the body; or
  - (d) a person who has any voting power in the body.
- (3) The Court's orders may include:

Section 850E

---

- (a) an order directing the disposal of shares; or
  - (b) an order restraining the exercise of any rights attached to shares; or
  - (c) an order prohibiting or deferring the payment of any sums due to a person in respect of shares held by the person; or
  - (d) an order that any exercise of rights attached to shares be disregarded; or
  - (e) an order directing any person to do or refrain from doing a specified act, for the purpose of securing compliance with any other order made under this section; or
  - (f) an order containing such ancillary or consequential provisions as the Court thinks just.
- (4) Subsection (3) does not, by implication, limit subsection (1).
- (5) Before making an order under this section, the Court may direct that notice of the application be given to such persons as the Court thinks fit or be published in such manner as the Court thinks fit, or both.
- (6) The Court may, by order:
- (a) rescind, vary or discharge an order made by the Court under this section; or
  - (b) suspend the operation of such an order.

**850E Injunctions**

- (1) If any conduct (including a refusal or failure to act) amounts or would amount to a contravention of this Division in relation to a particular widely held market body, the body is taken, for the purposes of section 1324, to be a person whose interests are affected by the conduct.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not, by implication, limit the class of persons whose interests are affected by the conduct.



- (3) The Minister has the same powers as ASIC to apply for an injunction under section 1324 in relation to a contravention of this Division.
- (4) The powers in sections 850D and 1324 do not, by implication, limit each other.

### **Subdivision B—Approval to exceed 15% voting power limit**

#### **851A Application for approval to exceed 15% voting power limit**

- (1) A person may apply for approval to have voting power of more than 15% in a particular widely held market body (other than the Australian Stock Exchange Limited) by lodging with ASIC an application that:
  - (a) specifies the percentage of voting power (if any) the person currently has in the widely held market body; and
  - (b) specifies the percentage of voting power the person is seeking approval to have in the body; and
  - (c) sets out the person's reasons for making the application.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (2) ASIC must give the application to the Minister as soon as possible.

#### **851B Approval of application**

- (1) If the Minister is satisfied that it is in the national interest to approve the applicant having voting power in the widely held market body of more than 15%, the Minister may grant the application.
- (2) If the Minister grants the application, the Minister must:
  - (a) give written notice of the approval to the applicant; and
  - (b) specify the percentage of the voting power the Minister approves the applicant having in the widely held market body (which may or may not be the percentage the applicant applied for); and
  - (c) either:

Section 851C

---

- (i) specify the period during which the approval remains in force; or
  - (ii) specify that the approval remains in force indefinitely.
- (3) If the Minister refuses the application, the Minister must give written notice of the refusal to the applicant.
- (4) As soon as practicable, the Minister must arrange for a copy of a notice of approval under this section to be:
- (a) published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) given to the body concerned.

**851C Duration of approval**

- (1) An approval under section 851B remains in force:
- (a) if the notice of approval specifies a period during which the approval remains in force—until the end of that period, or if the Minister extends that period, until the end of that extended period; or
  - (b) otherwise—indefinitely.

*Extension of approval*

- (2) A person who holds an approval under section 851B that is in force for a specified period may apply to extend that period by lodging with ASIC an application that sets out the person's reasons for making the application.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (3) ASIC must give the application to the Minister as soon as possible.
- (4) If the Minister is satisfied that it is in the national interest to grant the extension, the Minister may grant the application.
- (5) If the Minister grants the application, the Minister must:
- (a) give written notice of the extension to the applicant; and

- (b) specify the extended period during which the approval remains in force (which may or may not be the period the applicant applied for).
- (6) If the Minister refuses the application, the Minister must give written notice of the refusal to the applicant.
- (7) As soon as practicable, the Minister must arrange for a copy of a notice of extension under this section to be:
  - (a) published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) given to the widely held market body concerned.

### **851D Conditions of approval**

- (1) An approval under section 851B is subject to such conditions (if any) as are specified in the notice of approval.
- (2) The Minister may, by written notice given to a person who holds an approval under section 851B:
  - (a) impose one or more conditions or further conditions to which the approval is subject; or
  - (b) revoke or vary any condition:
    - (i) imposed under paragraph (a); or
    - (ii) specified in the notice of approval.
- (3) The Minister's power under subsection (2) may be exercised:
  - (a) on the Minister's own initiative; or
  - (b) on application by the person who holds the approval.
- (4) An application made by a person under paragraph (3)(b) must be lodged with ASIC and must set out the person's reasons for making the application.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.
- (5) ASIC must give the application to the Minister as soon as possible.
- (6) If the Minister refuses an application under paragraph (3)(b), the Minister must give written notice of the refusal to the applicant.

**Section 851E**

---

- (7) As soon as practicable, the Minister must arrange for a copy of a notice under subsection (2) to be:
- (a) published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) given to the widely held market body concerned.
- (8) A person who holds an approval under section 851B must give written notice to ASIC if they become aware that they have breached a condition to which the approval is subject.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**851E Varying percentage approved**

*Application by holder of approval*

- (1) A person who holds an approval under section 851B may apply to vary the percentage specified in the approval by lodging with ASIC an application that:
- (a) specifies the percentage of the voting power the person currently has in the widely held market body concerned; and
  - (b) specifies the percentage of the voting power the person is seeking approval to have in the body; and
  - (c) sets out the person's reasons for making the application.
- Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.
- (2) ASIC must give the application to the Minister as soon as possible.
- (3) If the Minister is satisfied that it is in the national interest to vary the percentage, the Minister may grant the application.
- (4) If the Minister grants the application, the Minister must:
- (a) give written notice of the variation to the applicant; and
  - (b) specify the variation granted (which may or may not be the variation the applicant applied for).
- (5) If the Minister refuses an application, the Minister must give written notice of the refusal to the applicant.

*Minister's own initiative*

- (6) The Minister may, by written notice given to a person who holds an approval under section 851B, vary the percentage specified in the approval if the Minister is satisfied that it is in the national interest to do so.

*Percentage varied upwards*

- (7) If the Minister varies a percentage upwards, the variation takes effect on the day the notice of variation is given.

*Percentage varied downwards*

- (8) If the Minister varies a percentage downwards, the variation takes effect on the day specified in the notice of variation. The specified day must be a day at least 90 days after the day on which the notice is given.

*Notification of variation*

- (9) As soon as practicable, the Minister must arrange for a copy of a notice of variation under this section to be:
- (a) published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) given to the widely held market body concerned.

**851F Revoking an approval**

- (1) The Minister may, by written notice given to a person who holds an approval under section 851B in relation to a widely held market body, revoke the approval if the Minister is satisfied that:
- (a) it is in the national interest to do so; or
  - (b) an unacceptable control situation exists in relation to the widely held market body and in relation to the person; or
  - (c) there has been a contravention of a condition to which the approval is subject.

## Section 851G

---

- (2) The revocation takes effect on the day specified in the notice of revocation. The specified day must be a day at least 90 days after the day on which the notice is given.
- (3) If a person who holds an approval under section 851B requests the Minister to revoke the approval, the Minister must, by written notice given to the person, revoke the approval. The revocation takes effect on the day specified in the notice of revocation.
- (4) As soon as practicable, the Minister must arrange for a copy of a notice of revocation under this section to be:
  - (a) published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) given to the widely held market body concerned.

### **851G Further information about applications**

- (1) This section applies to an application under this Subdivision.
- (2) The Minister may, by written notice given to the applicant, require the applicant to give the Minister, within a specified period, further information about the application.
- (3) The Minister may refuse to consider the application until the applicant gives the Minister the information.

### **851H Time limit for Minister's decision**

- (1) The Minister must make a decision on an application under this Subdivision within 30 days after receiving the application.
- (2) However, before the end of the 30 days, the Minister may decide to extend the period for considering the application until the end of 60 days after the application was received.
- (3) If the Minister has not made a decision within the 30 days (or the 60 days, if subsection (2) applies), the Minister is taken to have granted whatever was applied for. As soon as practicable after that happens, the Minister must arrange for a notice to that effect to be:
  - (a) published in the *Gazette*; and

- (b) given to the widely held market body concerned.
- (4) The time for making the decision stops running if the Minister gives a notice under section 851G in relation to the application, and does not start again until the notice is complied with.
- (5) The time limit in this section does not apply to an application under section 851A or 851E if an unacceptable control situation exists in relation to the applicant and in relation to the relevant widely held market body at any time before the Minister makes a decision.

**851I Preservation of voting power in relation to bodies specified in regulations made for section 850A**

- (1) A person holding a particular percentage of voting power in a body at its specification time (see subsection (3)) is taken at that time to be granted an approval under section 851B to hold that percentage of voting power in the body if:
  - (a) in a case where the body's specification time occurs at the same time as the commencement of this section—the person holding the percentage of voting power in the body immediately before the specification time did not, to any extent, constitute a contravention of previous law (see subsection (3)); and
  - (b) whether the body's specification time occurs at the same time as, or after, the commencement of this section—on the body's specification time, the person holding that percentage of voting power in the body would (apart from this section) constitute an unacceptable control situation.

Note: Conditions can be imposed on the approval under section 851D and then varied or revoked in accordance with that section.

- (2) The Minister is taken to have complied with the Minister's obligations under section 851B in relation to the granting of the approval to the person.

Section 852A

---

(3) In this section:

*contravention of previous law* means a contravention of a provision of Part 7.1A of this Act as in force immediately before the commencement of this section.

*specification time*, in relation to a body, means the time a body first becomes specified in regulations made for the purposes of section 850A.

**Subdivision C—Other matters**

**852A Acquisition of property**

(1) The Court must not make an order under section 850D if:

- (a) the order would result in the acquisition of property from a person otherwise than on just terms; and
- (b) the order would be invalid because of paragraph 51(xxxi) of the Constitution.

(2) Section 1350 does not apply in relation to the making of an order under section 850D.

(3) In this section:

*acquisition of property* has the same meaning as in paragraph 51(xxxi) of the Constitution.

*just terms* has the same meaning as in paragraph 51(xxxi) of the Constitution.

**852B Anti-avoidance**

(1) If:

- (a) one or more persons enter into, begin to carry out or carry out a scheme; and
- (b) it would be concluded that the person, or any of the persons, who entered into, began to carry out or carried out the scheme or any part of the scheme did so for the sole or



Section 852B

---

dominant purpose of avoiding the application of any provision of Subdivision A in relation to any person or persons (whether or not mentioned in paragraph (a)); and

- (c) as a result of the scheme or a part of the scheme, a person (the **controller**) increases the controller's voting power in a widely held market body;

the Minister may give the controller a written direction to cease having that voting power within a specified time.

- (2) A person who is subject to a written direction under subsection (1) must comply with the direction.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) In this section:

**increase** voting power includes increasing it from a starting point of nil.

## **Division 2—Individuals who are not fit and proper are disqualified**

### **853A Who is disqualified**

For the purposes of this Division, an individual is *disqualified* if:

- (a) a declaration by ASIC that the individual is disqualified is in effect under section 853C; or
- (b) the individual is disqualified from managing a corporation under section 206B; or
- (c) the individual is on the Register that ASIC must keep under section 1274AA.

### **853B When an individual is *involved in an operator***

For the purposes of this Division, an individual is *involved in* a market licensee, a CS facility licensee or a derivative trade repository licensee, or an applicant for such a licence, if:

- (a) the individual is a director, secretary or senior manager of the licensee or applicant, or in a holding company of the licensee or applicant; or
- (b) the individual has more than 15% of the total voting power in the licensee or applicant, or in a holding company of the licensee or applicant.

### **853C Declaration by ASIC**

- (1) ASIC may declare in writing that an individual who is involved in a market licensee, a CS facility licensee or a derivative trade repository licensee, or in an applicant for a licence of any of those kinds, is *disqualified* for the purposes of this Division.
- (2) ASIC may make such a declaration only if ASIC is satisfied that, because the individual is unfit to be involved in the licensee or applicant, there is a risk that the licensee or applicant will breach its obligations under this Chapter if the declaration is not made.

- (3) In deciding whether an individual is unfit as mentioned in subsection (2), ASIC must take into account such matters as the individual's fame, character and integrity, rather than his or her competence, experience, knowledge or other such attributes.
- (4) A declaration may be expressed to remain in effect for a specified period or until a specified event occurs. Otherwise, it remains in effect indefinitely (unless it is revoked under section 853E).

### **853D Procedure for declaration**

- (1) ASIC must not make a declaration under section 853C unless it has followed the procedure in this section.
- (2) Within 42 days after:
  - (a) a body corporate applies for an Australian market licence, an Australian CS facility licence or an Australian derivative trade repository licence; or
  - (b) ASIC receives other information that may be relevant to deciding whether to make a declaration under section 853C about an individual who is involved in an applicant for an Australian market licence, an Australian CS facility licence or an Australian derivative trade repository licence, or in an existing licensee;ASIC may give the applicant or licensee written notice that ASIC proposes to make a declaration under section 853C about the individual in question.
- (3) ASIC must give a copy of the notice to the individual and to the Minister.
- (4) The notice must:
  - (a) state the grounds on which ASIC proposes to make the declaration; and
  - (b) require the applicant or licensee, and the individual, to show, at a hearing before a specified person, why the declaration should not be made; and

Section 853E

---

(c) specify a reasonable time and place at which the hearing is to be held.

However, if the applicant or licensee, and the individual, consent, the person conducting the hearing may fix a different time or place.

- (5) The person conducting the hearing must:
- (a) give the applicant or licensee, and the individual, an opportunity to be heard at the hearing; and
  - (b) give ASIC:
    - (i) a report about the hearing; and
    - (ii) a recommendation about the grounds in the notice on which it is proposed to make the declaration.
- (6) As soon as practicable after the hearing, ASIC must:
- (a) decide whether to make the declaration; and
  - (b) give each of the following persons a copy of the declaration, or a written notice of its decision not to make the declaration:
    - (i) the applicant or licensee;
    - (ii) the individual;
    - (iii) the Minister.

**853E Revoking a declaration**

- (1) ASIC may, in writing, revoke a declaration under section 853C if it is no longer satisfied as mentioned in subsection 853C(2) in relation to the individual in question.
- (2) ASIC must give a copy of the revocation to the relevant applicant or licensee, the individual and the Minister.

**853F Obligations on disqualified individuals**

- (1) A disqualified individual must not become involved in a market licensee, a CS facility licensee or a derivative trade repository licensee.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) A disqualified individual who is involved in a market licensee, a CS facility licensee or a derivative trade repository licensee must take all reasonable steps to ensure that he or she ceases to be involved in the licensee.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **853G Notification by ASIC**

If ASIC becomes aware that an individual who is involved in a market licensee, a CS facility licensee or a derivative trade repository licensee is disqualified because of paragraph 853A(b) or (c), ASIC must notify the individual, the licensee and the Minister as soon as practicable.

## **Division 3—Miscellaneous**

### **854A Record-keeping and giving of information**

- (1) The regulations may make provision for and in relation to requiring a person:
  - (a) to keep and retain records that are relevant to whether a person has voting power in a widely held market body and, if so, how much; and
  - (b) to keep and retain records that are relevant to determining whether any disqualified individual is involved in a market licensee, a CS facility licensee or a derivative trade repository licensee; and
  - (c) to give the Minister or ASIC information that is relevant to the matters mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b); and
  - (d) to give a widely held market body information that is relevant to the matter mentioned in paragraph (a).
- (2) The regulations may provide that information given in accordance with a requirement covered by paragraph (1)(c) or (d) must be verified by statutory declaration.
- (3) However, an individual is not required to give information in accordance with a requirement covered by paragraph (1)(c) or (d) if the information might tend to incriminate the individual or expose the individual to a penalty.
- (4) A person contravenes this section if:
  - (a) the person makes or keeps a record in compliance, or purported compliance, with a requirement covered by subsection (1); and
  - (b) the person does so knowing that the record:
    - (i) is false or misleading; or
    - (ii) omits any matter or thing without which the record is misleading.

Note: A contravention of this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (5) Regulations made for the purposes of this section may make provision for or in relation to a matter by conferring a power on the Minister.

### **854B Exemptions and modifications by regulations**

- (1) The regulations may:
- (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) provide that this Part applies as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (3) For the purpose of this section, the *provisions of this Part* include:
- (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

## Part 7.5—Compensation regimes for financial markets

### Division 1—Preliminary

#### 880A Part does not apply to markets licensed under special provisions about overseas markets

Nothing in this Part applies in relation to:

- (a) a financial market the operation of which is licensed under subsection 795B(2); or
- (b) an application for the grant of a licence under that subsection.

#### 880B Definitions

- (1) In this Part:

*adequate* has a meaning affected by subsection (2).

*borrowing* includes obtaining credit.

*compensation arrangements* are arrangements that consist of:

- (a) a set of rules about compensation; and
- (b) a source of funds from which compensation is payable; and
- (c) associated administrative and monitoring arrangements.

*compensation rules* means rules referred to in paragraph (a) of the definition of *compensation arrangements*.

*Division 3 arrangements* means compensation arrangements approved under Division 3.

*Division 3 loss* means a loss described in section 885C, other than a loss that section 885D provides is to be taken not to be a Division 3 loss.



**Division 4 arrangements** means the arrangements constituted by Division 4.

**fidelity fund**, in relation to a financial market, means a fund consisting principally of contributions made by:

- (a) participants and past participants in the market; or
- (b) participants and past participants in:
  - (i) the market; and
  - (ii) one or more other financial markets;

the purpose, or the main purpose, of which is to provide a source of funds for the payment of compensation to clients of participants. Any investments made using money in the fund are taken to form part of the fund.

**NGF** means the National Guarantee Fund that continues in existence under section 889A.

**operating rules**, in relation to the SEGC, means the rules referred to in section 890D.

**Part 7.5 arrangements** means Division 3 arrangements or Division 4 arrangements.

**pay** compensation includes provide compensation in a form other than money.

**SEGC** means the body corporate in relation to which a nomination as the Securities Exchanges Guarantee Corporation is in force under section 890A.

- (2) For the purposes of this Part, the question whether proposed compensation arrangements, compensation arrangements as proposed to be changed, or compensation arrangements that have been approved, are **adequate** is to be determined in accordance with Subdivision D of Division 3.

## **Division 2—When there must be a compensation regime**

### **881A Licensed markets through which participants provide services for retail clients must generally have a compensation regime**

- (1) If:
  - (a) any of the participants in a licensed market, in effecting transactions through the market, provide financial services for persons as retail clients; and
  - (b) in connection with the provision of those financial services, those persons will or may give money or other property, or authority over property, to those participants; and
  - (c) the market is not a financial market to which Division 4 applies;there must be compensation arrangements in relation to the market that are approved in accordance with Division 3.
- (2) The compensation regime applicable in relation to financial markets to which Division 4 applies is as constituted by that Division.

### **881B Additional requirements for the licence application**

- (1) A person who is applying for an Australian market licence must state in their application:
  - (a) whether any of the participants in the market, in effecting transactions through the market, will provide financial services for persons as retail clients; and
  - (b) if any participants will so provide financial services to persons as retail clients—whether, in connection with the provision of those financial services, those persons will or may give money or other property, or authority over property, to those participants.
- (2) If:

- (a) participants in the market will provide financial services to persons as retail clients as mentioned in paragraph (1)(a); and
  - (b) in connection with the provision of those financial services, those persons will or may give money or property, or authority over property, to those participants;
- the application must:
- (c) contain the information, in relation to the proposed compensation arrangements, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph and be accompanied by a copy of the proposed compensation rules; or
  - (d) state that the market is or will be covered by Division 4, and set out evidence, in accordance with the requirements (if any) of the regulations, in support of that statement.

**881C What happens if an application contains information in accordance with paragraph 881B(2)(c)**

If a licence application contains information in relation to proposed compensation arrangements as required by paragraph 881B(2)(c), the Minister must deal with the application in accordance with section 882A.

**881D What happens if an application contains a statement in accordance with paragraph 881B(2)(d)**

- (1) If a licence application contains a statement in accordance with paragraph 881B(2)(d), the Minister must consider whether he or she is satisfied that the market will be covered by Division 4.
- (2) If the Minister is not so satisfied, the application for the licence must be rejected.
- (3) If the Minister is so satisfied, the Minister may (subject to the other provisions about granting licences) grant the licence.

Note: The other provisions about granting licences are in Subdivision A of Division 4 of Part 7.2.

## **Division 3—Approved compensation arrangements**

### **Subdivision A—Approval of compensation arrangements**

#### **882A How to get compensation arrangements approved with grant of licence**

- (1) If an application for an Australian market licence contains information in relation to proposed compensation arrangements in accordance with paragraph 881B(2)(c), the Minister must treat the application as also being an application for approval of the compensation arrangements and, for that purpose, must consider whether the proposed arrangements are adequate.
- (2) If the Minister does not consider that the proposed compensation arrangements are adequate, the application for the licence must be rejected.
- (3) If the Minister considers that the proposed compensation arrangements are adequate, the Minister may (subject to the other provisions about granting licences) grant the licence. On the granting of the licence, the Minister is taken to have approved the compensation arrangements.

Note: The other provisions about granting licences are in Subdivision A of Division 4 of Part 7.2.

- (4) In the conditions of the licence, the Minister must:
  - (a) deal with the minimum amount of cover required in relation to the compensation arrangements in such manner as the Minister thinks appropriate; and
  - (b) identify the source of funds available to cover claims, on the basis of which the Minister approves the arrangements (see section 885H).

**882B How to get compensation arrangements approved after licence is granted**

- (1) If the operator of a licensed market wants to have compensation arrangements for the market approved after the licence has been granted, the operator must apply for approval in accordance with this section.
  - (2) The application must:
    - (a) contain the information, in relation to the proposed compensation arrangements, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph and be accompanied by a copy of the proposed compensation rules; and
    - (b) be made to the Minister by lodging the application with ASIC.
- Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.
- (3) If the Minister does not consider that the proposed compensation arrangements are adequate, the application for approval must be rejected.
  - (4) If the Minister considers that the proposed compensation arrangements are adequate, the Minister must:
    - (a) approve the compensation arrangements in writing; and
    - (b) vary the conditions of the operator's licence so as to:
      - (i) deal with the minimum amount of cover required in relation to the compensation arrangements in such manner as the Minister thinks appropriate; and
      - (ii) identify the source of funds available to cover claims, on the basis of which the Minister approves the arrangements (see section 885H).
  - (5) In varying licence conditions as mentioned in paragraph (4)(b), the Minister must proceed under section 796A as though the licensee had applied for the variation to be made.

Section 882C

---

**882C Revocation of approval**

The Minister may at any time revoke an approval of compensation arrangements if the Minister considers that the arrangements are not adequate.

**882D Minister's power to give directions**

- (1) If the Minister considers that a market licensee's approved compensation arrangements are no longer adequate, the Minister may give the licensee a written direction to do specified things that the Minister believes will ensure that the arrangements become adequate once more.
- (2) The licensee must comply with the direction.
- (3) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.
- (4) The Minister may vary or revoke a direction at any time by giving written notice to the licensee.

**Subdivision B—Effect of compensation rules forming part of Division 3 arrangements**

**883A Legal effect of compensation rules**

Compensation rules forming part of Division 3 arrangements for a financial market have effect as a contract under seal between the operator of the market and each participant in the market under which each of those persons agrees to observe the rules to the extent that they apply to the person and engage in conduct that the person is required by the rules to engage in.

**883B Enforcement of compensation rules**

- (1) If a person who is under an obligation to comply with or enforce any of the compensation rules forming part of Division 3

arrangements for a financial market fails to meet that obligation, an application to the Court may be made by:

- (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) the operator of the market; or
  - (c) the operator of a clearing and settlement facility, if:
    - (i) there are clearing and settlement arrangements (as defined in section 790A) for some or all transactions effected through the market; and
    - (ii) those arrangements are with the operator of the facility; or
  - (d) a person aggrieved by the failure.
- (2) After giving an opportunity to be heard to the applicant and the person against whom the order is sought, the Court may make an order giving directions to:
- (a) the person against whom the order is sought; or
  - (b) if that person is a body corporate—the directors of the body corporate;
- about compliance with, or enforcement of, the compensation rules.
- (3) For the purposes of this section, if the operator of the market fails to comply with or enforce provisions of the compensation rules, a person who is, under the rules, entitled to make a claim for compensation is (whether or not they have actually made a claim) taken to be a person aggrieved by the failure.
- (4) There may be other circumstances in which a person may be aggrieved by a failure for the purposes of this section.

### **883C Other sources of funds for compensation**

Nothing in this Division makes the operator of a financial market liable to pay compensation from any source of funds other than the source identified in the licence conditions under paragraph 882A(4)(b) or subparagraph 882B(4)(b)(ii).

Section 883D

---

**883D Payment of levies**

- (1) This section applies if, under the compensation rules forming part of Division 3 arrangements for a particular financial market, a levy is payable by all or some of the participants in the market in order to ensure that adequate funds are available for the purposes of the arrangements.
- (2) The levy is payable to the operator of the market, as agent for the Commonwealth, by each of the participants affected.

Note: For the imposition and amount of the levy, see the *Corporations (Compensation Arrangements Levies) Act 2001*.

- (3) An amount of levy payable under subsection (2) must be paid within the time and in the manner specified by the operator either generally or in relation to a particular case.
- (4) Whenever an amount of levy (the **levy amount**) is paid under this section, or under section 6 of the *Corporations (Compensation Arrangements Levies) Act 2001*, to the operator of a market as agent for the Commonwealth:
  - (a) the operator must pay an amount equal to the levy amount to the Commonwealth; and
  - (b) the Consolidated Revenue Fund is appropriated by that amount for the purpose of payment to the operator; and
  - (c) the Commonwealth must pay the amount so appropriated to the operator; and
  - (d) the operator must deal with the amount it receives under paragraph (c) in accordance with the compensation rules.
- (5) A payment of an amount to the operator of a market as required by paragraph (4)(c) in respect of a particular levy amount is subject to a condition that, if the Commonwealth becomes liable to refund the whole or a part of the levy amount, the operator must pay the Commonwealth an amount equal to the amount that the Commonwealth is liable to refund.
- (6) The *Financial Management and Accountability Act 1997* does not apply in relation to the payment of an amount of levy under this



section to the operator of a market as agent for the Commonwealth. However, the operation of that Act in relation to the following payments is not affected:

- (a) the payment of an amount to the Commonwealth as required by paragraph (4)(a); or
- (b) the payment of an amount by the Commonwealth as required by paragraph (4)(c).

The operator must, in accordance with the regulations, notify the Commonwealth of payments of levy it receives as agent for the Commonwealth.

- (7) An amount payable by an operator as required by paragraph (4)(a) may be set off against an amount payable to the operator as required by paragraph (4)(c).

### **Subdivision C—Changing Division 3 arrangements**

#### **884A Division 3 arrangements must generally only be changed in accordance with this Subdivision**

- (1) The operator of a financial market in relation to which there are Division 3 arrangements must not change those arrangements except in accordance with this Subdivision.
- (2) However, a change may be made to Division 3 arrangements otherwise than in accordance with this Subdivision if:
  - (a) the change is not to a matter required by section 885B to be dealt with in the compensation rules; and
  - (b) the change is merely a minor administrative change.

#### **884B Changing Division 3 arrangements—matters required to be dealt with in the compensation rules**

- (1) If the proposed change is to a matter required by section 885B to be dealt with in the compensation rules, the change may only be made by changing the rules.

**Section 884C**

---

- (2) As soon as practicable after the change is made, the operator must lodge with ASIC written notice of the change.
- (3) The notice must:
  - (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the change was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the change.
- (4) If no notice is lodged with ASIC within 21 days after the change is made, the change ceases to have effect.
- (5) As soon as practicable after receiving a notice under subsection (2), ASIC must send a copy of the notice to the Minister.
- (6) Within 28 days after receiving the copy of the notice, the Minister may disallow all or a specified part of the change to the compensation rules.
- (7) The Minister must not disallow all or part of the change unless the Minister considers that, because of the change, or that part of the change, the compensation arrangements are not adequate.
- (8) As soon as practicable after all or part of a change is disallowed, ASIC must give notice of the disallowance to the operator of the market concerned. The change ceases to have effect, to the extent of the disallowance, when the operator receives the notice.

**884C Changing Division 3 arrangements—matters not required to be dealt with in the compensation rules**

- (1) If:
  - (a) the proposed change is to a matter that is not required by section 885B to be dealt with in the compensation rules (including a matter that is dealt with in the compensation rules even though it is not required to be dealt with in those rules); and
  - (b) the change is not merely a minor administrative change; the operator must not make the change unless:

- (c) the operator has applied for approval of the change; and
  - (d) the change has been approved by the Minister.
- (2) The application for approval must:
- (a) include the information, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph, in relation to the proposed change; and
  - (b) be made to the Minister by lodging the application with ASIC.
- Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.
- (3) If the Minister does not consider that the compensation arrangements as proposed to be changed are adequate, the application for approval must be rejected.
- (4) If the Minister considers that the compensation arrangements as proposed to be changed are adequate, the Minister must approve the change.
- (5) If:
- (a) the proposed change is to a matter that is dealt with in the compensation rules even though it is not required to be dealt with in those rules; and
  - (b) the change is approved;
- the operator may make any change to the compensation rules that is necessary to give effect to the change that has been approved or that is incidental to giving effect to that change.
- (6) If a change to the compensation rules is made as permitted by subsection (5), the operator must, as soon as practicable after the change is made, give ASIC written notice of the change.
- (7) A notice required by subsection (6) must:
- (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which it was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of why it is a change that is permitted to be made by subsection (5).

Section 885A

---

## Subdivision D—Are compensation arrangements adequate?

### 885A Purpose of this Subdivision

- (1) This Subdivision applies for the purpose of determining, for the purposes of a provision of this Division:
  - (a) whether:
    - (i) proposed compensation arrangements are adequate; or
    - (ii) compensation arrangements as proposed to be changed are adequate; or
  - (b) whether compensation arrangements that have been approved are adequate.
- (2) A reference in this Subdivision to the *arrangements* is a reference to the proposed arrangements, the arrangements as proposed to be changed, or the arrangements that have been approved, as the case requires.
- (3) A reference in this Subdivision to the *compensation rules* is a reference to the compensation rules, or the proposed compensation rules, forming part of the arrangements under consideration.

### 885B Requirements to be complied with for arrangements to be adequate

- (1) The arrangements are *adequate* if, and only if, the Minister is satisfied that:
  - (a) the compensation rules provide adequate coverage for Division 3 losses (see sections 885C and 885D); and
  - (b) the compensation rules provide for adequate compensation to be paid in respect of Division 3 losses (see section 885E); and
  - (c) the compensation rules deal adequately with how compensation in respect of Division 3 losses is to be paid (see section 885F); and
  - (d) the compensation rules deal adequately with the making and determination of claims in respect of Division 3 losses, and

- with the notification of the outcome of such claims (see section 885G); and
- (e) the arrangements provide for an adequate source of funds for paying compensation in respect of Division 3 losses and in respect of any other losses covered by the arrangements (see section 885H); and
  - (f) the arrangements include adequate arrangements for administration and monitoring (see section 885I); and
  - (g) under the arrangements, potential claimants have reasonable and timely access to the compensation regime; and
  - (h) if the licensee ceases (for whatever reason) to be required to have Division 3 arrangements, the rights of people to seek compensation under the arrangements, being rights that accrued while the licensee was required to have such arrangements, will be adequately protected.
- (2) In considering the matters mentioned in subsection (1), the Minister must also have regard to the matters mentioned in section 885J.
- (3) The matters that may be dealt with in compensation rules are not limited to matters mentioned in this section.

### **885C The losses to be covered**

- (1) Subject to section 885D, the compensation rules must cover losses (***Division 3 losses***) of a kind described in the following paragraphs:
- (a) a person (the ***client***) gave money or other property, or authority over property, to a person (the ***participant***):
    - (i) who was a participant in the market at that time; or
    - (ii) who the client reasonably believed to be a participant in the market at that time and who was a participant in the market at some earlier time; and
  - (b) the money or other property, or the authority, was given to the participant in connection with effecting a transaction, or proposed transaction, covered by provisions of the operating

**Section 885D**

---

- rules of the market relating to transactions effected through the market; and
- (c) the effecting of the transaction through the market constitutes or would constitute the provision of a financial service to the client as a retail client; and
  - (d) the client suffers a loss because of:
    - (i) if the client gave the participant money or other property—the defalcation or fraudulent misuse of the money or other property by the participant; or
    - (ii) if the client gave the participant authority over property—the fraudulent misuse of that authority by the participant.
- (2) The compensation rules must provide that a claim relating to an alleged loss caused by defalcation or fraudulent misuse may be allowed even if:
- (a) the person against whom the defalcation or misuse is alleged has not been convicted or prosecuted; and
  - (b) the evidence on which the claim is allowed would not be sufficient to establish the guilt of that person on a criminal trial in respect of the defalcation or fraudulent misuse.
- (3) The compensation rules may exclude losses of a kind described above that occur in specified situations. However, the compensation arrangements will not be adequate unless the Minister is satisfied that those exclusions are appropriate.

**885D Certain losses that are not Division 3 losses**

- (1) If, in relation to a loss suffered by a person:
- (a) the requirements of subsection 885C(1) are satisfied in relation to a participant and 2 or more financial markets; and
  - (b) the person did not (expressly or impliedly) instruct the participant to use a particular one of those markets; and
  - (c) it is not reasonably apparent from the usual business practice of the participant which of those markets the participant would use when acting for the person;

the loss is taken not to be a **Division 3 loss**.

- (2) If, in relation to a loss suffered by a person:
- (a) the requirements of subsection 885C(1) are satisfied in relation to a participant and a financial market; and
  - (b) the loss is also connected (see section 888A) with a financial market to which Division 4 applies; and
  - (c) the person did not (expressly or impliedly) instruct the participant to use a particular one of those markets; and
  - (d) it is not reasonably apparent from the usual business practice of the participant which of those markets the participant would use when acting for the person;

the loss is taken not to be a **Division 3 loss**.

- (3) If, in relation to a loss suffered by a person:
- (a) the transaction referred to in paragraph 885C(1)(b) could have been effected otherwise than through a financial market; and
  - (b) the person did not (expressly or impliedly) instruct the participant concerned to effect the transaction through a financial market; and
  - (c) it is not reasonably apparent from the usual business practice of the participant that the transaction would be effected through a financial market;

the loss is taken not to be a **Division 3 loss**.

### **885E The amount of compensation**

- (1) Subject to this section, the compensation rules must provide that the amount of compensation to be paid in respect of a Division 3 loss is to be not less than the sum of:
- (a) the actual pecuniary loss suffered by the claimant, calculated by reference to the market value of any relevant assets or liabilities as at the date on which the loss was suffered; and
  - (b) the claimant's reasonable costs of, and disbursements incidental to, the making and proof of the claim.

Section 885F

---

- (2) The compensation rules may provide for the amount of compensation payable in respect of a Division 3 loss to be reduced by reference to a right of set-off available to the claimant.
- (3) The compensation rules may impose an upper limit on the amount of compensation to which a person is entitled in respect of a claim in particular circumstances, or an upper limit on the total amount of compensation to which persons are entitled in respect of claims referable to a particular event or circumstance.
- (4) That upper limit may be specified in the compensation rules or determined by a method specified in the rules.
- (5) The compensation rules must also provide for the payment to the claimant of interest at the rate applicable under the regulations on the amount of the actual pecuniary loss, or so much of that loss as from time to time has not been compensated by an instalment or instalments of compensation, in respect of the period starting on the day when the loss was suffered and ending on the day when the compensation, or the last instalment of compensation, is paid.
- (6) The compensation rules may provide for what is to happen if there are insufficient funds to meet claims in respect of Division 3 losses and in respect of any other losses covered by the arrangements. For example, they may provide for the prioritisation of claims, or the apportionment of available funds between claims.
- (7) In other provisions of this Division a reference to *compensation in respect of a Division 3 loss* includes (unless the contrary intention appears) a reference to interest referred to in subsection (5).

**885F Method of payment of compensation**

- (1) The compensation rules must deal with how compensation in respect of Division 3 losses is to be paid.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), the compensation rules may provide for compensation to be paid in a lump sum or by instalments.



### **885G Making and determination of claims**

- (1) The compensation rules must provide for how claims in respect of Division 3 losses are to be made and determined, and for how claimants are notified of the outcome of their claims.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), the compensation rules may:
  - (a) require a person making a claim to pay money, or transfer other property, in support of a claim; and
  - (b) provide for claims to be disallowed unless persons exercise rights of set-off; and
  - (c) set time limits for the making of claims; and
  - (d) provide for claims to be partially allowed (including, for example, in a case where the operator considers that the claimant's conduct contributed to the loss).

### **885H The source of funds—general**

There must be an adequate source of funds available to cover claims made under the compensation arrangements in respect of Division 3 losses and in respect of any other losses covered by the arrangements.

Note 1: For example, the source of funds may consist of:

- (a) a fidelity fund; or
- (b) insurance arrangements; or
- (c) an irrevocable letter of credit.

Note 2: The source of funds does not have to consist of a single thing. It may consist of a combination of different things.

### **885I Administration and monitoring**

- (1) The arrangements must include arrangements for:
  - (a) the administration of the compensation arrangements; and
  - (b) monitoring compliance with the compensation arrangements and reporting breaches of the arrangements to the board of the operator of the market; and

**Section 885J**

---

- (c) monitoring the adequacy of the arrangements and reporting to the board of the operator of the market on the need for, or desirability of, changes to the compensation arrangements.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), the arrangements may give responsibilities to:
  - (a) the operator of the market, or a related company, or a director or employee of the operator or a related company; or
  - (b) a committee; or
  - (c) another person acting under an arrangement with the operator.
- (3) The people who may be members of a committee referred to in paragraph (2)(b) include, but are not limited to:
  - (a) participants in the market, or representatives of such participants; and
  - (b) members of the board of the operator of the market.

**885J The losses to be covered—other matters to be taken into account**

- (1) In considering whether the arrangements are adequate, the Minister must also have regard to:
  - (a) the services provided by the market and by the participants in the market; and
  - (b) any risk assessment report in relation to the market given to the Minister under section 892K.
- (2) The Minister may take into account such other matters as the Minister thinks appropriate.

**Subdivision E—Other provisions about Division 3 arrangements**

**886A Only one claim in respect of the same loss**

If:

- (a) a claim by a person for compensation in respect of a particular Division 3 loss suffered by the person has been allowed under Division 3 arrangements; and
  - (b) the person makes or has made another claim under those Division 3 arrangements, or under other Division 3 arrangements, in respect of the same loss;
- that other claim must not be allowed.

### **886B Regulations relating to fidelity funds**

The regulations may include provisions relating to how a fidelity fund, or part of a fidelity fund, is to be dealt with if:

- (a) the operator of a financial market becomes insolvent, within the meaning of the regulations; or
- (b) a financial market merges with another financial market; or
- (c) a financial market ceases to operate (otherwise than because of a merger), or ceases to be required by subsection 881A(1) to have approved compensation arrangements.

## **Division 4—NGF Compensation regime**

### **Subdivision A—Application of Division**

#### **887A Markets to which this Division applies**

This Division applies to a financial market that is operated by:

- (a) a body corporate that is a member of the SEGC; or
  - (b) a body corporate that is a subsidiary of such a member;
- other than any such market that the regulations state is not covered by this Division.

### **Subdivision B—Claims for and payment of compensation**

#### **888A The situations in which compensation may be claimed**

- (1) The situations in which compensation may be claimed in respect of a loss that is connected with a financial market to which this Division applies are as specified in the regulations.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), a loss is connected with a financial market if it is caused by a participant, or past participant, in the market.

#### **888B Kinds of compensation available**

The regulations may provide that compensation under this Division is to take the form of a payment of money or some other form (for example, a transfer of financial products).

#### **888C Amount of compensation payable**

- (1) The amount of compensation (including the value of any non-monetary compensation) to which a person is entitled in respect of a claim that is allowed is to be as determined in accordance with the regulations.

- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), the regulations may do all or any of the following:
- (a) provide for the amount of compensation to be determined by agreement with the claimant, or by arbitration if agreement cannot be reached; and
  - (b) provide for the payment of interest on the amount of the claimant's loss; and
  - (c) provide for the amount of compensation to be reduced by reference to a right of set-off available to the claimant or by reference to the extent to which the claimant was responsible for causing the loss; and
  - (d) impose an upper limit on the amount of compensation to which a person is entitled in respect of a claim in particular circumstances, or an upper limit on the total amount of compensation to which persons are entitled in respect of claims referable to a particular event or circumstance.
- (3) An upper limit referred to in paragraph (2)(d) may be specified in the regulations or determined by a method specified in the regulations.
- (4) The regulations may also provide for a claimant to be paid an amount in respect of the claimant's reasonable costs of, and disbursements incidental to, the making and proof of the claim (whether or not the claim is allowed in whole or in part).
- (5) The regulations may also provide for a claimant to be paid an amount in respect of the claimant's reasonable costs of, and disbursements incidental to, attempting to recover the loss (whether or not the claim is allowed in whole or in part).

### **888D Payment of compensation**

- (1) The regulations may provide for the compensation to be paid in a lump sum or by instalments.
- (2) The regulations may make other provisions in relation to how compensation is to be paid.

Section 888E

---

**888E Making and determination of claims**

- (1) Claims are to be made and determined in accordance with:
  - (a) the regulations; and
  - (b) any relevant provisions of the SEGC's operating rules.
- (2) Without limiting subsection (1), the regulations, or the SEGC's operating rules, may do all or any of the following:
  - (a) require a person making a claim to pay money, or transfer other property, to the SEGC in support of a claim;
  - (b) provide for claims to be disallowed unless persons exercise rights of set-off;
  - (c) set time limits for the making of claims;
  - (d) provide for claims to be partially allowed (including, for example, in a case where the SEGC considers that the claimant's conduct contributed to the loss).
- (3) The regulations, or the SEGC's operating rules, may impose other requirements to be complied with by the SEGC in relation to claims (including, for example, requirements to notify claimants whether their claims have been allowed).
- (4) If a provision of the SEGC's operating rules is wholly or partly inconsistent with regulations made for the purposes of this section, the provision of the SEGC's operating rules is, to the extent of the inconsistency, of no effect.

**888F The SEGC has power to determine claims**

The SEGC has power to determine claims in accordance with this Division.

**888G Allowing a claim does not constitute an admission of any other liability**

If the SEGC allows a claim, neither the allowance of the claim, nor any other act done by SEGC as a result of allowing the claim, constitutes an admission (by anyone) of any liability, other than the

liability to provide compensation in respect of the claim in accordance with this Division.

**888H Claimant may apply to Court if claim disallowed**

- (1) If the SEGC has disallowed a claim, the claimant may bring proceedings in the Court to establish the claim. The proceedings must be brought within 3 months of notice of the disallowance of the claim.
- (2) If the SEGC has neither allowed nor disallowed a claim within a reasonable period after it was made, the claimant may bring proceedings in the Court to establish the claim.
- (3) If, in proceedings under subsection (1) or (2), the Court is satisfied that the claim should be allowed, the Court:
  - (a) must, by order, make a declaration accordingly and direct the SEGC to allow the claim and deal with it in accordance with this Division; and
  - (b) may, at any time after the order is made, on application made (whether before or after the order is made) by the claimant or the SEGC, give such directions relating to the claim as the Court thinks just and reasonable.
- (4) In proceedings to establish a claim, all questions of costs are in the discretion of the Court.

**888I Non-NGF property of the SEGC not available to meet claims**

Money or other property of the SEGC that is not part of the NGF is not available to be applied in respect of a claim that has been allowed by the SEGC, whether or not under an order of the Court.

**888J The SEGC may enter into contracts of insurance or indemnity**

- (1) The SEGC may enter into a contract with a person (the *insurer*) carrying on a fidelity insurance business under which the SEGC will be insured or indemnified against liability in respect of claims to the extent and in the manner provided by the contract.

**Section 888K**

---

- (2) The contract may relate to all claims or only to certain claims as specified in the contract. The contract may, for example, exclude claims relating to the conduct of a particular financial services licensee.
- (3) The following persons each have qualified privilege in respect of the publication of a statement that the contract does not apply with respect to claims relating to the conduct of a particular financial services licensee:
  - (a) the SEGC and the members of its board;
  - (b) any body corporate that is a member of the SEGC;
  - (c) any subsidiary of such a member;
  - (d) any employee of a body covered by paragraph (a), (b) or (c).
- (4) A person who has made a claim does not have a right of action against the insurer in respect of the contract or a right or claim in respect of money paid by the insurer in accordance with the contract.

**888K NGF may be used to acquire financial products to be transferred as compensation**

The SEGC may pay money out of the NGF to acquire financial products for the purpose of providing compensation (in accordance with the regulations) that takes the form of a transfer of financial products.

**Subdivision C—The NGF**

**889A Continuation of the National Guarantee Fund**

The National Guarantee Fund that continued to exist under section 928B of this Act before the repeal of that section by the *Financial Services Reform Act 2001* continues in existence as the National Guarantee Fund for the purposes of this Part.



**889B Compensation to be provided out of the NGF**

Compensation payable under this Division is to be paid out of the NGF.

**889C The SEGC to keep the NGF**

- (1) The SEGC must keep and administer the NGF.
- (2) The assets of the NGF are the property of SEGC, but must be kept separate from all other property and must be held on trust by the SEGC for the purposes of this Division.

**889D What the NGF consists of**

The NGF consists of:

- (a) money and other property constituting the NGF before the commencement of this Chapter; and
- (b) money paid into the NGF in accordance with section 889J or 889K; and
- (c) money paid to the SEGC in accordance with regulations referred to in section 888E in support of a claim; and
- (d) money paid to the SEGC under a contract of insurance or indemnity referred to in section 888J; and
- (e) money paid into the NGF under subsection 889F(2); and
- (f) the interest and profits from time to time accruing from the investment of the NGF; and
- (g) money recovered by or on behalf of the SEGC in the exercise of a right of action that the SEGC has by virtue of a provision of this Part; and
- (h) money and other property paid or transferred to the SEGC for inclusion in the NGF in accordance with regulations referred to in section 891B; and
- (i) all other money and other property lawfully paid into, or forming part of, the NGF.

Section 889E

---

**889E Power to borrow etc. for purposes of the NGF**

- (1) If the SEGC considers that, in the interests of the sound financial management of the NGF, money should be borrowed for the purpose of meeting a payment due out of the NGF, the SEGC may borrow money for that purpose on such terms and conditions as the SEGC thinks appropriate.
- (2) The SEGC may give security, including over the assets of the NGF, in respect of the SEGC's obligations in relation to a borrowing under subsection (1).
- (3) If:
  - (a) money borrowed under subsection (1) is a loan from a body corporate that is a member of the SEGC; and
  - (b) the body corporate borrowed money for the purpose of making the loan to the SEGC;the SEGC may give security, including over the assets of the NGF, in relation to the body corporate's obligations in respect of the borrowing referred to in paragraph (b).

**889F Money borrowed and paid to the SEGC**

- (1) This section applies if money borrowed by the SEGC under subsection 889E(1) is paid to the SEGC.
- (2) The SEGC must pay the money into the NGF.
- (3) If:
  - (a) the money was borrowed for the purpose of meeting a payment due out of the NGF; and
  - (b) the borrowed money has been paid into the NGF; and
  - (c) the payment due out of the NGF has not yet been made;then, for the purposes of section 889J, the amount in the NGF is taken to be reduced by the amount of the borrowed money.

### **889G Money borrowed and not paid to the SEGC**

- (1) This section applies if money borrowed by the SEGC under subsection 889E(1) is not paid to the SEGC but is payable to other persons at the direction of the SEGC.
- (2) The SEGC must not direct that any of the money be paid to a person unless the payment is of a kind that can, under section 889H, be made out of the NGF.

### **889H Payments out of the NGF**

Subject to regulations made for the purposes of this section, the following are to be paid out of the NGF, in such order as the SEGC considers appropriate:

- (a) amounts, including costs, disbursements and interest, that any provision of this Part requires to be paid in connection with claims;
- (b) all legal and other expenses incurred:
  - (i) in investigating or defending claims; or
  - (ii) in relation to the NGF; or
  - (iii) in the exercise by the SEGC of the rights and powers vested in it by any provision of this Part in relation to the NGF;
- (c) money payable out of the NGF under regulations referred to in subsection 892G(2);
- (d) amounts to be paid to acquire financial products as mentioned in section 888K;
- (e) premiums payable in respect of contracts of insurance or indemnity entered into by the SEGC under section 888J;
- (f) payments of principal, interest and other amounts payable by the SEGC in respect of money borrowed, and security given, under section 889E;
- (g) the expenses incurred in the administration of the NGF, including the salaries and wages of persons employed by the SEGC in relation to the NGF;

Section 889I

---

- (h) amounts to be paid to a body corporate in accordance with a direction of the Minister under section 891A;
- (i) any other money payable out of the NGF in accordance with a provision of this Part.

**889I Minimum amount of the NGF**

- (1) The *minimum amount* in relation to the NGF is:
  - (a) unless paragraph (b) applies—\$80,000,000; or
  - (b) if a determination is in force under subsection (2)—the amount specified in the determination.
- (2) The SEGC may, in writing, determine an amount (whether greater than, or less than, \$80,000,000) to be the minimum amount in relation to the NGF. The determination does not come into force until it has been approved by the Minister.
- (3) The SEGC must publish in the *Gazette* notice of a determination that has come into force under subsection (2). The notice must specify the date when the determination came into force.
- (4) If the amount in the NGF falls below the minimum amount, the SEGC must consider what action needs to be taken.

**889J Levy by the SEGC**

- (1) If the amount in the NGF is less than the minimum amount applicable under section 889I, the SEGC may determine in writing that:
  - (a) the operators of all, or a class, of the financial markets to which this Division applies; or
  - (b) all, or a class, of the participants in any of these markets; must pay a levy to the SEGC.
- (2) The levy is payable to the SEGC, as agent for the Commonwealth, in accordance with this section.

Note: For the imposition and amount of the levy, see the *Corporations (National Guarantee Fund Levies) Act 2001*. There is a limit on the

amount of levy that is payable to the SEGC in a financial year under that Act.

- (3) A levy payable under this section must be paid within the period and in the manner determined in writing by the SEGC.
- (4) Whenever an amount of levy (the **levy amount**) is paid under this section, or under subsection 6(2) of the *Corporations (National Guarantee Fund Levies) Act 2001*, to the SEGC as agent for the Commonwealth:
  - (a) the SEGC must pay an amount equal to the levy amount to the Commonwealth; and
  - (b) the Consolidated Revenue Fund is appropriated by that amount for the purpose of payment to the SEGC; and
  - (c) the Commonwealth must pay the amount so appropriated to the SEGC; and
  - (d) the SEGC must pay the amount it receives under paragraph (c) into the NGF.
- (5) Whenever an amount of levy (the **levy amount**) is paid under subsection 6(1) of the *Corporations (National Guarantee Fund Levies) Act 2001*, to the operator of a financial market as agent for the Commonwealth:
  - (a) the operator must pay an amount equal to the levy amount to the SEGC; and
  - (b) the SEGC must pay an amount equal to the amount so paid to it to the Commonwealth; and
  - (c) the Consolidated Revenue Fund is appropriated by that amount for the purpose of payment to the SEGC; and
  - (d) the Commonwealth must pay the amount so appropriated to the SEGC; and
  - (e) the SEGC must pay the amount it receives under paragraph (d) into the NGF.
- (6) A payment of an amount to the SEGC as required by paragraph (4)(c) or (5)(d) in respect of a particular levy amount is subject to a condition that, if the Commonwealth becomes liable to refund the whole or a part of the levy amount, the SEGC must pay

Section 889K

---

the Commonwealth an amount equal to the amount that the Commonwealth is liable to refund. The SEGC may pay, out of the NGF, any amount so required to be paid to the Commonwealth.

- (7) The *Financial Management and Accountability Act 1997* does not apply in relation to the payment of an amount of levy under this section to the SEGC, or the operator of a financial products market, as agent for the Commonwealth. However, the operation of that Act in relation to the following payments is not affected:
- (a) the payment of an amount to the Commonwealth as required by paragraph (4)(a) or (5)(b); or
  - (b) the payment of an amount by the Commonwealth as required by paragraph (4)(c) or (5)(d).

The SEGC must, in accordance with the regulations, notify the Commonwealth of payments of levy it receives as agent for the Commonwealth, and the operator of a financial market must, in accordance with the regulations, notify the Commonwealth of payments it receives as agent for the Commonwealth as mentioned in paragraph (5)(a).

- (8) An amount payable by the SEGC as required by paragraph (4)(a) may be set off against an amount payable to the SEGC as required by paragraph (4)(c), and an amount payable by the SEGC as required by paragraph (5)(b) may be set off against an amount payable to the SEGC as required by paragraph (5)(d).

**889K Levy by market operator**

- (1) An operator of a financial market who must pay an amount of levy (the **primary levy amount**) under section 889J may determine in writing that participants in the market must pay a levy (the **contributory levy**). The determination must be such that the total of the amounts of contributory levy payable by the participants does not exceed the primary levy amount. The contributory levy is payable to the operator as agent for the Commonwealth.

Note: For the imposition and amount of the levy, see the *Corporations (National Guarantee Fund Levies) Act 2001*.

- (2) If a determination is made under subsection (1), the contributory levy is payable by each participant in the market who, when the determination is made, is in a class of participants in the market determined in writing by the operator for the purposes of the levy.
- (3) The amount of contributory levy payable by a participant under a determination under subsection (1) must be paid within the period, and in the manner, specified in writing by the operator either generally or in relation to particular participants or classes of participants.
- (4) Whenever an amount of levy (the **levy amount**) is paid under this section, or under subsection 6(3) of the *Corporations (National Guarantee Fund Levies) Act 2001*, to the operator of a financial market as agent for the Commonwealth:
  - (a) the operator must pay an amount equal to the levy amount to the Commonwealth; and
  - (b) the Consolidated Revenue Fund is appropriated by that amount for the purpose of payment to the SEGC; and
  - (c) the Commonwealth must pay the amount so appropriated to the SEGC; and
  - (d) the SEGC must pay the amount it receives under paragraph (c) into the NGF; and
  - (e) the operator's liability to pay the primary levy amount is reduced by the amount paid into the NGF under paragraph (d).
- (5) A payment of an amount to the SEGC as required by paragraph (4)(c) in respect of a particular contributory levy amount is subject to a condition that, if the Commonwealth becomes liable to refund the whole or a part of the contributory levy amount, the SEGC must pay the Commonwealth an amount equal to the amount that the Commonwealth is liable to refund. The SEGC may pay, out of the NGF, any amount so required to be paid to the Commonwealth.
- (6) The *Financial Management and Accountability Act 1997* does not apply in relation to the payment of an amount of levy under this

Section 890A

---

section to the operator of a financial market as agent for the Commonwealth. However, the operation of that Act in relation to the following payments is not affected:

- (a) the payment of an amount to the Commonwealth as required by paragraph (4)(a); or
- (b) the payment of an amount by the Commonwealth as required by paragraph (4)(c).

The operator must, in accordance with the regulations, notify the Commonwealth of payments of levy it receives as agent for the Commonwealth.

**Subdivision D—The SEGC**

**890A Minister to nominate the SEGC**

- (1) Subject to subsection (3), the Minister may nominate in writing as the *Securities Exchanges Guarantee Corporation* a body corporate (whenever incorporated) that is, for the purposes of the national corporate laws, a company limited by guarantee.
- (2) ASIC must cause a copy of a nomination by the Minister under subsection (1) to be published in the *Gazette*.
- (3) The Minister may only nominate a body corporate under subsection (1) if he or she is satisfied that:
  - (a) the Australian Stock Exchange Limited is a member of the body corporate; and
  - (b) each of the other members of the body corporate is a market licensee; and
  - (c) the body corporate's constitution provides that only market licensees may become or remain members of the body corporate; and
  - (d) the body corporate will, if nominated under subsection (1), be able to perform and exercise the SEGC's functions and powers under this Division adequately and with due regard to the interests of the public; and



- (e) the body corporate has obtained, or will within a reasonable period after being nominated under subsection (1) obtain, indemnity insurance in respect of its liabilities for:
  - (i) negligence in; and
  - (ii) defalcation, or fraudulent misuse of property, by an officer, employee or agent of the body corporate in connection with;  
the performance or exercise of the SEGC's functions or powers under this Division, or has made or will make other satisfactory provisions for meeting those liabilities; and
- (f) the body corporate's business rules make satisfactory provision:
  - (i) for ensuring the safety of property received by the body corporate; and
  - (ii) generally for the protection of the interests of the public.

### **890B The SEGC's functions and powers**

- (1) In addition to the legal capacity and powers it has because of section 124, the SEGC has such functions and powers as are conferred, or expressed to be conferred, on it by or under this Part.
- (2) Section 125 does not apply in relation to a function or power conferred, or expressed to be conferred, as mentioned in subsection (1) of this section.
- (3) The SEGC is to perform the functions, and may exercise the powers, that are conferred on it by or under this Part.
- (4) The SEGC is to administer the arrangements constituted by this Division.

### **890C Delegation**

- (1) Subject to this section, all decisions of the SEGC in relation to the performance of its functions, and the exercise of its powers, under this Part must be made by the board of the SEGC.

## Section 890D

---

- (2) The board of the SEGC must not delegate any of the following powers of the SEGC:
  - (a) the power to borrow under section 889E;
  - (b) the power to determine the order of payments under section 889H;
  - (c) the power to determine a minimum amount under section 889I;
  - (d) the power to make operating rules under section 890D;
  - (e) the power (or duty) to make a payment under section 891A.
- (3) Otherwise, the board of the SEGC may delegate any of their powers under this Part in accordance with section 198D.

### **890D Operating rules of the SEGC**

The SEGC may make rules (*operating rules*) relating to the performance or exercise of its powers or duties under this Part, or relating to matters permitted by this Part to be dealt with in its operating rules.

### **890E Legal effect of the SEGC's operating rules**

The SEGC's operating rules have effect as a contract under seal between the SEGC and each member of the SEGC under which each of those persons agrees to observe the operating rules to the extent that they apply to the person and engage in conduct that the person is required by the operating rules to engage in.

### **890F Enforcement of the SEGC's operating rules**

- (1) If a person who is under an obligation to comply with or enforce any of the SEGC's operating rules fails to meet that obligation, an application to the Court may be made by:
  - (a) ASIC; or
  - (b) the SEGC; or
  - (c) a member of the SEGC; or
  - (d) a person aggrieved by the failure.

- (2) After giving an opportunity to be heard to the applicant and the person against whom the order is sought, the Court may make an order giving directions to:
  - (a) the person against whom the order is sought; or
  - (b) if that person is a body corporate—the directors of the body corporate;about compliance with, or enforcement of, the operating rules.

### **890G Changing the SEGC's operating rules**

- (1) As soon as practicable after a change is made to the SEGC's operating rules, the SEGC must lodge with ASIC written notice of the change.
- (2) The notice must:
  - (a) set out the text of the change; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the change was made; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the change.
- (3) If no notice is lodged with ASIC within 21 days after the change is made, the change ceases to have effect.

### **890H Disallowance of changes to the SEGC's operating rules**

- (1) As soon as practicable after receiving a notice under section 890G, ASIC must send a copy of the notice to the Minister.
- (2) Within 28 days after ASIC received the notice under section 890G, the Minister may disallow all or a specified part of the change to the SEGC's operating rules.
- (3) As soon as practicable after all or part of a change is disallowed, ASIC must give notice of the disallowance to the SEGC. The change ceases to have effect, to the extent of the disallowance, when the SEGC receives the notice.

Section 891A

---

**Subdivision E—Other provisions relating to compensation  
under this Division**

**891A Payment out of the NGF to prescribed body with  
arrangements covering clearing and settlement facility  
support**

- (1) If the Minister is satisfied that a body corporate specified in regulations made for the purposes of this section has made adequate arrangements covering all or part of the clearing and settlement system support that this Division provides for, the Minister may, in writing, direct the SEGC to pay a specified amount to that body corporate out of the NGF.
- (2) The Minister may, in writing, impose conditions to be complied with by the SEGC or the body corporate, or both, in relation to the payment.
- (3) The SEGC and the body corporate must comply with the direction and with any applicable conditions to which the direction is subject.
- (4) Before giving a direction under subsection (1), the Minister must be satisfied that, after the payment is made, the NGF will still have an adequate amount of assets to meet claims.

**891B Markets operated by bodies corporate that become members  
of the SEGC—regulations may deal with transitional  
provisions and other matters**

- (1) In this section:  
*joining market* means a financial market that:
  - (a) is operated by a body corporate that becomes a member of the SEGC after the commencement of this Division, or by a subsidiary of such a body corporate; and
  - (b) is a financial market to which this Division applies.

- (2) The regulations may make provisions of a transitional or saving nature dealing with the transition, in relation to a joining market, from the compensation regime previously applicable in relation to the market to the arrangements constituted by this Division.
- (3) Without limiting subsection (2), the regulations may require money or other property (including money or other property in a fidelity fund) to be paid or transferred to the SEGC for inclusion in the NGF.
- (4) The regulations may also provide for the allocation of part of the NGF as being for use for the purposes of claims arising in connection with the joining market.
- (5) The regulations may make modifications of provisions of this Division and Division 5 that are necessary or convenient to take account of allocations of a kind referred to in subsection (4).

**891C Regulations may make different provision in respect of different markets etc.**

Regulations made for the purposes of a provision of this Division may make different provision in respect of different financial markets to which this Division applies and in respect of different circumstances.

Section 892A

---

## Division 5—Provisions common to both kinds of compensation arrangements

### 892A Definitions

In this Division:

**regulated fund** means:

- (a) a fidelity fund that is the source, or a source, of funds under Division 3 arrangements; or
- (b) the NGF; or
- (c) an account kept as required by subsection 892B(3).

**relevant authority**, in relation to Part 7.5 arrangements, means:

- (a) if the arrangements are Division 3 arrangements of a financial market—the operator of the market; or
- (b) if the arrangements are Division 4 arrangements—the SEGC.

### 892B How regulated funds are to be kept

(1) Money in:

- (a) a fidelity fund that is the source, or a source, of funds under Division 3 arrangements; or
- (b) the NGF;

must, until applied in paying claims or otherwise spent for the purposes of this Part, or invested in accordance with section 892C, be kept by the relevant authority in an account or accounts:

- (c) with an Australian ADI; or
- (d) of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;

separate from any account or accounts in which other money is kept.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) The regulations may impose additional requirements to be complied with in relation to the keeping of a regulated fund that covers 2 or more financial markets.
- (3) If:
- (a) a source of funds under Division 3 arrangements for a financial market is something other than a fidelity fund; and
  - (b) the operator of the market, or a person involved in the administration of the arrangements, receives money from that source of funds;
- the money received must, until applied in paying claims or otherwise spent for the purposes of this Part, or invested in accordance with section 892C, be kept by the relevant authority in an account or accounts:
- (c) with an Australian ADI; or
  - (d) of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
- separate from any account or accounts in which other money is kept.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **892C Money in regulated funds may be invested**

- (1) Money in a regulated fund that is not immediately required for the purposes of meeting claims may be invested in any way in which trustees are for the time being authorised by law in force in a State or Territory in this jurisdiction to invest trust funds.
- (2) The relevant authority may, with the approval of ASIC, appoint a person to invest on behalf of the relevant authority money to which subsection (1) applies.
- (3) ASIC must not grant approval to the appointment of a person under subsection (2) unless it is satisfied that:
- (a) the person has appropriate qualifications and expertise to perform the duties of the appointment; and

Section 892D

---

- (b) the relevant authority has adequate indemnity insurance in respect of its liabilities for any negligence, or any defalcation or fraudulent misuse of property, by the person in the performance of those duties, or has made other satisfactory provisions for meeting those liabilities.
- (4) A person appointed under subsection (2) must perform the duties of the appointment in accordance with the directions of the relevant authority and subject to such conditions (if any) as the relevant authority imposes.

**892D Powers of relevant authority to require production or delivery of documents or statements**

- (1) The relevant authority in relation to Part 7.5 arrangements may require a person:
  - (a) to deliver to the relevant authority documents or copies of documents, including documents of, or evidencing, title to financial products; or
  - (b) to make out and deliver to the relevant authority a statement of evidence;that the relevant authority considers will assist it in determining a claim for compensation that has been made, or that the relevant authority considers are necessary for the purpose of exercising the subrogated rights and remedies it has in relation to a claim (see section 892F).
- (2) The requirement must be made by notice in writing given to the person. The notice must:
  - (a) so far as it requires documents or copies referred to in paragraph (1)(a)—identify or describe the documents or copies that are required; and
  - (b) so far as it requires a statement referred to in paragraph (1)(b)—describe the matters in relation to which the person's evidence is required, and set out any requirements to be complied with in relation to how the statement is made out.



- (3) The person must comply with the requirement.
- (4) If the person fails, without reasonable excuse, to comply with the requirement, the relevant authority may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the person comply with the direction.
- (5) If the person fails, without reasonable excuse, to comply with the requirement, the relevant authority may disallow a claim made by the person.  

Note: This subsection would not apply if the person subject to the requirement were someone other than a claimant.
- (6) The relevant authority may, in writing, delegate the power given by this section to a person involved in the administration of the Part 7.5 arrangements.
- (7) The relevant authority must return any documents (other than copies of documents) provided to it under this section as soon as practicable after the claim referred to in subsection (1) has been determined, and any proceedings relating to the determination of the claim (including any arising from the subrogation of the relevant authority for the claimant) have been completed.
- (8) Subsection (7) does not apply if:
  - (a) another law prohibits or prevents the return of the documents; or
  - (b) the documents are no longer in the custody of the relevant authority; or
  - (c) the person tells the relevant authority that the person does not want the documents back.

### **892E Power to require assistance for purpose of dealing with a claim**

- (1) If Division 3 arrangements give responsibilities (as mentioned in paragraph 885I(2)(c)) to a person acting under an arrangement with the operator of the market concerned, the person may give the operator a written request to give such assistance as the person

**Section 892F**

---

requires for the purpose of fulfilling the person's responsibilities under the arrangement.

- (2) The SEGC may give a member of the SEGC, or a subsidiary of a member of the SEGC, a written request to give such assistance as the SEGC requires for the purpose of:
  - (a) dealing with a claim; or
  - (b) the assessment of risks to the NGF.
- (3) A requirement for assistance under subsection (1) or (2) must be reasonable.
- (4) A person who is required under this section to give assistance must give the assistance.
- (5) If the person fails to give the assistance, the person who required the assistance may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the other person give the assistance.

**892F Relevant authority's right of subrogation if compensation is paid**

- (1) If compensation in respect of a claim is paid under Part 7.5 arrangements, the relevant authority in relation to the arrangements is subrogated, to the extent of that payment, to all the claimant's rights and remedies in relation to the loss to which the claim relates.
- (2) The relevant authority may also recover from the participant or participants who caused the loss the costs it incurred in determining the claim.

**892G Excess money in compensation funds**

- (1) The regulations may determine, or provide a method for determining, when there is excess money in a regulated fund.
- (2) The regulations may make provision in relation to how excess money in a regulated fund may be, or is to be, dealt with. The

regulations may make different provision in relation to different funds.

### **892H Accounting and reporting for regulated funds**

- (1) The relevant authority in relation to Part 7.5 arrangements must, in relation to each regulated fund established in connection with the arrangements, keep written financial records that:
- (a) correctly record and explain the fund's transactions and financial position and performance; and
  - (b) would enable true and fair financial statements to be prepared and audited;
- and must retain the financial records for 7 years after the transactions covered by the records are completed.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Within 2 months after the end of each financial year of the relevant authority, the authority must cause financial statements and notes to those financial statements (within the meaning of section 295) for the regulated fund to be made out as at the end of that financial year.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) A registered company auditor, or authorised audit company, must be appointed to audit the accounts of the regulated fund in accordance with whichever of the following paragraphs applies:
- (a) if there is only one relevant authority for the fund, that relevant authority must appoint a registered company auditor, or authorised audit company, to audit the fund's accounts;
  - (b) if there is more than one relevant authority for the fund:
    - (i) each of those relevant authorities must ensure that a registered company auditor, or authorised audit company, is appointed in accordance with subparagraph (ii) to audit the fund's accounts; and

**Section 892H**

---

- (ii) the appointment is to be made by one or more of the relevant authorities, with the consent of such of the relevant authorities (if any) as do not make the appointment; and
- (iii) a relevant authority must not purport to appoint a person to audit the fund's accounts unless each other relevant authority (if any) who has not also made the appointment has consented to the appointment.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) If there is more than one relevant authority for a fund and they cannot agree on which auditor to appoint, ASIC may, on the written application of any of the authorities, appoint an auditor who consents to being so appointed.
- (5) The auditor must:
  - (a) audit the accounts of the regulated fund and the financial statements; and
  - (b) do the things required by sections 307 and 308 in relation to those documents, as if the audit were being done under Chapter 2M.
- (6) The relevant authority for the regulated fund must, within 14 days after receiving the auditor's report, lodge with ASIC a copy of the report and a copy of the financial statements. If there is more than one relevant authority for the regulated fund, the copy must be given to ASIC by at least one of those authorities, or else they all contravene this subsection.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (7) If the regulated fund is the NGF, the relevant authority (being the SEGC) must:
  - (a) give a copy of the audited financial statements to each member of the SEGC; and

- (b) cause a copy of the audited financial statements to be laid before the annual general meeting of each member of the SEGC next following the making of that report.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **892I Division 3 arrangements—reporting in situations where compensation does not come out of a regulated fund**

The regulations may impose reporting requirements to be complied with by the relevant authority in relation to Division 3 arrangements in relation to situations in which compensation under the arrangements is provided otherwise than out of a regulated fund.

### **892J Regulations may provide for qualified privilege in respect of certain matters**

The regulations may provide for specified persons to have qualified privilege in respect of specified things done:

- (a) under compensation rules forming part of Division 3 arrangements; or
- (b) under regulations made for the purposes of a provision or provisions of Subdivision B of Division 4.

### **892K Risk assessment report**

- (1) For the purposes of monitoring compliance with, and the operation of, this Part, the Minister may, by giving the operator of a financial market written notice, require the operator:
  - (a) to cause a risk assessment report to be prepared in relation to the market in accordance with the requirements specified in the notice; and
  - (b) to give that report to the Minister by the time specified in the notice.
- (2) The operator must comply with the notice.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.5** Compensation regimes for financial markets

**Division 5** Provisions common to both kinds of compensation arrangements

**Section 892K**

---

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

## **Division 6—Miscellaneous**

### **893A Exemptions and modifications by regulations**

- (1) The regulations may:
  - (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial market or class of financial markets from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (c) provide that this Part applies in relation to a person or a financial market, or a class of persons or financial markets, as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (2) For the purpose of this section, the *provisions of this Part* include:
  - (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 7.2 that refer to provisions of this Part; and
  - (c) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

### **893B Exemptions by Minister**

- (1) The Minister may exempt a particular financial market, or class of financial markets, from all or specified provisions of this Part. An exemption may be unconditional, or subject to conditions specified in the exemption.

Note: The provisions of this Part include regulations made for the purposes of this Part (see section 761H).

- (2) The Minister may, at any time:
  - (a) vary an exemption to:
    - (i) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on the exemption; or

**Section 893B**

---

- (ii) vary or revoke any of the conditions on the exemption;  
or
  - (b) revoke an exemption.
- (3) However, the Minister may only take action under subsection (2) after:
  - (a) giving notice, and an opportunity to make submissions on the proposed action, to the operator of each financial market known by the Minister to be covered by the exemption; and
  - (b) if the exemption covers a class of financial markets—a notice has been published on ASIC’s website allowing a reasonable period within which the operator of each financial market covered by the exemption may make submissions on the proposed action, and that period has ended.
- (4) If an exemption is expressed to apply in relation to a class of financial markets (whether or not it is also expressed to apply in relation to one or more financial markets otherwise than by reference to membership of a class), then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, is a legislative instrument.
- (5) If subsection (4) does not apply to an exemption, then the exemption, and any variation or revocation of the exemption, must be in writing and the Minister must publish notice of it in the Gazette.



## **Part 7.5A—Regulation of derivative transactions and derivative trade repositories**

### **Division 1—Application of Part**

#### **900A Derivatives and transactions etc. to which this Part applies**

- (1) Unless an express contrary intention appears, this Part applies, on the basis specified in section 3, to derivatives, derivative transactions, facilities, persons, bodies and other matters located in or otherwise connected with:
  - (a) a referring State; or
  - (b) the Northern Territory or the Capital Territory; or
  - (c) a place outside Australia.
- (2) This section does not, by implication, affect the interpretation of provisions of this Act outside this Part (except to the extent appropriate for any provisions outside this Part apply or relate to matters covered by this Part).

## **Division 2—Regulation of derivative transactions: derivative transaction rules**

### **Subdivision A—Power to make derivative transaction rules**

#### **901A ASIC may make derivative transaction rules**

*Power to make derivative transaction rules*

- (1) Subject to this Division, ASIC may, by legislative instrument, make rules (*derivative transaction rules*) dealing with matters as permitted by this section.

Note: Subdivision C deals with the process of making derivative transaction rules.

*Main matters that may be dealt with in derivative transaction rules*

- (2) The derivative transaction rules may (subject to this Division) impose any of the following kinds of requirements:
- (a) execution requirements (see subsection (5));
  - (b) reporting requirements (see subsection (6));
  - (c) clearing requirements (see subsection (7));
  - (d) requirements that are incidental or related to execution requirements, reporting requirements or clearing requirements.

Note: Paragraph (2)(d): the derivative transaction rules may (for example) impose requirements on the operator of a licensed derivative trade repository to facilitate compliance, by other persons, with reporting requirements.

*Other matters that may be dealt with in derivative transaction rules*

- (3) The derivative transaction rules may also (subject to this Division) deal with matters incidental or related to requirements referred to in subsection (2), including any of the following:
- (a) specifying the classes of derivative transactions in relation to which particular requirements apply;

- (b) for execution requirements—specifying the licensed market or prescribed facility (or the class of licensed market or prescribed facility) on which derivative transactions in a particular class must be entered into;
- (c) for reporting requirements:
  - (i) specifying the licensed derivative trade repository or prescribed derivative trade repository (or the class of licensed derivative trade repository or prescribed derivative trade repository), to which information about derivative transactions, or positions, in a particular class must be reported; and
  - (ii) specifying the information that is required to be reported;
- (d) for clearing requirements:
  - (i) specifying the licensed CS facility or prescribed facility (or the class of licensed CS facility or prescribed facility) through which derivative transactions in a particular class must be cleared; and
  - (ii) specifying a period within which transactions must be cleared;
- (e) specifying the persons who are required to comply with requirements imposed by the rules;
- (f) the manner and form in which persons must comply with requirements imposed by the rules;
- (g) the circumstances in which persons are, or may be, relieved from complying with requirements in the rules that would otherwise apply to them;
- (h) the keeping of records, or the provision of records or other information, relating to compliance with (or determining whether there has been compliance with) the rules;
- (i) any other matters that the provisions of this Act provide may be dealt with in the derivative transaction rules.

Note: Paragraph (e): subject to section 901D, the persons who are required to comply with requirements imposed by the rules may (for example) be:

Section 901A

---

- (a) persons who are parties to derivative transactions, or who are intermediaries or agents who facilitate or are otherwise involved in derivative transactions; or
- (b) operators of financial markets on which derivative transactions are entered into; or
- (c) operators of clearing and settlement facilities through which derivative transactions are cleared; or
- (d) operators of licensed or prescribed derivative trade repositories.

*Penalty amounts*

- (4) The derivative transaction rules may specify a penalty amount for a rule. A penalty amount must not exceed 1,000 penalty units.

*Meaning of execution requirements*

- (5) For the purpose of this Chapter, **execution requirements** are requirements for derivative transactions not to be entered into otherwise than on:
  - (a) a licensed market, the licence for which authorises a class of financial products that includes the derivatives to which the transactions relate to be dealt with on the market; or
  - (b) a facility that is (or that is in a class of facilities that is) prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this paragraph in relation to a class of derivatives that includes the derivatives to which the transactions relate.

*Meaning of reporting requirements*

- (6) For the purpose of this Chapter, **reporting requirements** are requirements for information about derivative transactions, or about positions relating to derivative transactions, to be reported to:
  - (a) a licensed derivative trade repository, the licence for which authorises the repository to provide services in respect of a class of derivatives that includes the derivatives to which the transactions relate; or
  - (b) a facility that is (or that is in a class of facilities that is) prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this paragraph in relation to a class of derivatives that includes the derivatives to which the transactions relate.

*Meaning of clearing requirements*

- (7) For the purpose of this Chapter, **clearing requirements** are requirements for derivative transactions to be cleared through:
- (a) a licensed CS facility, the licence for which authorises the facility to provide services in respect of a class of financial products that includes the derivatives to which the transactions relate; or
  - (b) a facility that is (or that is in a class of facilities that is) prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this paragraph in relation to a class of derivatives that includes the derivatives to which the transactions relate.

*Rules cannot generally impose requirements retrospectively*

- (8) The derivative transaction rules:
- (a) cannot impose an execution requirement on a person in relation to a derivative transaction entered into before the requirement started to apply to the person; and
  - (b) cannot impose a reporting requirement on a person in relation to a derivative transaction entered into before the requirement started to apply to the person, or in relation to a position as it was at a time before the requirement started to apply to the person; and
  - (c) cannot impose a clearing requirement on a person in relation to a derivative transaction entered into before the requirement started to apply to the person, unless the transaction has not been cleared by the time the requirement starts to apply to the person.

**901B Derivatives in relation to which rules may impose requirements**

*Requirements can only be imposed in relation to derivatives covered by a determination under this section*

- (1) The derivative transaction rules cannot impose execution requirements, reporting requirements, or clearing requirements, in

Section 901B

---

relation to derivative transactions unless the derivatives to which the transactions relate are covered by a determination under this section that relates to requirements of that kind.

*Minister may determine classes of derivatives in relation to which requirements may be imposed*

- (2) The Minister may, by legislative instrument, determine one or more classes of derivatives in relation to which execution requirements, reporting requirements, or clearing requirements, may be imposed.

Note 1: Different determinations may be made in relation to the different kinds of requirements.

Note 2: A class of derivatives can be described by reference to any matter, including (for example):

- (a) the kind of asset, rate, index or commodity to which the derivatives relate; or
- (b) the time when the derivatives were issued, or their date of maturity.

*Making determinations: matters to which the Minister has regard*

- (3) In considering whether to make a determination under subsection (2) that would have the effect of allowing the derivative transaction rules to impose requirements of a particular kind in relation to certain derivatives, the Minister:
- (a) must have regard to:
    - (i) the likely effect on the Australian economy, and on the efficiency, integrity and stability of the Australian financial system, of allowing the derivative transaction rules to impose requirements of that kind in relation to those derivatives; and
    - (ii) the likely regulatory impact of allowing the derivative transaction rules to impose requirements of that kind in relation to those derivatives; and
    - (iii) if those derivatives are or include commodity derivatives—the likely impact, on any Australian market or markets on which the commodities concerned

may be traded, of allowing the derivative transaction rules to impose requirements of that kind in relation to those commodity derivatives; and

- (b) may have regard to any other matters that the Minister considers relevant.

Note: Matters that the Minister may have regard to under paragraph (b) may, for example, include:

- (a) any relevant international standards and international commitments; and  
(b) matters raised in consultations under subsection (4), or in advice under subsection (6).

*Making determinations: obligation to consult*

- (4) The Minister must not make a determination under subsection (2) unless the Minister has consulted ASIC, APRA and the Reserve Bank of Australia about the proposed determination.
- (5) A failure to consult as required by subsection (4) does not invalidate a determination.

*ASIC, APRA or Reserve Bank may advise Minister*

- (6) ASIC, APRA or the Reserve Bank of Australia may (on its own initiative or at the request of the Minister):
- (a) consider whether a determination should be made under subsection (2) that would have the effect of allowing the derivative transaction rules to impose requirements of a particular kind in relation to certain derivatives; and  
(b) advise the Minister accordingly.

*Amendment and revocation of determinations*

- (7) The Minister may amend or revoke a determination under subsection (2) in like manner and subject to like conditions (see subsections 33(3) and (3AA) of the *Acts Interpretation Act 1901*).

Section 901C

---

**901C Regulations may limit the transactions in relation to which rules may impose requirements**

The regulations may provide that the derivative transaction rules:

- (a) cannot impose requirements (or certain kinds of requirements) in relation to certain classes of derivative transactions; or
- (b) can only impose requirements (or certain kinds of requirements) in relation to certain classes of derivative transactions in certain circumstances.

Note: A class of derivative transactions can be described by reference to any matter, including (for example):

- (a) the derivatives to which transactions relate; or
- (b) the circumstances in which transactions were entered into; or
- (c) the time when, or place where, transactions were entered into; or
- (d) the parties to transactions.

**901D Regulations may limit the persons on whom requirements may be imposed**

The regulations may provide that the derivative transaction rules:

- (a) cannot impose requirements (or certain kinds of requirements) on certain classes of persons; or
- (b) can only impose requirements (or certain kinds of requirements) on certain classes of persons in certain circumstances.

Note: A class of persons may be described by reference to any matter, including (for example):

- (a) the volume of derivative transactions entered into by persons over a period; or
- (b) the characteristics or nature of persons or of their businesses; or
- (c) the place of residence or business of persons.



## **Subdivision B—Compliance with derivative transaction rules**

### **901E Obligation to comply with derivative transaction rules**

- (1) A person must comply with provisions of the derivative transaction rules that apply to the person.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E). For relief from liability to a civil penalty relating to this section, see section 1317S.

- (2) If there is an inconsistency between the derivative transaction rules and the derivative trade repository rules, the derivative transaction rules prevail to the extent of the inconsistency.

Note 1: If there is an inconsistency between the market integrity rules and the derivative transaction rules, the market integrity rules prevail: see subsection 798H(3).

Note 2: If there is an inconsistency between the standards determined under section 827D and the derivative transaction rules, the standards prevail: see subsection 827D(2A).

### **901F Alternatives to civil proceedings**

- (1) The regulations may provide for a person who is alleged to have contravened section 901E to do one or more of the following as an alternative to civil proceedings:
  - (a) pay a penalty to the Commonwealth;
  - (b) undertake or institute remedial measures (including education programs);
  - (c) accept sanctions other than the payment of a penalty to the Commonwealth;
  - (d) enter into a legally enforceable undertaking.
- (2) The penalty payable under regulations made under paragraph (1)(a) in relation to a derivative transaction rule must not exceed one-fifth of the penalty amount specified for the rule in the derivative transaction rules.

Section 901G

---

- (3) Without limiting regulations that may be made for the purpose of paragraph (1)(d), those regulations may provide for one or more of the following kinds of undertakings:
- (a) an undertaking to take specified action within a specified period;
  - (b) an undertaking to refrain from taking specified action;
  - (c) an undertaking to pay a specified amount within a specified period to the Commonwealth or to some other specified person.

**901G Failure to comply with derivative transaction rules does not invalidate transaction etc.**

A failure, in relation to a derivative transaction, to comply with a requirement of the derivative transaction rules does not invalidate the transaction or affect any rights or obligations arising under, or relating to, the transaction.

**Subdivision C—The process of making of derivative transaction rules**

**901H Matters to which ASIC must have regard when making rules**

In considering whether to make a derivative transaction rule, ASIC:

- (a) must have regard to:
  - (i) the likely effect of the proposed rule on the Australian economy, and on the efficiency, integrity and stability of the Australian financial system; and
  - (ii) the likely regulatory impact of the proposed rule; and
  - (iii) if the transactions to which the proposed rule would relate would be or include transactions relating to commodity derivatives—the likely impact of the proposed rule on any Australian market or markets on which the commodities concerned may be traded; and
- (b) may have regard to any other matters that ASIC considers relevant.

Note: Matters that ASIC may have regard to under paragraph (b) may, for example, include:

- (a) any relevant international standards and international commitments; and
- (b) matters raised in consultations (if any) under section 901J.

### **901J ASIC to consult before making rules**

- (1) ASIC must not make a derivative transaction rule unless ASIC:
  - (a) has consulted the public about the proposed rule; and
  - (b) has also consulted the following about the proposed rule:
    - (i) APRA;
    - (ii) the Reserve Bank of Australia;
    - (iii) any other person or body as required by regulations made for the purpose of this subparagraph.

Note: In some situations, consultation is not required: see section 901L.

- (2) Without limiting the ways in which ASIC may comply with the obligation in paragraph (1)(a) to consult the public about a proposed rule, ASIC is taken to comply with that obligation if ASIC, on its website:
  - (a) makes the proposed rule, or a description of the content of the proposed rule, available; and
  - (b) invites the public to comment on the proposed rule.
- (3) A failure to consult as required by subsection (1) does not invalidate a derivative transaction rule.

### **901K Ministerial consent to rules required**

- (1) ASIC must not make a derivative transaction rule unless the Minister has consented, in writing, to the making of the rule.

Note: In some situations, consent is not required: see section 901L.

- (2) A consent under subsection (1) is not a legislative instrument.

Section 901L

---

**901L Emergency rules: consultation and consent not required**

- (1) ASIC may make a derivative transaction rule without consulting as required by section 901J, and without the consent of the Minister as required by section 901K, if ASIC is of the opinion that it is necessary, or in the public interest, to do so in order to protect:
  - (a) the Australian economy; or
  - (b) the efficiency, integrity and stability of the Australian financial system.
- (2) However, if ASIC does so, ASIC must:
  - (a) provide the Minister, on the following day, with a written explanation of the need for the rule; and
  - (b) amend or revoke the rule in accordance with any written directions of the Minister.
- (3) A direction under paragraph (2)(b) is not a legislative instrument.

**901M Amendment and revocation of derivative transaction rules**

- (1) ASIC may amend or revoke a derivative transaction rule in like manner and subject to like conditions (see subsections 33(3) and (3AA) of the *Acts Interpretation Act 1901*).
- (2) However, the requirements of sections 901H, 901J and 901K do not apply in relation to an amendment or revocation pursuant to a direction by the Minister under paragraph 901L(2)(b).

### **Division 3—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: supervision by ASIC**

#### **902A ASIC to supervise licensed derivative trade repositories**

- (1) ASIC has the function of supervising licensed derivative trade repositories.
- (2) If a licensed derivative trade repository is wholly or partly operated in a foreign country, ASIC may, to such extent as ASIC considers appropriate, perform the function of supervising the repository by satisfying itself:
  - (a) that the regulatory regime that applies in relation to the repository in that country provides for adequate supervision of the repository; or
  - (b) that adequate cooperative arrangements are in place with an appropriate authority of that country to ensure that the repository will be adequately supervised by that authority.

## **Division 4—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: derivative trade repository rules**

### **Subdivision A—Power to make derivative trade repository rules**

#### **903A ASIC may make derivative trade repository rules**

*Power to make derivative trade repository rules*

- (1) Subject to this Division, ASIC may, by legislative instrument, make rules (*derivative trade repository rules*) dealing with matters as permitted by this section.

Note: Subdivision C deals with the process of making derivative trade repository rules.

*Main matters that may be dealt with in derivative trade repository rules*

- (2) The derivative trade repository rules may (subject to this Division) deal with all or any of the following matters (including by imposing requirements for or relating to any of the following matters):
  - (a) the manner in which licensed derivative trade repositories provide their services;
  - (b) the handling or use of derivative trade data by licensed derivative trade repositories and their officers and employees, including the following:
    - (i) the acceptance and retention of derivative trade data;
    - (ii) the creation of statistical data from derivative trade data;
    - (iii) the use and disclosure of, and provision of access to, derivative trade data (including statistical data referred to in subparagraph (ii));

- (c) the governance, management and resources (including financial, technological and human resources) of licensed derivative trade repositories, including the following:
  - (i) the handling of conflicts of interest;
  - (ii) the monitoring and enforcement of compliance with obligations;
  - (iii) the resources that licensed derivative trade repositories should have (including requirements relating to the experience, qualifications or fitness for office of operators and their officers and employees);
  - (iv) the integrity and security of computer systems and other systems;
  - (v) operational reliability;
  - (vi) business continuity planning;
  - (vii) the operational separation of functions;
  - (viii) the outsourcing of functions to other entities;
- (d) the disclosure of conditions (including fees) on which licensed derivative trade repositories provide their services;
- (e) the reporting to ASIC or other regulators of matters related to licensed derivative trade repositories.

Note: Paragraph (a): the rules may (for example) require licensed derivative trade repositories to provide open and non-discriminatory access to their services.

*Other matters that may be dealt with in derivative trade repository rules*

- (3) The derivative trade repository rules may also (subject to this Division) deal with matters incidental or related to matters referred to in subsection (2), including any of the following:
  - (a) specifying the persons (being persons referred to in section 903B) who are required to comply with requirements imposed by the rules;
  - (b) the manner and form in which persons must comply with requirements imposed by the rules;

**Section 903A**

---

- (c) the circumstances in which persons are, or may be, relieved from complying with requirements in the rules that would otherwise apply to them;
- (d) the keeping of records, or the provision of records or other information, relating to compliance with (or determining whether there has been compliance with) the rules;
- (e) any other matters that the provisions of this Act provide may be dealt with in the derivative trade repository rules.

*Penalty amounts*

- (4) The derivative trade repository rules may specify a penalty amount for a rule. A penalty amount must not exceed 1,000 penalty units.

*Rules may provide that derivative trade data is taken to be given to ASIC in confidence*

- (5) The derivative trade repository rules may provide, either generally or in circumstances specified in the rules, that information given to ASIC, by the operator (or an officer of the operator) of a licensed derivative trade repository, under a provision of:
  - (a) this Part; or
  - (b) regulations made for the purpose of this Part; or
  - (c) the derivative transaction rules or the derivative trade repository rules;

is to be taken, for the purpose of section 127 (confidentiality) of the ASIC Act, to be given to ASIC in confidence in connection with the performance of ASIC's functions under this Act.

- (6) Derivative trade repository rules that provide as mentioned in subsection (5) have effect accordingly for the purpose of section 127 of the ASIC Act.

Note: Subsections (5) and (6) do not limit the circumstances in which information given to ASIC by a licensed derivative trade repository may, for the purpose of section 127 of the ASIC Act, be regarded as having been given to ASIC in confidence in connection with the performance of ASIC's functions under this Act.



**903B Rules may only impose requirements on operators and officers of licensed derivative trade repositories**

The only persons on whom the derivative trade repository rules may impose requirements are:

- (a) operators of licensed derivative trade repositories; and
- (b) officers of licensed derivative trade repositories.

Note: Requirements may also be imposed on these persons by the derivative transaction rules.

**903C Regulations may limit how rules may deal with matters related to derivative trade data**

The regulations may prescribe limits on the extent to which, or the way in which, the derivative trade repository rules may deal with matters referred to in paragraph 903A(2)(b).

**Subdivision B—Compliance with derivative trade repository rules**

**903D Obligation to comply with derivative trade repository rules**

A person must comply with provisions of the derivative trade repository rules that apply to the person.

Note 1: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E). For relief from liability to a civil penalty relating to this section, see section 1317S.

Note 2: The only persons on whom derivative trade repository rules may impose requirements are operators of licensed derivative trade repositories, and officers of such operators (see section 903B).

Note 3: If there is an inconsistency between the market integrity rules and the derivative trade repository rules, the market integrity rules prevail: see subsection 798H(3).

Note 4: If there is an inconsistency between the standards determined under section 827D and the derivative trade repository rules, the standards prevail: see subsection 827D(2A).

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.5A** Regulation of derivative transactions and derivative trade repositories

**Division 4** Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: derivative trade repository rules

**Section 903E**

---

Note 5: If there is an inconsistency between the derivative transaction rules and the derivative trade repository rules, the derivative transaction rules prevail: see subsection 901E(2).

**903E Alternatives to civil proceedings**

- (1) The regulations may provide for a person who is alleged to have contravened section 903D to do one or more of the following as an alternative to civil proceedings:
  - (a) pay a penalty to the Commonwealth;
  - (b) undertake or institute remedial measures (including education programs);
  - (c) accept sanctions other than the payment of a penalty to the Commonwealth;
  - (d) enter into a legally enforceable undertaking.
- (2) The penalty payable under regulations made under paragraph (1)(a) in relation to a derivative trade repository rule must not exceed one-fifth of the penalty amount specified for the rule in the derivative trade repository rules.
- (3) Without limiting regulations that may be made for the purpose of paragraph (1)(d), those regulations may provide for one or more of the following kinds of undertakings:
  - (a) an undertaking to take specified action within a specified period;
  - (b) an undertaking to refrain from taking specified action;
  - (c) an undertaking to pay a specified amount within a specified period to the Commonwealth or to some other specified person.

**Subdivision C—The process of making derivative trade repository rules**

**903F Matters to which ASIC has regard when making rules**

In considering whether to make a derivative trade repository rule, ASIC:

---

- (a) must have regard to:
  - (i) the likely effect of the proposed rule on the Australian economy, and on the efficiency, integrity and stability of the Australian financial system; and
  - (ii) the likely regulatory impact of the proposed rule; and
- (b) may have regard to any other matters that ASIC considers relevant.

Note: Matters that ASIC may have regard to under paragraph (b) may, for example, include:

- (a) any relevant international standards and international commitments; and
- (b) matters raised in consultations (if any) under section 903G.

### **903G ASIC to consult before making rules**

- (1) ASIC must not make a derivative trade repository rule unless ASIC:
  - (a) has consulted the public about the proposed rule; and
  - (b) has also consulted any other person or body as required by regulations made for the purpose of this paragraph.

Note: In some situations, consultation is not required: see section 903J.

- (2) Without limiting the ways in which ASIC may comply with the obligation in paragraph (1)(a) to consult the public about a proposed rule, ASIC is taken to comply with that obligation if ASIC, on its website:
  - (a) makes the proposed rule, or a description of the content of the proposed rule, available; and
  - (b) invites the public to comment on the proposed rule.
- (3) A failure to consult as required by subsection (1) does not invalidate a derivative trade repository rule.

### **903H Ministerial consent to rules required**

- (1) ASIC must not make a derivative trade repository rule unless the Minister has consented, in writing, to the making of the rule.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.5A** Regulation of derivative transactions and derivative trade repositories

**Division 4** Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: derivative trade repository rules

**Section 903J**

---

Note: In some situations, consent is not required: see section 903J.

- (2) A consent under subsection (1) is not a legislative instrument.

**903J Emergency rules: consultation and consent not required**

- (1) ASIC may make a derivative trade repository rule without consulting as required by section 903G, and without the consent of the Minister as required by section 903H, if ASIC is of the opinion that it is necessary, or in the public interest, to do so in order to protect:
- (a) the Australian economy; or
  - (b) the efficiency, integrity and stability of the Australian financial system; or
  - (c) the security or confidentiality of derivative trade data.
- (2) However, if ASIC does so, ASIC must:
- (a) provide the Minister, on the following day, with a written explanation of the need for the rule; and
  - (b) amend or revoke the rule in accordance with any written directions of the Minister.
- (3) A direction under paragraph (2)(b) is not a legislative instrument.

**903K Amendment and revocation of derivative trade repository rules**

- (1) ASIC may amend or revoke a derivative trade repository rule in like manner and subject to like conditions (see subsections 33(3) and (3AA) of the *Acts Interpretation Act 1901*).
- (2) However, the requirements of sections 903F, 903G and 903H do not apply in relation to an amendment or revocation pursuant to a direction by the Minister under paragraph 903J(2)(b).

## **Division 5—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: other obligations and powers**

### **Subdivision A—Obligations**

#### **904A General obligations**

A derivative trade repository licensee must:

- (a) comply with the conditions on the licence; and
- (b) if the licensee is a foreign body corporate—be registered under Division 2 of Part 5B.2; and
- (c) take all reasonable steps to ensure that no disqualified individual becomes, or remains, involved in the operator (see Division 2 of Part 7.4).

Note: Derivative trade repository licensees must also comply with other provisions of this Part that apply to them.

#### **904B Obligations relating to derivative trade data**

*Obligation relating to use or disclosure of derivative trade data*

- (1) A derivative trade repository licensee, or an officer or employee of a derivative trade repository licensee, may use or disclose derivative trade data only if:
  - (a) the use or disclosure:
    - (i) is for the purpose of, or occurs in the course of, the provision of the repository's services, or the performance of the duties of the officer or employee as an officer or employee of the licensee; and
    - (ii) is not excluded by regulations made for the purpose of this subparagraph; or
  - (b) the use or disclosure is required or permitted by any of the following:
    - (i) another provision of this Act;

**Section 904B**

---

- (ii) the derivative transaction rules or the derivative trade repository rules;
- (iii) another law of the Commonwealth, or a law of a State or Territory.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

*Obligation to comply with requests from regulators for derivative trade data*

- (2) Any of the following persons or bodies may request a derivative trade repository licensee to provide the person or body with derivative trade data that is retained in the derivative trade repository:
  - (a) ASIC;
  - (b) APRA;
  - (c) the Reserve Bank of Australia;
  - (d) a person or body prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this paragraph;
  - (e) another derivative trade repository licensee.
- (3) Regulations must not be made prescribing a person or body for the purpose of paragraph (2)(d) unless the Minister is satisfied that there are adequate controls on the use or disclosure of any derivative trade data provided to the person or body pursuant to requests under subsection (2).
- (4) The regulations may require that certain information must not be included in derivative trade data provided pursuant to requests, or a class of requests, under subsection (2).
- (5) If:
  - (a) a derivative trade repository licensee receives a request for derivative trade data under subsection (2); and
  - (b) the licensee is not excused or prohibited from complying with the request by:

Section 904C

---

- (i) regulations made for the purpose of this subparagraph;  
or
- (ii) the derivative trade repository rules or the derivative transaction rules;

the licensee must comply with the request, subject to any requirements of regulations made for the purpose of subsection (4).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

*Obligations relating to the creation of statistical data*

- (6) The regulations may:
  - (a) impose obligations on operators of licensed derivative trade repositories to:
    - (i) create statistical information from derivative trade data; and
    - (ii) to provide that statistical information to a person or persons, or to make it available, in accordance with the regulations; and
  - (b) provide for offences in relation to those obligations.

Note: For the limit on penalties for offences against the regulations, see paragraph 1364(2)(w).

**904C Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters**

*Notification of inability to meet obligations under 904A*

- (1) A derivative trade repository licensee must give written notice to ASIC, as soon as practicable, if the licensee becomes aware that it may no longer be able to meet, or has breached, an obligation under section 904A.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) If ASIC receives a notice under subsection (1), ASIC may give the Minister advice about the matter to which the notice relates.

**Section 904D**

---

*Notification of changes to directors, secretaries or senior managers*

- (3) As soon as practicable after a person becomes or ceases to be a director, secretary or senior manager of a derivative trade repository licensee or of a holding company of a derivative trade repository licensee (including when a person changes from one of those positions to another), the licensee must give written notice of this to ASIC. The notice must include such other information about the matter as is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this subsection.

Note 1: To the extent that the licensee is required to give the notice and information under any other provision of this Act, the licensee may comply with this subsection by doing so. It need not provide the same information twice.

Note 2: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**904D Obligation to assist ASIC, APRA and the Reserve Bank**

- (1) Each of the following is a regulator to which this section applies:
- (a) ASIC;
  - (b) APRA;
  - (c) the Reserve Bank of Australia.
- (2) A derivative trade repository licensee must give such assistance to a regulator to which this section applies as the regulator reasonably requests in relation to the performance of the regulator's functions.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) Such assistance may include showing the regulator the licensee's books or giving the regulator derivative trade data or other information.



**904E Obligation to give ASIC access to derivative trade repository facilities**

A derivative trade repository licensee must give ASIC such reasonable access to the repository's facilities as ASIC requests for any of the purposes of this Part.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**Subdivision B—Powers of Minister and ASIC to give directions etc.**

**904F Minister's power to give directions to licensee not complying with obligations**

- (1) If the Minister considers that a derivative trade repository licensee is not complying with its obligations as a derivative trade repository licensee under this Part, the Minister may give the licensee a written direction to do specified things that the Minister believes will promote compliance by the licensee with those obligations.
- (2) The licensee must comply with the direction.
- (3) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.
- (4) The Minister may vary or revoke a direction at any time by giving written notice to the licensee.

**904G ASIC's power to give directions to licensee not complying with obligations**

- (1) If ASIC considers that a derivative trade repository licensee is not complying with its obligations as a derivative trade repository licensee under this Part, ASIC may give the licensee written advice that it intends to give the licensee a specified direction to do

**Section 904G**

---

specified things that ASIC believes will promote compliance by the licensee with those obligations. The advice must include the reasons for ASIC's intention to give the direction.

(2) As soon as practicable after giving the advice to the licensee, ASIC must give notice of the advice to the operator of each financial market, and of each clearing and settlement facility, with which the licensed derivative trade repository has arrangements to provide services relating to derivative trade data.

(3) If:

(a) after receiving ASIC's advice and reasons, the licensee does not take steps that in ASIC's view are adequate to address the situation; and

(b) ASIC still considers that it is appropriate to give the direction to the licensee;

ASIC may give the licensee the direction, in writing, with a statement setting out the reasons for giving the direction.

(4) The direction has effect until the earlier of the following times:

(a) the time ASIC revokes the direction under subsection (9);

(b) the end of the period (which may be up to 21 days) specified in the direction as the period during which the direction is effective.

(5) While the direction has effect, the licensee must comply with the direction.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

(6) If the licensee fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the licensee comply with the direction.

(7) As soon as practicable after making or varying (see subsection (8)) the direction, ASIC must give a copy of the direction or variation to each of the operators referred to in subsection (2).

- (8) ASIC may vary the direction by giving written notice to the licensee.
- (9) ASIC may revoke the direction by giving written notice to the licensee. ASIC must also give written notice of the revocation to each of the operators mentioned in subsection (2).

#### **904H ASIC's power to give directions requiring special reports**

- (1) ASIC may give a derivative trade repository licensee a written direction requiring the licensee to give ASIC a special report on specified matters. ASIC may give a copy of the report to the Minister.
- (2) The direction may also require the licensee to give ASIC an audit report on the special report. ASIC must nominate a specified person or body that is suitably qualified to prepare the audit report.
- (3) The licensee must give the special report, and audit report (if required), to ASIC within the time required by the direction.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

#### **904J ASIC may assess licensee's compliance**

- (1) ASIC may do an assessment of how well a derivative trade repository licensee is complying with any or all of its obligations as a derivative trade repository licensee under this Part. In doing the assessment, ASIC may take account of any information and reports that it thinks appropriate.
- (2) As soon as practicable after doing an assessment under this section, ASIC must give a written report on the assessment to the licensee. ASIC may give a copy of the report to the Minister.
- (3) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to any other person's affairs to a material extent, ASIC may, at the person's request or on its own initiative, give the person a copy of the report on the assessment or the relevant part of the report.

**Section 904K**

---

- (4) If an assessment, or part of an assessment, relates to a serious contravention of a law of the Commonwealth or of a State or Territory, ASIC may give a copy of the report on the assessment, or the relevant part of the report, to:
  - (a) the Australian Federal Police; or
  - (b) the Chief Executive Officer of the Australian Crime Commission or a member of the staff of the ACC (within the meaning of the *Australian Crime Commission Act 2002*); or
  - (c) the Director of Public Prosecutions; or
  - (d) a person or body prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of this paragraph.
- (5) The written report on an assessment, or part of the report, may be published in any way that ASIC thinks appropriate.
- (6) A report on an assessment is not a legislative instrument.

**904K Directions relating to derivative trade data if repository ceases to be licensed**

- (1) This section applies to derivative trade data that was being retained in a derivative trade repository before the repository ceased to be a licensed derivative trade repository.
- (2) ASIC may give a written direction to a person referred to in subsection (3):
  - (a) requiring the person to deal, in a specified way, with derivative trade data to which this section applies; or
  - (b) imposing limitations on the use or disclosure by the person of derivative trade data to which this section applies.

Note: A direction could, for example, require the person:

  - (a) to destroy all records of the data over which the person has control; or
  - (b) to transfer all records of the data over which the person has control to a licensed derivative trade repository or a prescribed derivative trade repository.
- (3) The direction may be given to:

Section 904K

---

- (a) the operator, or former operator, of the repository; or
  - (b) an officer or employee, or a former officer or employee, of the operator, or former operator, of the repository.
- (4) While the direction has effect, the person to whom the direction is given must comply with the direction.
- Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).
- (5) If the person to whom the direction is given fails to comply with the direction, ASIC may apply to the Court for, and the Court may make, an order that the person comply with the direction.
- (6) The direction has effect until it is revoked under subsection (7).
- (7) ASIC may vary or revoke the direction by giving written notice to the person to whom the direction was given.

## **Division 6—Regulation of licensed derivative trade repositories: licensing**

### **Subdivision A—Requirement for some trade repositories to be licensed**

#### **905A Regulations may identify derivative trade repositories as being required to be licensed**

- (1) The regulations may identify one or more classes of derivative trade repositories as being required to be licensed under this Part.

Note: Subject to this Part, derivative trade repositories may be licensed under this Part even if they are not required to be licensed.

- (2) If the regulations identify a class of derivative trade repositories as being required to be licensed under this Part, a person must not operate, or hold out that the person operates, a repository in the class if the person does not have an Australian derivative trade repository licence that authorises the person to operate the repository.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence: see subsection 1311(1).

Note 2: For other offences dealing with holding out, see section 907A.

### **Subdivision B—Granting of licences**

#### **905B How to apply for a licence**

A body corporate may, by lodging an application with ASIC in the prescribed form, apply for a licence (an *Australian derivative trade repository licence*) authorising the body corporate to operate a derivative trade repository.

Note 1: See section 350 for how to lodge an application in the prescribed form.

Note 2: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

### **905C When a licence may be granted**

#### *General*

- (1) ASIC may grant an applicant an Australian derivative trade repository licence if ASIC is satisfied that:
  - (a) the application was made in accordance with section 905B; and
  - (b) the applicant will comply with the obligations that will apply if the licence is granted; and
  - (c) no disqualified individual appears to be involved in the applicant (see Division 2 of Part 7.4).

This subsection has effect subject to subsections (2) and (3).

Note: ASIC must also have regard to the matters in section 905P in deciding whether to grant a licence.

#### *Foreign bodies*

- (2) If the applicant is a foreign body corporate, ASIC must not grant the applicant a licence unless the applicant is registered under Division 2 of Part 5B.2.

#### *Disqualified individuals*

- (3) ASIC must not grant the applicant a licence unless 42 days have passed since the application was made and ASIC has not given a notice under subsection 853D(2) to the applicant within that 42 days.

### **905D Publication of notice of licence grant**

If ASIC grants an Australian derivative trade repository licence, ASIC must publish a notice in the *Gazette* stating:

- (a) the name of the licensee; and
- (b) when the licence was granted; and
- (c) the conditions on the licence.

Section 905E

---

**905E More than one derivative trade repository covered by the same licence**

- (1) The same Australian derivative trade repository licence may authorise the licensee to operate 2 or more derivative trade repositories.
- (2) In that case, a reference in this Chapter to the derivative trade repository to which an Australian derivative trade repository licence relates is taken instead to be a reference to each of those derivative trade repositories severally.
- (3) Before varying the conditions on an Australian derivative trade repository licence so as to add another derivative trade repository that the licensee is authorised to operate, ASIC must be satisfied of the matters listed in subsection 905C(1) in relation to the repository.
- (4) An Australian derivative trade repository licence that authorises the licensee to operate 2 or more derivative trade repositories may be suspended or cancelled under Subdivision D in respect of one or some of those repositories only, as if the licensee held a separate licence for each of the repositories.

**Subdivision C—The conditions on a licence**

**905F The conditions on the licence**

- (1) ASIC may, at any time:
  - (a) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on an Australian derivative trade repository licence; or
  - (b) vary or revoke conditions imposed on such a licence;by giving written notice to the licensee. ASIC must also publish a notice in the *Gazette* with details of the action and when it took effect.

Note: As well as the requirements in this section, ASIC must also have regard to the matters in section 905P.

- (2) ASIC may do so:
-



- (a) on its own initiative, subject to subsection (3); or
- (b) if the licensee lodges an application with ASIC in the prescribed form, seeking the imposition of the conditions or additional conditions, or seeking the variation or revocation of conditions.

Note 1: See section 350 for how to lodge an application in the prescribed form.

Note 2: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (3) ASIC may only impose conditions or additional conditions, or vary or revoke conditions, on the licence on ASIC's own initiative if:
  - (a) ASIC considers it appropriate to do so having regard to:
    - (i) the licensee's obligations as a derivative trade repository licensee under this Part; and
    - (ii) any change in the operations of the derivative trade repository, or in the conditions in which the repository is operating; and
  - (b) ASIC gives the licensee written notice of the proposed action and an opportunity to make a submission before it takes effect.

This subsection does not apply to ASIC imposing conditions when a licence is granted.

- (4) ASIC must ensure that each Australian derivative trade repository licence is subject to conditions that specify:
  - (a) the particular derivative trade repository that the licensee is authorised to operate; and
  - (b) the class or classes of derivatives in respect of which the repository can provide services for the purposes of this Part.

Note: The licence condition required by paragraph (b) does not apply to services that a licensed derivative trade repository provides otherwise than for the purposes of this Part.

Section 905G

---

**Subdivision D—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled**

**905G Varying licences**

ASIC may vary an Australian derivative trade repository licence to take account of a change in the licensee's name if the licensee lodges an application with ASIC in the prescribed form, seeking the variation.

Note 1: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 905F.

Note 2: See section 350 for how to lodge an application in the prescribed form.

Note 3: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

**905H Immediate suspension or cancellation**

ASIC may, by giving written notice to a derivative trade repository licensee, suspend the licence for a specified period, or cancel it, if:

- (a) the licensee ceases to carry on the business of operating the derivative trade repository; or
- (b) the licensee becomes a Chapter 5 body corporate; or
- (c) the licensee asks ASIC to do so; or
- (d) in the case of a licensee that is a leviable entity (within the meaning of the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017*)—the following have not been paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
  - (i) an amount of levy (if any) payable in respect of the licensee;
  - (ii) the amount of late payment penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy;
  - (iii) the amount of shortfall penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy.

### **905J Suspension or cancellation following hearing and report**

- (1) If ASIC considers that a derivative trade repository licensee has breached, or is in breach of, one or more of its obligations as a derivative trade repository licensee under this Part, ASIC may give the licensee a written notice that requires the licensee to show cause, at a hearing before a specified person, why the licence should not be suspended or cancelled.
- (2) The notice must specify:
  - (a) the grounds on which it is proposed to suspend or cancel the licence; and
  - (b) a reasonable time and place at which the hearing is to be held.However, if the licensee consents, the person conducting the hearing may fix a different time or place.
- (3) The person conducting the hearing must:
  - (a) give the licensee an opportunity to be heard at the hearing; and
  - (b) give ASIC:
    - (i) a report about the hearing; and
    - (ii) a recommendation about the grounds in the notice on which it is proposed to suspend or cancel the licence.
- (4) After considering the report and recommendation, ASIC may:
  - (a) decide to take no further action in relation to the matter and give written advice of that decision to the licensee; or
  - (b) suspend the licence for a specified period, or cancel the licence, by giving written notice to the licensee.

Note: ASIC must also have regard to the matters in section 905P.
- (5) None of the following is a legislative instrument:
  - (a) a notice under subsection (1);
  - (b) a report under subsection (3) (if it is in writing).

Section 905K

---

**905K Effect of suspension**

- (1) A person whose Australian derivative trade repository licence is suspended is taken not to hold that licence while it is suspended.
- (2) However, ASIC may specify in the written notice to the licensee under section 905H, or paragraph 905J(4)(b), that subsection (1) of this section does not apply for specified purposes.

**905L Variation or revocation of suspension**

ASIC may at any time vary or revoke a suspension of an Australian derivative trade repository licence by giving written notice to the licensee.

**905M Publication of notice of licence suspension or cancellation**

- (1) If ASIC:
  - (a) suspends, or varies or revokes a suspension of, an Australian derivative trade repository licence; or
  - (b) cancels an Australian derivative trade repository licence;ASIC must publish a notice in the *Gazette* to that effect.
- (2) The notice must state when the action took effect.

**905N Suspension and cancellation only in accordance with this Subdivision**

An Australian derivative trade repository licence cannot be varied, suspended or cancelled otherwise than in accordance with this Subdivision.

Note: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 905F.

**Subdivision E—Other matters**

**905P Matters to be taken into account by ASIC**

- (1) ASIC must have regard to certain matters in deciding whether to:
-

- (a) grant an applicant an Australian derivative trade repository licence under section 905C; or
  - (b) impose, vary or revoke conditions on such a licence under section 905F; or
  - (c) suspend or cancel such a licence under section 905J.
- (2) The matters ASIC must have regard to are as follows:
- (a) the structure, or proposed structure, of the derivative trade repository;
  - (b) the nature of the activities conducted, or proposed to be conducted, by the derivative trade repository;
  - (c) the size, or proposed size, of the derivative trade repository;
  - (d) the persons who are, or may be, required to report derivative trade data to the derivative trade repository;
  - (e) the technology used, or proposed to be used, in the operation of the derivative trade repository;
  - (f) whether it would be in the public interest to take the action referred to in subsection (1).

ASIC may also have regard to any other matter that ASIC considers relevant.

## Division 7—Regulation of prescribed derivative trade repositories

### 906A Regulations may impose obligations and confer powers

- (1) The regulations may:
  - (a) impose obligations on operators of prescribed derivative trade repositories, and on their officers and employees; and
  - (b) confer powers on ASIC in relation to prescribed derivative trade repositories; and
  - (c) provide for offences in relation to those obligations and powers.

Note: For the limit on penalties for offences against the regulations, see paragraph 1364(2)(w).

- (2) Without limiting the obligations and powers that may be conferred or imposed, they may include obligations and powers of similar kinds to those that apply under the derivative trade repository rules, or under Division 5, in relation to licensed derivative trade repositories.
- (3) The regulations may provide, either generally or in circumstances specified in the regulations, that information given to ASIC, by the operator (or an officer of the operator) of a prescribed derivative trade repository, under a provision of the regulations is to be taken, for the purpose of section 127 (confidentiality) of the ASIC Act, to be given to ASIC in confidence in connection with the performance of ASIC's functions under this Act.
- (4) Regulations that provide as mentioned in subsection (3) have effect accordingly for the purpose of section 127 of the ASIC Act.

Note: Subsections (3) and (4) do not limit the circumstances in which information given to ASIC by a prescribed derivative trade repository may, for the purpose of section 127 of the ASIC Act, be regarded as having been given to ASIC in confidence in connection with the performance of ASIC's functions under this Act.

## **Division 8—Other matters**

### **907A Other prohibitions on holding out**

A person must not hold out:

- (a) that the person has an Australian derivative trade repository licence; or
- (b) that the operation of a derivative trade repository by the person is authorised by an Australian derivative trade repository licence; or
- (c) that a facility is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of paragraph 901A(5)(b); or
- (d) that a facility is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of paragraph 901A(6)(b); or
- (e) that a facility is prescribed by the regulations for the purpose of paragraph 901A(7)(b);

if that is not the case.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence: see subsection 1311(1).

Note 2: Section 905A contains other offences relating to derivative trade repositories that are required to be licensed.

### **907B Making provision by reference to instruments as in force from time to time**

- (1) This section applies to the following instruments:
  - (a) determinations made by the Minister under section 901B;
  - (b) regulations made for the purpose of a provision of this Part;
  - (c) derivative transaction rules;
  - (d) derivative trade repository rules.
- (2) An instrument to which this section applies may make provision in relation to a matter by applying, adopting or incorporating any matter contained in an instrument or other writing:
  - (a) as in force or existing at a particular time; or

Section 907C

---

(b) as in force or existing from time to time.

(3) Subsection (2) has effect despite subsection 14(2) of the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

**907C Compliance with requirements to provide derivative trade data or other information: protection from liability**

If:

(a) a person (the *protected person*):

- (i) provides derivative trade data, or other information, to another person; or
- (ii) otherwise allows another person access to derivative trade data, or other information; and

(b) the protected person does so, in good faith, in compliance with a requirement imposed by or under:

- (i) a provision of this Part, or of regulations made for the purpose of a provision of this Part; or
- (ii) a provision of the derivative transaction rules or the derivative trade repository rules;

the protected person is not liable to an action or other proceeding, whether civil or criminal, for or in relation to that conduct.

**907D Exemptions by ASIC**

(1) The *provisions covered by this section* are:

(a) the following provisions:

- (i) the provisions of this Part;
- (ii) the provisions of regulations made for the purposes of the provisions of this Part;
- (iii) the provisions of the derivative transaction rules and the derivative trade repository rules; and

(b) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in provisions referred to in paragraph (a).

(2) ASIC may:



- (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions covered by this section; or
  - (b) exempt a facility or class of facilities from all or specified provisions covered by this section; or
  - (c) exempt a derivative transaction or class of derivative transactions from all or specified provisions covered by this section.
- (3) An exemption may apply unconditionally or subject to specified conditions. A person to whom a condition specified in an exemption applies must comply with the condition. The Court may order the person to comply with the condition in a specified way. Only ASIC may apply to the Court for the order.
- (4) An exemption is a legislative instrument if the exemption is expressed to apply in relation to a class of persons, a class of facilities or a class of derivative transactions (whether or not it is also expressed to apply in relation to one or more persons, facilities or transactions identified otherwise than by reference to membership of a class).
- (5) If subsection (4) does not apply to an exemption, the exemption must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.

### **907E Exemptions and modifications by regulations**

- (1) The *provisions covered by this section* are:
- (a) the following provisions:
    - (i) the provisions of this Part;
    - (ii) the provisions of regulations made for the purposes of the provisions of this Part;
    - (iii) the provisions of the derivative transaction rules and the derivative trade repository rules; and
  - (b) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in provisions referred to in paragraph (a).
- (2) The regulations may:

Section 907E

---

- (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions covered by this section; or
- (b) exempt a facility or class of facilities from all or specified provisions covered by this section; or
- (c) exempt a derivative transaction or class of derivative transactions from all or specified provisions covered by this section; or
- (d) declare that provisions covered by this section apply in relation to a person, facility or derivative transaction, or a class of persons, facilities or derivative transactions, as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the declaration.

## **Part 7.6—Licensing of providers of financial services**

### **Division 1—Preliminary**

#### **910A Definitions**

In this Part, unless the contrary intention appears:

*basic banking product* has the meaning given by section 961F.

*body corporate licensee* means a body corporate that:

- (a) is a financial services licensee; and
- (b) is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products.

*class of product advice* means financial product advice about a class of products, but does not include a recommendation about a specific product in the class.

*Code of Ethics* means the Code of Ethics, as in force from time to time, made by the standards body under paragraph 921U(2)(b).

*compliance scheme* has the meaning given by section 921G.

*consumer credit insurance* has the meaning given by section 11 of the *Insurance Contracts Act 1984*.

*control*, in relation to a body corporate licensee, means:

- (a) having the capacity to cast, or control the casting of, more than one half of the maximum number of votes that might be cast at a general meeting of the licensee; or
- (b) directly or indirectly holding more than one half of the issued share capital of the licensee (not including any part of the issued share capital that carries no right to participate beyond a specified amount in a distribution of either profits or capital); or

Section 910A

---

- (c) the capacity to control the composition of the licensee's board or governing body; or
- (d) the capacity to determine the outcome of decisions about the licensee's financial and operating policies, taking into account:
  - (i) the practical influence the person can exert (rather than the rights it can enforce); and
  - (ii) any practice or pattern of behaviour affecting the licensee's financial or operating policies (whether or not it involves a breach of an agreement or a breach of trust).

***covers***, in relation to a compliance scheme, has the meaning given by section 921J.

***CPD year*** (short for continuing professional development year): a financial services licensee's ***CPD year*** is the 12-month period beginning on the day of the year included in the most recent notice given by the licensee under section 922HA.

***education and training standards*** has the meaning given by section 921B.

***foreign qualification*** means a bachelor or higher degree, or equivalent qualification, awarded by a tertiary education institution outside Australia.

***limited-service time-sharing adviser***: a person is a ***limited-service time-sharing adviser*** if:

- (a) the person is a relevant provider; and
- (b) the only relevant financial product that the person provides advice in relation to is a time-sharing scheme; and
- (c) the person has not met any one or more of the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) to (4).

***monitoring body*** for a compliance scheme means the person that monitors and enforces compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.

**notice provision** means section 922D, 922H, 922HA, 922HB, 922HD, 922J or 922K.

**professional association** means a body or association that represents a section of the financial services industry.

**provisional relevant provider** means a relevant provider who is undertaking work and training in accordance with subsection 921B(4).

Note: For rules relating to provisional relevant providers, see Subdivision C of Division 8A and section 923C.

**recent advising history** has the meaning given by section 922G.

**Register of Relevant Providers** means the Register of Relevant Providers maintained under section 922Q.

**relevant financial products** means financial products other than:

- (a) basic banking products; or
- (b) general insurance products; or
- (c) consumer credit insurance; or
- (d) a combination of any of those products.

**relevant provider**: a person is a **relevant provider** if the person:

- (a) is an individual; and
- (b) is:
  - (i) a financial services licensee; or
  - (ii) an authorised representative of a financial services licensee; or
  - (iii) an employee or director of a financial services licensee; or
  - (iv) an employee or director of a related body corporate of a financial services licensee; and
- (c) is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, as the licensee or on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products.

Note: For rules about when relevant providers can use the expressions “financial adviser” and “financial planner”, see section 923C.

Section 910A

---

**representative** of a person means:

- (a) if the person is a financial services licensee:
  - (i) an authorised representative of the licensee; or
  - (ii) an employee or director of the licensee; or
  - (iii) an employee or director of a related body corporate of the licensee; or
  - (iv) any other person acting on behalf of the licensee; or
- (b) in any other case:
  - (i) an employee or director of the person; or
  - (ii) an employee or director of a related body corporate of the person; or
  - (iii) any other person acting on behalf of the person.

**standards body** means the body corporate in relation to which a declaration under section 921X is in force.

**supervisor** of a provisional relevant provider has the meaning given by subsection 921F(2).

## **Division 2—Requirement to be licensed or authorised**

### **911A Need for an Australian financial services licence**

- (1) Subject to this section, a person who carries on a financial services business in this jurisdiction must hold an Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the financial services.

Note 1: Also, a person must not provide a financial service contrary to a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8.

Note 2: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) However, a person is exempt from the requirement to hold an Australian financial services licence for a financial service they provide in any of the following circumstances:
- (a) the person provides the service as representative of a second person who carries on a financial services business and who:
- (i) holds an Australian financial services licence that covers the provision of the service; or
  - (ii) is exempt under this subsection from the requirement to hold an Australian financial services licence that covers the provision of the service;

Note: However, representatives must still comply with section 911B even if they are exempted from this section by this paragraph.

- (b) the service is the issue, variation or disposal of a financial product by the person (the **product provider**) pursuant to an arrangement (an **intermediary authorisation**) between the product provider and a financial services licensee under which:
- (i) the financial services licensee, or their authorised representatives, may make offers to people to arrange for the issue, variation or disposal of financial products by the product provider; and

Section 911A

---

- (ii) the product provider is to issue, vary or dispose of financial products in accordance with such offers, if they are accepted;

provided that the offer pursuant to which the issue, variation or disposal is made was covered by the financial services licensee's Australian financial services licence;
- (ba) the service is the entry into of an intermediary authorisation referred to in paragraph (b);
- (c) all of the following apply:
  - (i) the service is the variation or disposal of a financial product by the person;
  - (ii) the same person issued the original product;
  - (iii) the person provides the service at the direct request of the person to whom it is provided (rather than through an intermediary);
- (d) the service is, or is provided incidentally to, the operation of a licensed market, or a licensed CS facility, operated by the person;
- (ea) the service is the provision of general advice and all of the following apply:
  - (i) the advice is provided in a newspaper or periodical of which the person is the proprietor or publisher;
  - (ii) the newspaper or periodical is generally available to the public otherwise than only on subscription;
  - (iii) the sole or principal purpose of the newspaper or periodical is not the provision of financial product advice;
- (eb) the service is the provision of general advice and all of the following apply:
  - (i) the advice is provided in the course of, or by means of, transmissions that the person makes by means of an information service (see subsection (6)), or that are made by means of an information service that the person owns, operates or makes available;
  - (ii) the transmissions are generally available to the public;



- (iii) the sole or principal purpose of the transmissions is not the provision of financial product advice;
- (ec) the service is the provision of general advice and all of the following apply:
  - (i) the advice is provided in sound recordings, video recordings, or data recordings;
  - (ii) the person makes the recordings available to the public by supplying copies of them to the public and/or by causing the recordings (if they are sound recordings) to be heard by the public, causing the recordings (if they are video recordings) to be seen and heard by the public, or the contents of the recordings (if they are data recordings) to be displayed or reproduced for the public;
  - (iii) the sole or principal purpose of the recordings is not the provision of financial product advice;
- (ed) both of the following apply:
  - (i) the service is the provision of general advice by the person in connection with an offer of financial products under an eligible employee share scheme;
  - (ii) the person is the corporation whose financial products are being issued or sold under the scheme, or an entity that that corporation controls;
- (ee) all of the following apply:
  - (i) the service is dealing in a financial product by the person in connection with an offer of the financial product under an eligible employee share scheme;
  - (ii) the scheme requires that any purchase or disposal of the financial product under the scheme occurs through a person who holds an Australian financial services licence to deal in financial products, or a person outside this jurisdiction who is licensed or otherwise authorised to deal in financial products in that jurisdiction;
  - (iii) the person is the corporation whose financial products are being issued or sold under the scheme, or an entity that that corporation controls;
- (ef) both of the following apply:

Section 911A

---

- (i) the service is, or is provided incidentally to, a custodial or depository service that is provided by the person in connection with an eligible employee share scheme;
  - (ii) the person is the corporation whose financial products are being issued or sold under the scheme, or an entity that that corporation controls;
- (eg) both of the following apply:
- (i) the service is dealing in an interest in a contribution plan operated by the person in relation to an eligible employee share scheme;
  - (ii) the person is the corporation whose financial products are being issued or sold under the scheme, or an entity that that corporation controls;
- (f) the person provides the service while performing functions, or exercising powers, in any of the following capacities or circumstances:
- (i) as an official receiver or trustee within the meaning of the *Bankruptcy Act 1966*;
  - (ii) as a receiver, receiver and manager, or liquidator (whether appointed by a court or otherwise);
  - (iii) as a person appointed by a court to carry on a financial services business;
  - (iv) as the Public Trustee acting under a law, prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph, of a State or Territory;
  - (v) as an administrator of a body corporate;
  - (vi) as an administrator of a deed of company arrangement executed by a body corporate;
  - (vii) as a trustee or person administering a compromise or arrangement between a body corporate and another person or persons;
  - (viii) as a personal representative of a deceased person other than a deceased financial services licensee;
  - (ix) subject to subsection (3), as a personal representative of a deceased financial services licensee;

- (x) in the administration of a bankrupt estate or in the winding up of a body corporate or partnership;
- (g) all of the following apply:
  - (i) the person is a body regulated by APRA;
  - (ii) the service is one in relation to which APRA has regulatory or supervisory responsibilities;
  - (iii) the service is provided only to wholesale clients;
- (h) all of the following apply:
  - (i) the person is regulated by an overseas regulatory authority;
  - (ii) the provision of the service by the person is covered by an exemption specified by ASIC in writing under this subparagraph and published in the *Gazette*; and
  - (iii) the service is provided only to wholesale clients;
- (i) the person provides the service only to related bodies corporate of the person;
- (j) the person provides the service in the person's capacity as trustee of a self-managed superannuation fund;
- (k) the provision of the service is covered by an exemption prescribed in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
- (l) the provision of the service is covered by an exemption specified by ASIC in writing and published in the *Gazette*.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) Subparagraph (2)(f)(ix) only applies until whichever of these happens first:
  - (a) the end of 6 months after the death of the licensee;
  - (b) the removal or discharge of the personal representative;
  - (c) the final distribution of the licensee's estate.
- (4) A person is not exempt under any paragraph of subsection (2) for a financial service they provide if the service is:
  - (a) the operation of a registered scheme; or
  - (b) a traditional trustee company service.

Section 911B

---

- (5) The exemption under paragraph (2)(ea), (eb) or (ec), or an exemption under subparagraph (2)(h)(ii) or under paragraph (2)(k) or (l), may apply unconditionally or subject to conditions:
- (a) in the case of the exemption under paragraph (2)(ea), (eb) or (ec), or an exemption under paragraph (2)(k)—specified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; or
  - (b) in the case of an exemption under subparagraph (2)(h)(ii) or under paragraph (2)(l)—specified by ASIC in writing published in the *Gazette*.
- (5A) Despite paragraph (2)(b), the regulations may provide that the exemption under that paragraph does not apply in relation to:
- (a) a particular financial product or a particular kind of financial product; or
  - (b) a particular financial product or a particular kind of financial product that is issued, varied or disposed of by a particular person, or a particular kind of person.
- (6) In this section:
- information service** means:
- (a) a broadcasting service; or
  - (b) an interactive or broadcast videotext or teletext service or a similar service; or
  - (c) an online database service or a similar service; or
  - (d) any other service identified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

**911B Providing financial services on behalf of a person who carries on a financial services business**

- (1) A person (the *provider*) must only provide a financial service in this jurisdiction on behalf of another person (the *principal*) who carries on a financial services business if one or more of the following paragraphs apply:
- (a) these conditions are satisfied:

Section 911B

---

- (i) the principal holds an Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the service; and
  - (ii) the provider is an employee or director of the principal or of a related body corporate of the principal; and
  - (iii) the provider is not an employee or director, or authorised representative, of any other person who carries on a financial services business and who is not a related body corporate of the principal; and
  - (iv) the provider is not an employee or director, or authorised representative, of a related body corporate of a person of the kind mentioned in subparagraph (iii);
- (b) these conditions are satisfied:
- (i) the principal holds an Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the service; and
  - (ii) the provider is an authorised representative of the principal; and
  - (iii) the authorisation covers the provision of the service by the provider; and
  - (iv) in the case of a provider who is an employee or director of any other person (the *second principal*) who carries on a financial services business, or of a related body corporate of such a second principal—if the provider provides any financial services in this jurisdiction on behalf of the second principal, the provider does so as an authorised representative of the second principal;
- (c) these conditions are satisfied:
- (i) the principal holds an Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the service; and
  - (ii) the provider is an employee of an authorised representative of the principal; and
  - (iii) the authorisation covers the provision of the service by the authorised representative; and
  - (iv) the service is the provision of a basic deposit product or of a facility for making non-cash payments (see section 763D) that is related to a basic deposit product, or is the provision of a financial product of a kind

**Section 911C**

---

prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph;

- (d) the provider holds their own Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the service;

Note: However, in general a financial services licensee cannot be the authorised representative of another financial services licensee: see sections 916D and 916E.

- (e) if the principal (rather than the provider) provided the service, the principal would not need an Australian financial services licence because the provision of the service would be exempt under subsection 911A(2).

Note 1: Also, a person must not provide a financial service on behalf of another person contrary to a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8.

Note 2: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Paragraphs (1)(a), (b) and (c) do not apply if the provider is a financial services licensee, unless the principal is an insurer and the provider is acting under a binder given by the principal.
- (3) If, as mentioned in paragraph (1)(d), the provider holds their own Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the service, then, for the purposes of the other provisions of this Chapter, the service is taken to be provided by the provider (and not by the principal) unless regulations made for the purposes of this subsection provide otherwise.

**911C Prohibition on holding out**

A person must not hold out:

- (a) that the person has an Australian financial services licence; or  
(b) that a financial service provided by the person or by someone else is exempt from the requirement to hold an Australian financial services licence; or  
(c) that, in providing a financial service, the person acts on behalf of another person; or

(d) that conduct, or proposed conduct, of the person is within authority (within the meaning of Division 6) in relation to a particular financial services licensee;

if that is not the case.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**911D When a financial services business is taken to be carried on in this jurisdiction**

- (1) For the purposes of this Chapter, a financial services business is taken to be carried on *in this jurisdiction* by a person if, in the course of the person carrying on the business, the person engages in conduct that is:
- (a) intended to induce people in this jurisdiction to use the financial services the person provides; or
  - (b) is likely to have that effect;
- whether or not the conduct is intended, or likely, to have that effect in other places as well.
- (2) This section does not limit the circumstances in which a financial services business is carried on *in this jurisdiction* for the purposes of this Chapter.

## **Division 3—Obligations of financial services licensees**

### **912A General obligations**

- (1) A financial services licensee must:
- (a) do all things necessary to ensure that the financial services covered by the licence are provided efficiently, honestly and fairly; and
  - (aa) have in place adequate arrangements for the management of conflicts of interest that may arise wholly, or partially, in relation to activities undertaken by the licensee or a representative of the licensee in the provision of financial services as part of the financial services business of the licensee or the representative; and
  - (b) comply with the conditions on the licence; and
  - (c) comply with the financial services laws; and
  - (ca) take reasonable steps to ensure that its representatives comply with the financial services laws; and
  - (d) subject to subsection (4)—have available adequate resources (including financial, technological and human resources) to provide the financial services covered by the licence and to carry out supervisory arrangements; and
  - (e) maintain the competence to provide those financial services; and
  - (f) ensure that its representatives are adequately trained (including by complying with section 921D), and are competent, to provide those financial services; and
  - (g) if those financial services are provided to persons as retail clients—have a dispute resolution system complying with subsection (2); and
  - (h) subject to subsection (5)—have adequate risk management systems; and
  - (j) comply with any other obligations that are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.



- (2) To comply with this subsection, a dispute resolution system must consist of:
- (a) an internal dispute resolution procedure that:
    - (i) complies with standards, and requirements, made or approved by ASIC in accordance with regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; and
    - (ii) covers complaints against the licensee made by retail clients in connection with the provision of all financial services covered by the licence; and
  - (b) membership of one or more external dispute resolution schemes that:
    - (i) is, or are, approved by ASIC in accordance with regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; and
    - (ii) covers, or together cover, complaints (other than complaints that may be dealt with by the Superannuation Complaints Tribunal established by section 6 of the *Superannuation (Resolution of Complaints) Act 1993*) against the licensee made by retail clients in connection with the provision of all financial services covered by the licence.
- (3) Regulations made for the purposes of subparagraph (2)(a)(i) or (2)(b)(i) may also deal with the variation or revocation of:
- (a) standards or requirements made by ASIC; or
  - (b) approvals given by ASIC.
- (4) Paragraph (1)(d):
- (a) does not apply to a body regulated by APRA, unless the body is an RSE licensee; and
  - (b) does not apply to an RSE licensee, unless the RSE licensee is also the responsible entity of a registered scheme.
- (5) Paragraph (1)(h):
- (a) does not apply to a body regulated by APRA, unless the body is an RSE licensee that is also the responsible entity of a registered scheme; and

Section 912B

---

(b) does not apply to an RSE licensee that is also the responsible entity of a registered scheme, to the extent that the risk relates solely to the operation of a regulated superannuation fund by the RSE licensee.

(6) In subsections (4) and (5):

*regulated superannuation fund* has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

*RSE licensee* has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**912B Compensation arrangements if financial services provided to persons as retail clients**

- (1) If a financial services licensee provides a financial service to persons as retail clients, the licensee must have arrangements for compensating those persons for loss or damage suffered because of breaches of the relevant obligations under this Chapter by the licensee or its representatives. The arrangements must meet the requirements of subsection (2).
- (2) The arrangements must:
  - (a) if the regulations specify requirements that are applicable to all arrangements, or to arrangements of that kind—satisfy those requirements; or
  - (b) be approved in writing by ASIC.
- (3) Before approving arrangements under paragraph (2)(b), ASIC must have regard to:
  - (a) the financial services covered by the licence; and
  - (b) whether the arrangements will continue to cover persons after the licensee ceases carrying on the business of providing financial services, and the length of time for which that cover will continue; and
  - (c) any other matters that are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

- (4) Regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (3)(c) may, in particular, prescribe additional details in relation to the matters to which ASIC must have regard under paragraphs (3)(a) and (b).

### **912C Direction to provide a statement**

- (1) ASIC may, by giving written notice to a financial services licensee, direct the licensee to give to ASIC a written statement containing the specified information about:
- (a) the financial services provided by the licensee or its representatives; or
  - (b) the financial services business carried on by the licensee.
- (1A) Notices under subsection (1):
- (a) may be sent out at any time; and
  - (b) may be sent to one or more particular licensees, or to each licensee in one or more classes of licensee, or to all licensees; and
  - (c) may all require the same information, or may contain differences as to the information they require; and
  - (d) may require a statement containing information to be provided on a periodic basis, or each time a particular event or circumstance occurs, without ASIC having to give a further written notice.
- (2) ASIC may also, by giving written notice to the licensee, direct the licensee to obtain an audit report, prepared by a suitably qualified person specified in the notice, on a statement, or each statement in a class of statements, under subsection (1) before the statement is given to ASIC.
- (3) The licensee must comply with a direction given under this section:
- (a) within the time specified in the direction if that is a reasonable time; or
  - (b) in any other case—within a reasonable time.
- ASIC may extend the time within which the licensee must comply with the direction by giving written notice to the licensee.

## Section 912CA

---

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **912CA Regulations may require information to be provided**

The regulations may require a financial services licensee, or each financial services licensee in a class of financial services licensees, to provide ASIC with specified information about:

- (a) the financial services provided by the licensee or its representatives; or
- (b) the financial services business carried on by the licensee.

### **912D Obligation to notify ASIC of certain matters**

- (1) A financial services licensee must comply with subsection (1B) if:
  - (a) the licensee breaches, or is likely to breach:
    - (i) any of the obligations under section 912A or 912B, other than the obligation under paragraph 912A(1)(c); or
    - (ii) the obligation under paragraph 912A(1)(c), so far as it relates to provisions of this Act or the ASIC Act referred to in paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) of the definition of *financial services law* in section 761A; or
    - (iii) in relation to financial services, other than traditional trustee company services provided by a licensed trustee company—the obligation under paragraph 912A(1)(c), so far as it relates to Commonwealth legislation that is covered by paragraph (d) of that definition and that is specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; or
    - (iv) in relation to traditional trustee company services provided by a licensed trustee company—the obligation under paragraph 912A(1)(c), so far as it relates to Commonwealth, State or Territory legislation, or a rule of common law or equity, that is covered by paragraph (d) or (e) of that definition; and

- (b) the breach, or likely breach, is significant, having regard to the following:
- (i) the number or frequency of similar previous breaches;
  - (ii) the impact of the breach or likely breach on the licensee's ability to provide the financial services covered by the licence;
  - (iii) the extent to which the breach or likely breach indicates that the licensee's arrangements to ensure compliance with those obligations is inadequate;
  - (iv) the actual or potential financial loss to clients of the licensee, or the licensee itself, arising from the breach or likely breach;
  - (v) any other matters prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (1A) For the purposes of subsection (1), a financial services licensee is **likely to breach** an obligation referred to in that subsection if, and only if, the person is no longer able to comply with the obligation.
- (1B) The financial services licensee must, as soon as practicable and in any case within 10 business days after becoming aware of the breach or likely breach mentioned in subsection (1), lodge a written report on the matter with ASIC.
- Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).
- (1C) A report that a licensee is required to lodge under subsection (1B) is taken to have been lodged with ASIC if:
- (a) the licensee is a body regulated by APRA; and
  - (b) the report is received by APRA in accordance with the terms of an agreement between APRA and ASIC under which APRA is to act as ASIC's agent in relation to such reports.
- (1D) Subsection (1B) does not apply to a financial services licensee that is a body regulated by APRA in relation to a breach if:
- (a) the auditor or actuary of the licensee gives APRA a written report about the breach; and

Section 912E

---

- (b) the report is given before, or within 10 business days after, the licensee becomes aware of the breach.
- (2) A financial services licensee must give written notice to ASIC, as soon as practicable, if the licensee becomes a participant in a licensed market or a licensed CS facility, or ceases to be such a participant. The notice must say when this happened and identify the market or facility.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**912E Surveillance checks by ASIC**

- (1) A financial services licensee and its representatives must give such assistance to ASIC, or a person authorised by ASIC, as ASIC or the authorised person reasonably requests in relation to whether the licensee and its representatives are complying with the financial services laws, and in relation to the performance of ASIC's other functions.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Such assistance may include showing ASIC the licensee's books or giving ASIC other information.

**912F Obligation to cite licence number in documents**

- (1) Whenever a financial services licensee identifies itself in a document of a kind specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subsection, the document must include the licensee's licence number (see section 913C).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) An offence based on subsection (1) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

## **Division 4—Australian financial services licences**

### **Subdivision A—How to get a licence**

#### **913A Applying for a licence**

A person may apply for an Australian financial services licence by lodging an application with ASIC that:

- (a) includes the information required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; and
- (b) is accompanied by the documents (if any) required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

#### **913B When a licence may be granted**

- (1) ASIC must grant an applicant an Australian financial services licence if (and must not grant such a licence unless):
  - (a) the application was made in accordance with section 913A; and
  - (b) ASIC has no reason to believe that the applicant is likely to contravene the obligations that will apply under section 912A if the licence is granted; and
  - (c) the requirement in whichever of subsection (2) or (3) of this section applies is satisfied; and
  - (ca) the applicant has provided ASIC with any additional information requested by ASIC in relation to matters that, under this section, can be taken into account in deciding whether to grant the licence; and
  - (d) the applicant meets any other requirements prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note 1: ASIC must not grant an Australian financial services licence to a person contrary to a banning order or disqualification order (see Division 8).

**Section 913B**

---

Note 2: There are limitations on ASIC granting an individual an Australian financial services licence that covers the provision of certain personal advice if the individual does not meet the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) to (4) (see section 921C).

- (2) If the applicant is a natural person, ASIC must be satisfied that there is no reason to believe that the applicant is not of good fame or character.
- (3) If the applicant is not a single natural person, ASIC must be satisfied:
  - (a) that:
    - (i) if the applicant is a body corporate—there is no reason to believe that any of the applicant’s responsible officers are not of good fame or character; or
    - (ii) if the applicant is a partnership or the trustees of a trust—there is no reason to believe that any of the partners or trustees who would perform duties in connection with the holding of the licence are not of good fame or character; or
  - (b) if ASIC is not satisfied of the matter in paragraph (a)—that the applicant’s ability to provide the financial services covered by the licence would nevertheless not be significantly impaired.
- (4) In considering whether there is reason to believe that a person is not of good fame or character, ASIC must (subject to Part VIIC of the *Crimes Act 1914*) have regard to:
  - (a) any conviction of the person, within 10 years before the application was made, for an offence that involves dishonesty and is punishable by imprisonment for at least 3 months; and
  - (b) whether the person has held an Australian financial services licence that was suspended or cancelled; and
  - (c) whether a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8 has previously been made against the person; and
  - (d) any other matter ASIC considers relevant.

Note: Part VIIC of the *Crimes Act 1914* includes provisions that, in certain circumstances, relieve persons from the requirement to disclose spent



convictions and require persons aware of such convictions to disregard them.

- (5) However, ASIC may only refuse to grant a licence after giving the applicant an opportunity:
- (a) to appear, or be represented, at a hearing before ASIC that takes place in private; and
  - (b) to make submissions to ASIC in relation to the matter.

### **913C Licence numbers**

- (1) ASIC must give each Australian financial services licence a unique licence number when it is granted, and must notify the licensee of that number.
- (2) If:
- (a) a person is granted an Australian financial services licence; and
  - (b) the person holds an Australian credit licence (within the meaning of the *National Consumer Credit Protection Act 2009*);
- the licence number that ASIC gives to the Australian financial services licence held by that person must be the same number as the person's Australian credit licence number (within the meaning of that Act).

## **Subdivision B—The conditions on the licence**

### **914A The conditions on the licence**

- (1) Subject to this section, ASIC may, at any time, by giving written notice to a financial services licensee:
- (a) impose conditions, or additional conditions, on the licence; and
  - (b) vary or revoke conditions imposed on the licence.

Note: Subsection 923B(3) restricts the circumstances in which ASIC can impose a condition authorising a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression under that section.

Section 914A

---

- (2) ASIC may do so:
- (a) on its own initiative; or
  - (b) if the licensee lodges with ASIC an application for ASIC to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (3) ASIC may only impose conditions or additional conditions, or vary the conditions, on the licence after giving the licensee an opportunity:

- (a) to appear, or be represented, at a hearing before ASIC that takes place in private; and
- (b) to make submissions to ASIC in relation to the matter.

This subsection does not apply to ASIC imposing conditions when a licence is granted.

- (4) If the licensee, or a related body corporate, is a body (the **APRA body**) regulated by APRA, other than an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*), then the following provisions apply:

- (a) ASIC cannot:
  - (i) impose, vary or revoke a condition on the licence that, in ASIC's opinion, has or would have the result of preventing the APRA body from being able to carry on all or any of its usual activities (being activities in relation to which APRA has regulatory or supervisory responsibilities); or
  - (ii) vary a condition so that it would, in ASIC's opinion, become a condition that would have a result as described in subparagraph (i);

unless ASIC has first consulted APRA about the proposed action;

- (b) if ASIC imposes, varies or revokes a condition on the licence and paragraph (a) does not apply to that action, ASIC must, within one week, inform APRA of the action that has been taken.

- (5) If the licensee, or a related body corporate, is an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*), then the following provisions apply:
- (a) subject to paragraphs (b) and (c), the powers that ASIC would otherwise have under this section:
    - (i) to impose, vary or revoke a condition on the licence that, in ASIC's opinion, has or would have the result of preventing the ADI from being able to carry on all or any of its banking business (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*); or
    - (ii) to vary a condition so that it would, in ASIC's opinion, become a condition that would have a result as described in subparagraph (i);are instead powers of the Minister;
  - (b) the following provisions apply in relation to a power to which paragraph (a) applies:
    - (i) the procedures for the exercise of the power are the same as would apply if ASIC could exercise the power, except that the Minister must not exercise the power unless he or she has first considered advice from ASIC on the proposed action, being advice given after ASIC has consulted APRA about the proposed action;
    - (ii) ASIC (rather than the Minister) must still conduct any hearing required under paragraph (3)(a) and receive any submissions under paragraph (3)(b);
  - (c) if ASIC imposes, varies or revokes a condition on the licence and paragraph (a) does not apply to that action, ASIC must, within one week, inform APRA of the action that has been taken.
- (5A) A failure to comply with a requirement of subsection (4) or (5) to consult or inform APRA about, or to consider advice from ASIC about, an imposition, variation or revocation of a condition does not invalidate the action taken.

Section 915A

---

- (6) ASIC must ensure that the licence is subject to a condition that specifies the particular financial services or class of financial services that the licensee is authorised to provide.
- (7) The financial services or class of financial services may be specified by reference to particular financial products, or classes of financial products.
- (8) The licence is subject to such other conditions as are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection. However, ASIC cannot vary or revoke those conditions.

**Subdivision C—When a licence can be varied, suspended or cancelled**

**915A Varying licences**

- (1) ASIC may vary an Australian financial services licence to take account of a change in the licensee's name if the licensee lodges with ASIC an application for the variation, accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note 1: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 914A.

Note 2: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (2) ASIC must give written notice of the variation to the licensee.

**915B Immediate suspension or cancellation**

*Licence held by a natural person*

- (1) ASIC may suspend or cancel an Australian financial services licence held by a natural person, by giving written notice to the person, if the person:
  - (a) ceases to carry on the financial services business; or
  - (b) becomes an insolvent under administration; or
  - (c) is convicted of serious fraud; or

- (d) becomes incapable of managing their affairs because of mental or physical incapacity; or
- (e) lodges with ASIC an application for ASIC to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; or
- (f) is liable to pay levy imposed by the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017* and has not paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
  - (i) the amount of levy; and
  - (ii) the amount of any late payment penalty payable in relation to the levy; and
  - (iii) the amount of any shortfall penalty payable in relation to the levy.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

*Licence held by a partnership*

- (2) ASIC may suspend or cancel an Australian financial services licence held by a partnership, by giving written notice to the partnership, if:
  - (a) the partnership ceases to carry on the financial services business; or
  - (b) a creditor's petition or a debtor's petition is presented under Division 2 or 3 of Part IV of the *Bankruptcy Act 1966* against the partnership; or
  - (c) one or more of the partners is convicted of serious fraud; or
  - (d) the partnership lodges with ASIC an application for ASIC to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; or
  - (e) in the case of a partnership that is a leviable entity (within the meaning of the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017*)—the following have not been paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
    - (i) an amount of levy (if any) payable in respect of the licensee;

**Section 915B**

---

- (ii) an amount of late payment penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy;
- (iii) an amount of shortfall penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

*Licence held by a body corporate*

- (3) ASIC may suspend or cancel an Australian financial services licence held by a body corporate, by giving written notice to the body, if the body:
- (a) ceases to carry on the financial services business; or
  - (b) becomes a Chapter 5 body corporate; or
  - (c) is a responsible entity of a registered scheme whose members have suffered, or are likely to suffer, loss or damage because the body has breached this Act; or
  - (ca) is a trustee company whose clients have suffered, or are likely to suffer, loss or damage because the company has breached:
    - (i) this Act; or
    - (ii) a financial services law referred to in paragraph (e) of the definition of **financial services law** in section 761A; or
  - (d) lodges with ASIC an application for ASIC to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; or
  - (e) is liable to pay levy imposed by the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017* and has not paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
    - (i) the amount of levy; and
    - (ii) the amount of any late payment penalty payable in relation to the levy; and
    - (iii) the amount of any shortfall penalty payable in relation to the levy.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (4) ASIC may suspend or cancel an Australian financial services licence held by the trustees of a trust, by giving written notice to the trustees, if:
- (a) the trustees of the trust cease to carry on the financial services business; or
  - (b) a trustee who is a natural person:
    - (i) becomes an insolvent under administration; or
    - (ii) is convicted of serious fraud; or
    - (iii) becomes incapable of managing their affairs because of physical or mental incapacity; or
  - (c) a trustee that is a body corporate becomes a Chapter 5 body corporate; or
  - (d) the trustees lodge with ASIC an application for ASIC to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; or
  - (e) in the case of a licensee that is a single legal entity under section 761FA and also a leviable entity (within the meaning of the *ASIC Supervisory Cost Recovery Levy Act 2017*)—the following have not been paid in full at least 12 months after the due date for payment:
    - (i) an amount of levy (if any) payable in respect of the licensee;
    - (ii) an amount of late payment penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy;
    - (iii) an amount of shortfall penalty payable (if any) in relation to the levy.

Note 1: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

Note 2: If there is only one trustee, subsection (1) will apply (if the trustee is a natural person), and subsection (3) will apply (if the trustee is a body corporate).

### **915C Suspension or cancellation after offering a hearing**

- (1) ASIC may suspend or cancel an Australian financial services licence (subject to complying with subsection (4)) in any of the following cases:

**Section 915D**

---

- (a) the licensee has not complied with their obligations under section 912A;
  - (aa) ASIC has reason to believe that the licensee is likely to contravene their obligations under section 912A;
  - (b) ASIC is no longer satisfied of the matter in whichever of subsection 913B(2) or (3) applied at the time the licence was granted (about whether the licensee, or the licensee's representatives, are of good fame or character);
  - (c) a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8 is made against the licensee;
  - (d) a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8 is made against a representative of the licensee and ASIC considers that the representative's involvement in the provision of the licensee's financial services will significantly impair the licensee's ability to meet its obligations under this Chapter.
- (2) ASIC may also cancel an Australian financial services licence (subject to complying with subsection (4)) if:
- (a) the application for the licence was false in a material particular or materially misleading; or
  - (b) there was an omission of a material matter from the application.
- (3) An Australian financial services licence is suspended or cancelled by ASIC giving written notice to the licensee.
- (4) However, ASIC may only suspend or cancel an Australian financial services licence under this section after giving the licensee an opportunity:
- (a) to appear, or be represented, at a hearing before ASIC that takes place in private; and
  - (b) to make submissions to ASIC on the matter.

**915D Effect of suspension**

- (1) A suspended Australian financial services licence has no effect while it remains suspended.



- (2) Subsection (1) has effect subject to section 915H.

**915E Revocation of suspension**

ASIC may at any time revoke the suspension of an Australian financial services licence by giving written notice to the licensee.

**915F Date of effect and publication of cancellation or suspension**

- (1) A variation, suspension, revocation of a suspension, or cancellation, of an Australian financial services licence takes effect when the written notice of that action is given to the licensee.
- (2) As soon as practicable after the notice is given to the licensee, ASIC must:
- (a) publish a notice of the action in the *Gazette*; and
  - (b) if the licensee is a participant in a licensed market or a licensed CS facility—give written notice of the action to the operator of the market or facility.

A notice under this subsection must state when the action took effect.

**915G Statement of reasons**

A notice of suspension or cancellation given to a licensee under this Subdivision must be accompanied by a statement of reasons for the action taken.

**915H ASIC may allow licence to continue in effect**

In the written notice of suspension or cancellation that ASIC gives to the licensee, ASIC may specify that the licence continues in effect as though the suspension or cancellation had not happened for the purposes of specified provisions of this Act in relation to specified matters, a specified period, or both.

Section 915I

---

**915I Special procedures for APRA-regulated bodies**

- (1) If a financial services licensee, or a related body corporate, is a body (the *APRA body*) regulated by APRA, other than an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*), the following provisions apply:
- (a) ASIC cannot suspend or cancel the licensee's licence if doing so would, in ASIC's opinion, have the result of preventing the APRA body from being able to carry on all or any of its usual activities (being activities in relation to which APRA has regulatory or supervisory responsibilities), unless ASIC has first consulted APRA about the proposed action;
  - (b) if ASIC suspends or cancels the licensee's licence and paragraph (a) does not apply to that action, ASIC must, within one week, inform APRA of the action that has been taken.
- (2) If:
- (a) a financial services licensee is an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*); or
  - (b) a related body corporate of a financial services licensee is an ADI (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*), and cancellation or suspension of the licensee's licence would, in ASIC's opinion, have the result of preventing the ADI from being able to carry on all or any of its banking business (within the meaning of the *Banking Act 1959*);
- the following provisions have effect:
- (c) subject to paragraph (d), the powers that ASIC would otherwise have under this Subdivision to cancel or suspend the licensee's licence, or to subsequently revoke a suspension to which this subsection applied, are instead powers of the Minister;
  - (d) the procedures for the exercise of a power to which paragraph (c) applies are the same as would apply if ASIC could exercise the power, except that the Minister must not exercise the power unless he or she has first considered

- advice from ASIC on the proposed action, being advice given after ASIC has consulted APRA about the proposed action;
- (e) ASIC (rather than the Minister) must still conduct any hearing required under paragraph 915C(4)(a) and receive any submissions under paragraph 915C(4)(b).
- (3) A failure to comply with a requirement of subsection (1) or (2) to consult or inform APRA about, or to consider advice from ASIC about, a cancellation or suspension, or a revocation of a suspension, of a licence does not invalidate the action taken.

**915J Variation, suspension and cancellation only under this Subdivision**

An Australian financial services licence cannot be varied, suspended or cancelled otherwise than under this Subdivision.

Note: The conditions on the licence can be varied under section 914A.

## Division 5—Authorised representatives

### 916A How representatives are authorised

- (1) A financial services licensee may give a person (the *authorised representative*) a written notice authorising the person, for the purposes of this Chapter, to provide a specified financial service or financial services on behalf of the licensee.

Note: There are limitations on a financial services licensee authorising an individual to provide certain personal advice if the individual does not meet the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) to (4) (see section 921C).

- (2) The financial services specified may be some or all of the financial services covered by the licensee's licence.
- (3) An authorisation under subsection (1) is void to the extent that it purports to authorise a person to provide a financial service:
- (a) that is not covered by the licensee's licence; or
  - (b) contrary to a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8; or
  - (c) in contravention of subsection 921C(2).
- (3A) A person must not give a purported authorisation if that purported authorisation is void to any extent under subsection (3).
- Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).
- (4) An authorisation may be revoked at any time by the licensee giving written notice to the authorised representative.

### 916B Sub-authorisations

- (1) Subject to subsection (3), an authorised representative of a financial services licensee cannot, in that capacity, make a person their authorised representative or an authorised representative of the licensee.

Section 916B

---

- (2) A purported authorisation contrary to this section or subsection 921C(3) is void.
- (2A) A person must not give a purported authorisation if that purported authorisation is contrary to this section or subsection 921C(3).
- Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).
- (3) A body corporate that is an authorised representative of a financial services licensee may, in that capacity, give an individual a written notice authorising that individual, for the purposes of this Chapter, to provide a specified financial service or financial services on behalf of the licensee, but only if the licensee consents in writing given to the body corporate.
- Note: There are limitations on sub-authorising an individual to provide certain personal advice if the individual does not meet the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) to (4) (see section 921C).
- (4) The financial services specified may be some or all of the financial services covered by the licensee's licence.
- (5) The licensee may give consent under subsection (3) in respect of either a specified individual or a specified class of individuals (the membership of which might change from time to time).
- (5A) If a licensee gives consent under subsection (3) to a body corporate, the licensee must keep a copy of the consent for 5 years after the day on which it ceases to have effect.
- Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).
- (6) An individual who is authorised as mentioned in subsection (3) is an **authorised representative** of the relevant licensee.
- (7) An authorisation of an individual as mentioned in subsection (3) may be revoked at any time by:
- (a) the licensee; or
  - (b) the body corporate that gave the individual the authorisation, giving written notice to the individual.

**Section 916C**

---

- (8) If a person revokes the authorisation of an individual under subsection (7), that person must inform, in writing, the other person who could have revoked the authorisation.
- (9) To avoid doubt, an authorisation given as mentioned in subsection (3) is taken, for the purposes of sections 916C to 916F, to be given by the body corporate, not the licensee.

**916C Authorised representative of 2 or more licensees**

- (1) One person can be the authorised representative of 2 or more financial services licensees, but only if:
  - (a) each of those licensees has consented to the person also being the authorised representative of each of the other licensees; or
  - (b) each of those licensees is a related body corporate of each of the other licensees.
- (2) A purported authorisation given in breach of this requirement is void.
- (3) A person must not give a purported authorisation if that purported authorisation is in breach of this requirement.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**916D Licensees cannot authorise other licensees**

- (1) A financial services licensee cannot be the authorised representative of another financial services licensee.
  - Note 1: Instead, the first licensee could use their own licence to provide financial services on behalf of the second licensee (assuming that the first licensee's licence covered the provision of those services). See paragraph 911B(1)(d).
  - Note 2: There is an exception to this rule in section 916E.
- (2) A purported authorisation given in breach of this requirement is void.

Section 916E

---

- (2A) A person must not give a purported authorisation if that purported authorisation is given in breach of this requirement.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2B) The requirement in subsection (1) does not prohibit a financial services licensee from being an authorised representative in circumstances covered by section 916E.

Note: In a prosecution for an offence based on subsection (2A), a defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) As well, an authorisation that starts to breach this requirement, because the person authorised is subsequently granted an Australian financial services licence, is void.

**916E Licensees acting under a binder**

- (1) Despite section 916D, a financial services licensee (the **authorised licensee**) may be the authorised representative of another financial services licensee who is an insurer, if the authorised licensee acts under a binder given by the insurer.
- (2) For all purposes connected with contracts that are risk insurance products, or with claims against the insurer, in respect of which the authorised licensee acts under the binder:
- (a) the authorised licensee is taken to act on behalf of the insurer and not the insured; and
  - (b) if the insured in fact relied in good faith on the conduct of the authorised licensee, the authorised licensee is taken to act on behalf of the insurer regardless of the fact that the authorised licensee did not act within the scope of the binder.

**916F Obligation to notify ASIC etc. about authorised representatives**

- (1) A person must lodge with ASIC a written notice (in accordance with subsection (2)), within 15 business days, if the person

**Section 916F**

---

authorises a representative to provide a financial service as mentioned in section 916A or 916B.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

(1AA) Subsection (1) does not apply to an authorisation of a representative if:

- (a) the authorisation is by a body corporate and is given as mentioned in section 916B; and
- (b) the relevant consent under subsection 916B(5) was given in respect of a specified class of individuals of which the representative is a member; and
- (c) the representative is an employee of the body corporate; and
- (d) the only financial services that the representative is authorised to provide are either or both of the following:
  - (i) general advice that relates to financial products covered by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
  - (ii) dealing in financial products covered by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note 1: Regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (d) may be expressed to cover all financial products, or only one or more specified kinds of financial products.

Note 2: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (1AA). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

(1A) A person who authorises an individual to provide a financial service on behalf of a financial services licensee as mentioned in section 916B must give the licensee written notice (in accordance with subsection (2)), within 15 business days of the individual being authorised to provide the financial service, if the licensee's consent to the authorisation was given in respect of a specified class of individuals.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

(2) The notice must include the following details:

- (a) the name and business address of the representative;



- (b) details of the authorisation, including the date on which it was made and what the representative is authorised to do on behalf of the relevant licensee;
  - (c) details of each other financial services licensee on behalf of whom the representative is an authorised representative.
- (3) A person must notify ASIC, by lodging a written notice, within 10 business days if:
- (a) the person authorised a representative under section 916A or 916B and there is a change in any details relating to the representative that are required to be included under subsection (2); or
  - (b) the person revokes an authorisation to which subsection (1) applied.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (3), strict liability applies to the physical element of circumstance of the offence, that the details mentioned in subsection (3) changed.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

### **916G ASIC may give licensee information about representatives**

- (1) If ASIC considers it appropriate to do so, it may give information to a financial services licensee about a person who ASIC believes is, or will be, a representative of the licensee. However, ASIC may only do so if it believes, on reasonable grounds, that the information is true.
- (2) A financial services licensee to whom the information is given may only make use of, make a record of, or give to another person, the information for a purpose connected with:
  - (a) the licensee making a decision about what action (if any) to take in relation to the representative, as a consequence of receiving the information; or
  - (b) the licensee taking action pursuant to such a decision.

**Section 916G**

---

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) A person to whom information has been given for a purpose or purposes under subsection (2) or this subsection, may only make use of, make a record of, or give to another person, that information for that purpose or any of those purposes.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) A person has qualified privilege in respect of an act done by the person under subsection (2) or (3).
- (5) A person to whom information is given in accordance with this section must not give any of the information to a court, or produce in a court a document that sets out some or all of the information, except:

(a) for a purpose connected with:

- (i) a financial services licensee making a decision about what action (if any) to take in relation to the representative, as a consequence of receiving some or all of the information; or
  - (ii) a financial services licensee taking action pursuant to that decision; or
  - (iii) proving in a proceeding in that court that particular action taken by a financial services licensee in relation to the representative was taken pursuant to that decision; or
- (b) in a proceeding in that court, in so far as the proceeding relates to an alleged breach of this section; or
- (c) in a proceeding in respect of an ancillary offence relating to an offence based on this section; or
- (d) in a proceeding about giving to a court false information some, at least, of which was the information given under this section.

- (6) A reference in this section to a financial services licensee taking action in relation to a representative is a reference to the licensee:

- (a) taking action by way of making, terminating or varying the terms and conditions of an agreement; or
  - (b) otherwise taking action in relation to an agreement;
- to the extent that the agreement relates to the representative acting on behalf of the licensee.
- (7) Subsection (5) also has the effect it would have if:
- (a) a reference in it to a court were a reference to a court of an external Territory or of a country outside Australia and the external Territories; and
  - (b) paragraphs (5)(b) and (c) were omitted.

## Division 6—Liability of financial services licensees for representatives

### 917A Application of Division

- (1) This Division applies to any conduct of a representative of a financial services licensee:
  - (a) that relates to the provision of a financial service; and
  - (b) on which a third person (the *client*) could reasonably be expected to rely; and
  - (c) on which the client in fact relied in good faith.
- (2) In this Division, a reference to a representative's conduct being *within authority* in relation to a particular financial services licensee is, subject to subsection (3), a reference to:
  - (a) if the representative is an employee of the licensee or of a related body corporate of the licensee—conduct being within the scope of the employee's employment; or
  - (b) if the representative is a director of the licensee or of a related body corporate of the licensee—conduct being within the scope of the director's duties as director; or
  - (c) in any other case—conduct being within the scope of the authority given by the licensee.
- (3) If:
  - (a) a person is the representative of more than one financial services licensee in respect of a particular class of financial service; and
  - (b) the person engages in conduct relating to that class of service; and
  - (ba) the conduct relates to a particular kind of financial product prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of paragraph 917C(3)(ba); and
  - (c) any one or more of the licensees issues or transfers a financial product of that kind as a result of the conduct;

then, for the purposes of this Division:

- (d) the person is taken, in respect of the conduct, to have acted ***within authority*** in relation to the licensee or to each licensee who issued or transferred a financial product of that kind as a result of the conduct; and
- (e) the person is, in respect of the conduct, taken not to have acted ***within authority*** in relation to any licensee who did not issue or transfer a financial product of that kind as a result of the conduct.

### **917B Responsibility if representative of only one licensee**

If the representative is the representative of only one financial services licensee, the licensee is responsible, as between the licensee and the client, for the conduct of the representative, whether or not the representative's conduct is within authority.

### **917C Representatives of multiple licensees**

- (1) This section applies if the representative is the representative of more than one financial services licensee.

*Financial service covered by only one authority*

- (2) If:
  - (a) the representative is the representative of one of the licensees only in respect of a particular class of financial service; and
  - (b) the conduct relates to that class of service;that licensee is responsible for the conduct, as between that licensee and the client, whether or not the conduct is within authority.

*Financial service covered by multiple authorities: conduct within authority for one or more of them*

- (3) If:

Section 917D

---

- (a) the representative is the representative of more than one of the licensees in respect of a particular class of financial service; and
- (b) the conduct relates to that class of service; and
- (ba) the conduct relates to a particular kind of financial product prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; and
- (c) the conduct is within authority in relation to:
  - (i) only one of those licensees (the *authorising licensee*); or
  - (ii) two or more of those licensees (the *authorising licensees*);

then:

- (d) if subparagraph (c)(i) applies—the authorising licensee is responsible for the conduct, as between that licensee and the client; or
- (e) if subparagraph (c)(ii) applies—the authorising licensees are jointly and severally responsible for the conduct, as between themselves and the client.

*All other cases*

- (4) In any other case, all of the licensees are jointly and severally responsible for the conduct, as between themselves and the client, whether or not the representative's conduct is within authority in relation to any of them.

**917D Exception if lack of authority is disclosed to client**

A financial services licensee is not responsible under section 917B or 917C for the conduct of their representative if:

- (a) the conduct is not within authority in relation to the licensee (or in relation to any of the licensees, if there were more than one); and
- (b) the representative disclosed that fact to the client before the client relied on the conduct; and

- (c) the clarity and the prominence of the disclosure was such as a person would reasonably require for the purpose of deciding whether to acquire the relevant financial service.

Note: A person must not hold out that conduct, or proposed conduct, of the person is within authority in relation to a particular financial services licensee, unless that is the case. See section 911C.

### **917E Responsibility extends to loss or damage suffered by client**

The responsibility of a financial services licensee under this Division extends so as to make the licensee liable to the client in respect of any loss or damage suffered by the client as a result of the representative's conduct.

### **917F Effect of Division**

- (1) If a financial services licensee is responsible for the conduct of their representative under this Division, the client has the same remedies against the licensee that the client has against the representative.
- (2) The licensee and the representative (along with any other licensees who are also responsible) are all jointly and severally liable to the client in respect of those remedies.
- (3) However, nothing in this Division imposes:
  - (a) any criminal responsibility; or
  - (b) any civil liability under a provision of this Act apart from this Division;on a financial services licensee that would not otherwise be imposed on the licensee.
- (4) This Division does not relieve a representative of a financial services licensee of any liability they have to the client or the licensee.
- (5) An agreement is void in so far as it purports to alter or restrict the operation of section 917B, 917C, 917D or 917E.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.6** Licensing of providers of financial services

**Division 6** Liability of financial services licensees for representatives

Section 917F

---

- (6) However, subsection (5) does not apply to the extent that the agreement:
- (a) provides for a representative of a financial services licensee to indemnify the licensee for a liability of the licensee in respect of the representative; or
  - (b) provides for a financial services licensee, for whom a representative acts, to indemnify another financial services licensee for a liability in respect of the representative.
- (7) A financial services licensee must not make, or offer to make, an agreement that is, or would be, void under subsection (5).



## **Division 8—Banning or disqualification of persons from providing financial services**

### **Subdivision A—Banning orders**

#### **920A ASIC's power to make a banning order**

- (1) ASIC may make a banning order against a person, by giving written notice to the person, if:
- (a) ASIC suspends or cancels an Australian financial services licence held by the person; or
  - (b) the person has not complied with their obligations under section 912A; or
  - (ba) ASIC has reason to believe that the person is likely to contravene their obligations under section 912A; or
  - (bb) the person becomes an insolvent under administration; or
  - (c) the person is convicted of fraud; or
  - (d) ASIC has reason to believe that the person is not of good fame or character; or
  - (da) ASIC has reason to believe that the person is not adequately trained, or is not competent, to provide a financial service or financial services; or
  - (db) the person has not complied with any one or more of his or her obligations under section 921F (requirements relating to provisional relevant providers); or
  - (dc) both of the following apply:
    - (i) a supervisor referred to in section 921F has not complied with any one or more of his or her obligations under that section in relation to a provisional relevant provider;
    - (ii) both the supervisor and the provisional relevant provider are authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the person, in relation to relevant financial products; or
  - (dd) both of the following apply:

Section 920A

---

- (i) a provisional relevant provider has not complied with his or her obligations under subsection 921F(7);
  - (ii) the provisional relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the person, in relation to relevant financial products; or
- (de) ASIC has reason to believe that the person was authorised, in contravention of subsection 921C(2), (3) or (4), to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products; or
- (e) the person has not complied with a financial services law (other than section 921E (relevant providers to comply with the Code of Ethics)); or
- (f) ASIC has reason to believe that the person is likely to contravene a financial services law; or
- (g) the person has been involved in the contravention of a financial services law by another person; or
- (h) ASIC has reason to believe that the person is likely to become involved in the contravention of a financial services law by another person.
- (1A) In considering whether, at a particular time, there is reason to believe that a person is not of good fame or character, ASIC must (subject to Part VIIC of the *Crimes Act 1914*) have regard to:
- (a) any conviction of the person, within 10 years before that time, for an offence that involves dishonesty and is punishable by imprisonment for at least 3 months; and
  - (b) whether the person has held an Australian financial services licence that was suspended or cancelled; and
  - (c) whether a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8 has previously been made against the person; and
  - (d) any other matter ASIC considers relevant.

Note: Part VIIC of the *Crimes Act 1914* includes provisions that, in certain circumstances, relieve persons from the requirement to disclose spent convictions and require persons aware of such convictions to disregard them.

- (1B) To avoid doubt, a person contravenes a financial services law if a person fails to comply with a duty imposed under that law, even if the provision imposing the duty is not an offence provision or a civil penalty provision.
- (2) However, ASIC may only make a banning order against a person after giving the person an opportunity:
- (a) to appear, or be represented, at a hearing before ASIC that takes place in private; and
  - (b) to make submissions to ASIC on the matter.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply in so far as ASIC's grounds for making the banning order are or include the following:
- (a) that the suspension or cancellation of the relevant licence took place under section 915B;
  - (b) that the person has been convicted of serious fraud.

**920B What is a *banning order*?**

- (1) A ***banning order*** is a written order that prohibits a person from providing any financial services or specified financial services in specified circumstances or capacities.
- (2) The order may prohibit the person against whom it is made from providing a financial service:
- (a) permanently; or
  - (b) for a specified period, unless ASIC has reason to believe that the person is not of good fame or character.
- (3) A banning order may include a provision allowing the person against whom it was made, subject to any specified conditions:
- (a) to do specified acts; or
  - (b) to do specified acts in specified circumstances;
- that the order would otherwise prohibit them from doing.

Section 920C

---

**920C Effect of banning orders**

- (1) A person against whom a banning order is made cannot be granted an Australian financial services licence contrary to the banning order.
- (2) A person contravenes this subsection if:
  - (a) the person engages in conduct; and
  - (b) the conduct breaches a banning order that has been made against the person.

Note: A contravention of this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**920D Variation or cancellation of banning orders**

- (1) ASIC may vary or cancel a banning order, by giving written notice to the person against whom the order was made, if ASIC is satisfied that it is appropriate to do so because of a change in any of the circumstances based on which ASIC made the order.
- (2) ASIC may do so:
  - (a) on its own initiative; or
  - (b) if the person against whom the order was made lodges with ASIC an application for ASIC to do so, which is accompanied by the documents, if any, required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: For fees in respect of lodging applications, see Part 9.10.

- (3) If ASIC proposes not to vary or cancel a banning order in accordance with an application lodged by a person under paragraph (2)(b), ASIC must give the person an opportunity:
  - (a) to appear, or be represented, at a hearing before ASIC that takes place in private; and
  - (b) to make submissions to ASIC on the matter.

**920E Date of effect and publication of banning order, variation or cancellation**

- (1) A banning order, or variation or cancellation of a banning order, takes effect when it is given to the person against whom the order is or was made.
- (2) ASIC must publish a notice in the *Gazette* as soon as practicable after making, varying or cancelling a banning order. The notice must state when the action took effect and:
  - (a) in the case of the making of a banning order—set out a copy of the banning order; or
  - (b) in the case of the variation of a banning order—set out a copy of the banning order as varied.
- (3) However, if the banning order contains a provision of the kind referred to in subsection 920B(3) and ASIC considers that the *Gazette* notice would be unreasonably long if that provision were included, the notice may instead set out a summary of the provision's effect.
- (4) If ASIC makes a banning order against a person who is a participant in a licensed market or a licensed CS facility, or varies a banning order against such a person, ASIC must give the operator of the market or facility written notice of the making of the order or the variation.

**920F Statement of reasons**

- (1) A banning order given to a person must be accompanied by a statement of reasons for the order.
- (2) If ASIC varies a banning order made against a person, ASIC must, on request by the person, give the person a statement of reasons for the variation.

Section 921A

---

**Subdivision B—Disqualification by the Court**

**921A Disqualification by the Court**

- (1) ASIC may apply to the Court for an order or orders under this section in relation to a person if ASIC:
  - (a) cancels an Australian financial services licence held by the person; or
  - (b) makes a banning order against the person that is to operate permanently.
- (2) The Court may make:
  - (a) an order disqualifying the person, permanently or for a specified period, from providing any financial services, or specified financial services, in specified circumstances or capacities; or
  - (b) any other order the Court considers appropriate.
- (3) The Court may revoke or vary an order made under subsection (2).
- (4) A person against whom such an order is made cannot be granted an Australian financial services licence contrary to the order.
- (5) If the Court makes or varies an order under this section in relation to a person who is a participant in a licensed market or a licensed CS facility, ASIC must give the operator of the market or facility written notice of the making of the order or the variation.

## **Division 8A—Professional standards for relevant providers**

### **Subdivision A—Education and training standards**

#### **921B Meaning of *education and training standards***

- (1) This section sets out the *education and training standards* for a person who is, or is to be, a relevant provider.

##### *Conditions for relevant providers*

- (2) The first standard is that:
- (a) the person has completed a bachelor or higher degree, or equivalent qualification, approved by the standards body under section 921U; or
  - (b) both of the following conditions are satisfied:
    - (i) the person has completed a foreign qualification;
    - (ii) the standards body has approved the foreign qualification under section 921V.
- (3) The second standard is that the person has passed an exam approved by the standards body.
- (4) The third standard is that the person has undertaken at least 1 year of work and training that meets the requirements set by the standards body.

Note: A relevant provider who is undertaking work and training in accordance with this subsection is a provisional relevant provider (see the definition of *provisional relevant provider* in section 910A). For rules relating to provisional relevant providers, see Subdivision C.

##### *Continuing standard for relevant providers*

- (5) The fourth standard is that the person meets the requirements for continuing professional development set by the standards body.

Note: A provisional relevant provider is not required to meet this standard (see section 921D).

Section 921C

---

**921C Limitation on authorisation to provide personal advice unless conditions met**

*Financial services licensees*

- (1) ASIC must not grant an applicant an Australian financial services licence that covers the provision of personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products if:
- (a) the applicant is an individual; and
  - (b) the applicant has not met any one or more of the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) to (4).

Note: Subsections 921B(2) to (4) set out the conditions for education and training for relevant providers.

*Authorised representatives*

- (2) A financial services licensee must not, under section 916A, give a person a written notice authorising the person to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products if:
- (a) the person is an individual; and
  - (b) either or both of the following subparagraphs apply:
    - (i) the person has not met either or both of the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) and (3);
    - (ii) the person has not met the education and training standard in subsection 921B(4), and is not undertaking work and training in accordance with that subsection.

*Sub-authorisations*

- (3) An authorised representative of a financial services licensee must not, under subsection 916B(3), give an individual a written notice authorising that individual to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products if either or both of the following paragraphs apply:
- (a) the individual has not met either or both of the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) and (3);



- (b) the individual has not met the education and training standard in subsection 921B(4), and is not undertaking work and training in accordance with that subsection.

*Employees and directors*

- (4) A financial services licensee must not authorise an employee or director of the licensee, or of a related body corporate of the licensee, to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products if either or both of the following paragraphs apply:
  - (a) the employee or director has not met either or both of the education and training standards in subsections 921B(2) and (3);
  - (b) the employee or director has not met the education and training standard in subsection 921B(4), and is not undertaking work and training in accordance with that subsection.

*Exemption in relation to time-sharing schemes*

- (5) This section does not apply in relation to a person who is to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products if the only relevant financial product in relation to which the person is to provide personal advice to retail clients is a time-sharing scheme.

**921D Relevant providers to meet continuing professional development standard**

- (1) A relevant provider must comply with subsection 921B(5):
  - (a) if the relevant provider is a financial services licensee—during the licensee’s CPD year; or
  - (b) if the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of a financial services licensee, in relation to relevant financial products—during the licensee’s CPD year.

## Section 921E

---

- Note 1: Subsection 921B(5) requires a relevant provider to meet the continuing professional development standard.
- Note 2: Section 922HB requires a notice to be given at the end of a financial services licensee's CPD year if a relevant provider has not complied with this section during that year.

### *Exemptions*

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a person if:
- (a) the person is a provisional relevant provider; or
  - (b) the only relevant financial product in relation to which the person provides personal advice to retail clients is a time-sharing scheme.

## **Subdivision B—Ethical standards**

### **921E Relevant providers to comply with the Code of Ethics**

A relevant provider must comply with the Code of Ethics.

Note: A failure to comply with the Code of Ethics must be notified under section 922HD.

## **Subdivision C—Provisional relevant providers**

### **921F Requirements relating to provisional relevant providers**

- (1) This section sets out the requirements in relation to a person who is a provisional relevant provider.

### *Meaning of supervisor*

- (2) A **supervisor** of a provisional relevant provider is an individual who:
- (a) has supervisory responsibility for the provisional relevant provider; and
  - (b) is a relevant provider; and
  - (c) is not a provisional relevant provider; and
  - (d) is not a limited-service time-sharing adviser.

*Role of supervisors*

- (3) A supervisor of a provisional relevant provider must ensure that appropriate supervision is provided to the provisional relevant provider.
- (4) A supervisor of a provisional relevant provider must approve, in writing, any Statement of Advice provided by the provisional relevant provider to a retail client.

*Personal advice provided by provisional relevant providers*

- (5) For the purposes of this Act, personal advice provided (whether orally or in writing) by a provisional relevant provider at a particular time to a retail client in relation to a relevant financial product is taken to have been provided to the client by each person who is, at that time, a supervisor of the provisional relevant provider (instead of by the provisional relevant provider).

*Retail clients to be informed of certain matters*

- (6) A supervisor of a provisional relevant provider must ensure that a retail client is informed:
  - (a) of the name of each supervisor of the provisional relevant provider (even if the retail client has been informed of the name of each previous supervisor); and
  - (b) that the provisional relevant provider is undertaking work and training in accordance with subsection 921B(4); and
  - (c) that each supervisor is responsible for any personal advice provided by the provisional relevant provider to the client in relation to a relevant financial product.

*Provisional relevant providers not to obstruct or hinder supervision*

- (7) A provisional relevant provider must not obstruct or hinder a supervisor of the provisional relevant provider in ensuring that appropriate supervision is provided to the provisional relevant provider.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.6** Licensing of providers of financial services

**Division 8A** Professional standards for relevant providers

**Section 921F**

---

Note: Under section 921U, the standards body may provide further for the purposes of this section.

## **Division 8B—Compliance schemes**

### **Subdivision A—Compliance schemes to cover relevant providers**

#### **921G Meaning of *compliance scheme***

- (1) A *compliance scheme* is a scheme:
  - (a) that meets the requirements of this section; and
  - (b) under which compliance with the Code of Ethics by relevant providers covered by the scheme is monitored and enforced.

#### *Monitoring body of compliance scheme*

- (2) A monitoring body for a compliance scheme must monitor and enforce compliance with the Code of Ethics by any relevant provider covered by the scheme.
- (3) A monitoring body for a compliance scheme must not be:
  - (a) a financial services licensee; or
  - (b) an associate of a financial services licensee.
- (4) A compliance scheme must name the monitoring body for the scheme.

#### *Disputes and complaints*

- (5) A compliance scheme must set out how a dispute is to be resolved between the monitoring body for the scheme and a relevant provider covered by the scheme.
- (6) A compliance scheme must set out how a person may make a complaint to the monitoring body for the scheme in relation to a failure to comply with, or possible failure to comply with, the Code of Ethics by a relevant provider covered by the scheme.

Section 921H

---

*Name of compliance scheme*

- (7) A compliance scheme must have a name.

**921H Financial services licensees to ensure compliance scheme covers relevant providers**

- (1) A financial services licensee must ensure that a compliance scheme covers:
- (a) if the licensee is a relevant provider—the licensee; and
  - (b) in any case—any relevant provider authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products.

Note: For when a compliance scheme *covers* a relevant provider, see section 921J.

- (2) A compliance scheme must cover a relevant provider within 30 business days of the following:
- (a) the day the person becomes a relevant provider;
  - (b) if the relevant provider was previously covered by only one compliance scheme that has ceased to cover the relevant provider—the day that scheme ceased to cover the relevant provider.

**921J When a compliance scheme covers a relevant provider**

- (1) A compliance scheme *covers* a relevant provider if:
- (a) an approval is in force under section 921K in relation to the compliance scheme; and
  - (b) the condition in subsection (2) of this section is met for the relevant provider; and
  - (c) if the monitoring body for the compliance scheme is a professional association—the relevant provider is a member of the professional association.

*Notifying ASIC of the compliance scheme that covers a relevant provider*

- (2) The condition in this subsection is met for a relevant provider in relation to a compliance scheme if:
- (a) both of the following apply:
    - (i) the notice lodged under section 922D in relation to the relevant provider stated that the compliance scheme is to cover the relevant provider;
    - (ii) no notice has been lodged under section 922H stating that another compliance scheme is to cover the relevant provider; or
  - (b) the most recent notice lodged under section 922H, in relation to particulars entered on the Register of Relevant Providers about the compliance scheme that is to cover the relevant provider, stated that the compliance scheme is to cover the relevant provider.

Note: A notice must be lodged under section 922H when there is a change in a matter for a relevant provider.

## **Subdivision B—Approval of compliance schemes**

### **921K Approval of compliance schemes**

- (1) A monitoring body for a compliance scheme may apply to ASIC for approval of the compliance scheme.

Note: A monitoring body for a compliance scheme may propose to modify the scheme (see section 921R).

- (2) The application must set out details of the scheme, including:
- (a) the name of the monitoring body for the scheme; and
  - (b) arrangements for monitoring compliance with the Code of Ethics by relevant providers covered by the scheme; and
  - (c) sanctions for failures to comply with the Code of Ethics by relevant providers covered by the scheme; and
  - (d) arrangements for resolving disputes between the monitoring body and relevant providers covered by the scheme; and

Section 921K

---

- (e) arrangements for making complaints to the monitoring body in relation to failures to comply with, or possible failures to comply with, the Code of Ethics by relevant providers covered by the scheme.
- (3) The application must include evidence that the monitoring body has sufficient resources and expertise to appropriately monitor and enforce compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.

*Approval of compliance scheme*

- (4) ASIC may approve the scheme if it is satisfied that:
  - (a) compliance with the Code of Ethics will be appropriately monitored and enforced under the scheme; and
  - (b) the monitoring body has sufficient resources and expertise to appropriately monitor and enforce compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.
- (5) ASIC may approve the scheme subject to any one or more conditions ASIC considers appropriate.
- (6) ASIC must, within a reasonable period, decide the application and notify the monitoring body of:
  - (a) the decision; and
  - (b) any condition mentioned in subsection (5).

*Revocation of approval, imposition of additional conditions etc.*

- (7) ASIC may, in accordance with subsection (8), take an action specified under subsection (9) if ASIC is satisfied:
  - (a) that compliance with the Code of Ethics is not being appropriately monitored or enforced under the scheme; or
  - (b) that the monitoring body has not complied with:
    - (i) section 921N (obligation to notify licensee of failure to comply with Code of Ethics); or
    - (ii) a request under section 921Q (obligation to provide ASIC with information); or



- (iii) section 921T (obligation to notify ASIC of changes to monitoring body); or
  - (iv) section 922HD (obligation to notify ASIC in relation to failures to comply with the Code of Ethics); or
  - (c) that the monitoring body does not have sufficient resources or expertise to appropriately monitor or enforce compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.
- (8) ASIC must not take an action specified under subsection (9) unless:
- (a) ASIC gives a written notice to the monitoring body:
    - (i) providing reasons why ASIC is considering taking the action; and
    - (ii) stating that the monitoring body has 90 business days to make submissions to ASIC, in accordance with the notice, about the possible action; and
  - (b) ASIC has considered any submissions made by the monitoring body in accordance with the notice.
- (9) The following actions are specified:
- (a) revoking the approval of the scheme;
  - (b) varying a condition imposed in relation to the approval of the scheme;
  - (c) imposing an additional condition in relation to the approval of the scheme.
- Revocation of conditions etc.*
- (10) ASIC may revoke or vary a condition imposed in relation to the approval of the scheme if ASIC is satisfied that compliance with the Code of Ethics will continue to be appropriately monitored and enforced under the scheme if ASIC revokes or varies the condition.
- (11) ASIC must, within a reasonable period, notify the monitoring body if ASIC revokes or varies a condition under subsection (10).

Section 921L

---

**Subdivision C—Investigations by monitoring body**

**921L Investigations by monitoring body**

*Investigation into failure, or possible failure, to comply with Code of Ethics*

- (1) The monitoring body for a compliance scheme must determine, in writing, whether a relevant provider covered by the scheme has failed to comply with the Code of Ethics if the monitoring body becomes aware of the failure, or possible failure, by the relevant provider to comply with the Code of Ethics.

*Notifying relevant provider of investigation*

- (2) Within a reasonable period of becoming so aware, the monitoring body must notify the relevant provider that the monitoring body:
  - (a) has become so aware; and
  - (b) is to make a determination under subsection (1).

Note: A monitoring body that fails to comply with this subsection may commit an offence (see subsection 921M(1)).

*Request for information*

- (3) After becoming so aware, the monitoring body may request, in writing, any one or more of the following persons to provide information, documents or any other reasonable assistance to the monitoring body, within a reasonable specified period:
  - (a) if the relevant provider is a financial services licensee—the licensee;
  - (b) if the relevant provider is not a financial services licensee:
    - (i) the relevant provider; or
    - (ii) the financial services licensee on whose behalf the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products; or

Section 921L

---

- (iii) if the relevant provider is a relevant provider as a result of section 916B—the authorised representative who authorised the relevant provider under that section.

Note: A person who fails to comply with a request under this subsection may commit an offence (see subsection 921M(2)).

*Restriction on relevant provider leaving compliance scheme*

- (4) The relevant provider must not cause a notice to be lodged under section 922H stating that another compliance scheme is to cover the relevant provider before the monitoring body has made a determination under subsection (1).

Note: A relevant provider who fails to comply with this subsection may commit an offence (see subsection 921M(3)).

*Completion of investigation*

- (5) The monitoring body must make the determination:
- (a) if the relevant provider notifies the monitoring body that the relevant provider intends to cause a notice to be lodged under section 922H stating that another compliance scheme is to cover the relevant provider—within 160 days of receiving the notice; or
  - (b) otherwise—within a reasonable period of becoming aware of the failure, or possible failure, by the relevant provider to comply with the Code of Ethics.

Note: A monitoring body that fails to comply with this subsection may commit an offence (see subsection 921M(1)).

*Determination by monitoring body not a legislative instrument*

- (6) The determination is not a legislative instrument.

*Offence*

- (7) A person commits an offence if:
- (a) the person is a monitoring body for a compliance scheme; and

**Section 921M**

---

- (b) information is disclosed to the person in accordance with subsection 70-40(3AA) of the *Tax Agent Services Act 2009*; and
- (c) the person uses or discloses the information for a purpose other than monitoring or enforcing compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.

Penalty: 10 penalty units.

**921M Offences relating to investigations by monitoring body**

*Failure by monitoring body to notify relevant provider of investigation or complete investigation*

- (1) A person commits an offence if:
  - (a) the person is a monitoring body for a compliance scheme; and
  - (b) the person fails to comply with subsection 921L(2) or (5).

Penalty: 10 penalty units.

*Failure to comply with request for information*

- (2) A person commits an offence if:
  - (a) a request is made of the person under subsection 921L(3); and
  - (b) the person fails to comply with the request within the period specified.

Penalty: 10 penalty units.

*Leaving compliance scheme before investigation completed*

- (3) A person commits an offence if:
  - (a) the person is a relevant provider; and
  - (b) the person is covered by a compliance scheme; and
  - (c) the monitoring body for the scheme notifies the person that the monitoring body has become aware of a failure, or

possible failure, by the person to comply with the Code of Ethics; and

(d) the person contravenes subsection 921L(4).

Penalty: 10 penalty units.

**921N Obligation to notify licensee of failure to comply with Code of Ethics**

- (1) A monitoring body for a compliance scheme that covers a relevant provider must notify a financial services licensee if:
- (a) either:
    - (i) the monitoring body determines under subsection 921L(1) that the relevant provider has failed to comply with the Code of Ethics; or
    - (ii) the monitoring body imposes a sanction on the relevant provider in relation to a failure to comply with the Code of Ethics; and
  - (b) the relevant provider is authorised by the licensee to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products.
- (2) The monitoring body must notify the licensee within 30 days after making the determination or imposing the sanction.

Note 1: The approval for a compliance scheme may be revoked if the monitoring body for the scheme does not comply with this section (see subsection 921K(7)).

Note 2: ASIC must be notified if a monitoring body becomes aware of a failure, or possible failure, to comply with the Code of Ethics by a relevant provider, or if a sanction is imposed on a relevant provider under a compliance scheme (see section 922HD).

Section 921P

---

**Subdivision D—Other provisions**

**921P Obligation to ensure that compliance scheme is publicly available**

- (1) A monitoring body for a compliance scheme must ensure that the scheme is publicly available while any approval given under section 921K is in force in relation to the scheme.

*Offence*

- (2) A person commits an offence if:
- (a) the person is a monitoring body for a compliance scheme; and
  - (b) an approval given under section 921K is in force in relation to the scheme; and
  - (c) the scheme is not publicly available.

Penalty: 10 penalty units.

**921Q Obligation to provide ASIC with information**

- (1) ASIC may request, in writing, a monitoring body for a compliance scheme to give ASIC any specified information or documents about the compliance scheme within a reasonable specified period.
- (2) The monitoring body must comply with the request within the period specified.

Note: The approval for a compliance scheme may be revoked if the monitoring body for the scheme does not comply with this section (see subsection 921K(7)).

**921R Modification of compliance scheme**

- (1) While an approval given under section 921K is in force in relation to a compliance scheme, the monitoring body for the scheme may, by written notice given to ASIC, propose to modify the scheme.
- (2) The notice must:

- (a) set out the text of the proposed modification; and
- (b) contain an explanation of the purpose of the proposed modification.

*Disallowance of modification*

- (3) Within the 28-day period beginning on the day ASIC receives the notice, ASIC may, by written notice given to the monitoring body, disallow all or a specified part of the proposed modification if ASIC is satisfied on reasonable grounds that:
  - (a) compliance with the Code of Ethics will not be appropriately monitored or enforced under the scheme as modified; or
  - (b) if the proposed modification is a new monitoring body for the scheme—the new monitoring body does not have sufficient resources or expertise to appropriately monitor or enforce compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.

*Effect of disallowance*

- (4) If ASIC disallows the proposed modification within the 28-day period, the proposed modification does not take effect.
- (5) If ASIC disallows a specified part of the proposed modification within the 28-day period:
  - (a) the specified part does not take effect; and
  - (b) the proposed modification without the specified part takes effect at the end of the period.

*No disallowance*

- (6) Otherwise, the proposed modification takes effect at the end of the 28-day period.

**921S Obligation to review compliance scheme**

- (1) A monitoring body for a compliance scheme must cause another person to complete a review of the scheme before the end of:

**Section 921T**

---

- (a) the 5-year period beginning on the day ASIC approves the scheme under section 921K; and
  - (b) each subsequent 5-year period.
- (2) The other person mentioned in subsection (1) must not be:
- (a) an associate of the monitoring body; or
  - (b) a person covered by the scheme; or
  - (c) if a relevant provider covered by the scheme is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of a financial services licensee, in relation to relevant financial products—the licensee; or
  - (d) if a relevant provider covered by the scheme is a member of a professional association—the professional association.
- (3) As soon as reasonably practical after the review has been completed, the monitoring body must:
- (a) make the review publicly available; and
  - (b) give a copy of the review to ASIC.

**921T Obligation to notify ASIC of changes to monitoring body**

A monitoring body for a compliance scheme must notify ASIC if the monitoring body significantly reduces the resources or expertise that it uses to monitor or enforce compliance with the Code of Ethics under the scheme.

Note: The approval for a compliance scheme may be revoked if the monitoring body for the scheme does not comply with this section (see subsection 921K(7)).



## **Division 8C—The standards body**

### **Subdivision A—Functions of the standards body**

#### **921U Functions of the standards body**

- (1) The functions of the standards body are:
  - (a) to make the legislative instruments mentioned in subsections (2), (3) and (5); and
  - (b) to review those instruments regularly; and
  - (c) if an application is made under subsection 921V(1) for approval of a foreign qualification—to approve, or refuse to approve, the foreign qualification; and
  - (d) if an exam approved for the purposes of subsection 921B(3) is to be administered by the standards body—to administer the exam; and
  - (e) any other function prescribed by this Act.

#### *Legislative instruments*

- (2) The standards body must, by legislative instrument:
  - (a) do any or all of the following in one or more determinations:
    - (i) approve bachelor or higher degrees, or equivalent qualifications, for the purposes of paragraph 921B(2)(a);
    - (ii) approve an exam for the purposes of subsection 921B(3);
    - (iii) set requirements for work and training for the purposes of subsection 921B(4);
    - (iv) set requirements for continuing professional development for the purposes of subsection 921B(5) in relation to the CPD year of a financial services licensee, the period mentioned in subsection 1546E(5), or any other period determined by the standards body;

Section 921U

---

- (v) specify a word or expression to refer to a provisional relevant provider; and
  - (b) make a Code of Ethics for the purposes of section 921E.
- (3) The standards body may, by legislative instrument, in one or more determinations, modify the operation of a provision in this Part in relation to a period determined by the standards body under subparagraph (2)(a)(iv).
- (4) A determination made under subsection (3) has effect according to its terms, despite any other provision of this Act.
- (5) The standards body may, by legislative instrument, do either or both of the following in one or more determinations:
- (a) provide further in relation to the requirements set out in section 921F (requirements relating to provisional relevant providers);
  - (b) set other requirements in relation to a person who is a provisional relevant provider.

*Consultation*

- (6) Before making a legislative instrument under subsection (2), (3) or (5), or when reviewing a legislative instrument under paragraph (1)(b), the standards body must consult:
- (a) financial services licensees; and
  - (b) relevant providers; and
  - (c) associations representing consumers of financial services; and
  - (d) professional associations; and
  - (e) ASIC and the Department; and
  - (f) any other person or body that the standards body considers it appropriate to consult.
- (7) Without limiting subsection (6), the standards body is taken to have consulted the persons and bodies mentioned in that subsection if, on its website, the standards body:

- (a) before making a legislative instrument under subsection (2), (3) or (5):
    - (i) makes the proposed legislative instrument, or a description of the content of the proposed legislative instrument, available; and
    - (ii) invites those persons and bodies to comment on the proposed legislative instrument; or
  - (b) when reviewing a legislative instrument under paragraph (1)(b)—invites those persons and bodies to comment on the legislative instrument.
- (8) A failure to comply with subsection (6) does not affect the validity or enforceability of a legislative instrument made under subsection (2), (3) or (5).

*Fees*

- (9) The standards body may charge fees for things done in performing its functions.

Note: For the treatment of legislative instruments made under this section when the declaration of a body corporate to be the standards body is revoked, see section 921Y.

## **921V Approval of foreign qualifications**

*Application for approval*

- (1) A person who has completed a foreign qualification may apply to the standards body for approval of the foreign qualification.
- (2) An application under subsection (1) must be in a form approved, in writing, by the standards body.

*Approval or refusal to approve*

- (3) The standards body must either:
  - (a) approve the foreign qualification in accordance with subsection (4); or
  - (b) refuse to approve the foreign qualification.

**Section 921V**

---

- (4) The standards body may approve the foreign qualification only if:
- (a) the standards body is satisfied that the foreign qualification gives the person qualifications equivalent to a degree or qualification approved by the standards body for the purposes of paragraph 921B(2)(a); or
  - (b) both of the following apply:
    - (i) the standards body specifies one or more courses to be completed by the person under subsection (5) of this section;
    - (ii) the person completes each of those courses.
- (5) The standards body may specify one or more courses for the purposes of paragraph (4)(b) only if the standards body is satisfied that (together with the person's foreign qualification) the course or courses will give the person qualifications equivalent to a degree or qualification approved by the standards body for the purposes of paragraph 921B(2)(a).

*When approval takes effect*

- (6) An approval under paragraph (3)(a) comes into force:
- (a) if the standards body specifies one or more courses to be completed by the person under subsection (5)—when the person has completed all of those courses; or
  - (b) otherwise—when it is given.

*Review of decision*

- (7) A person may apply to the Tribunal for review of:
- (a) a decision by the standards body under paragraph (3)(b) to refuse to approve the person's foreign qualification; or
  - (b) a decision by the standards body under subsection (5) to specify one or more courses to be completed by the person.

*Notice of reviewable decision and review rights*

- (8) Section 1317D applies in relation to a decision mentioned in paragraph (7)(a) or (b) of this section as if:

- (a) the standards body were a decision maker for the purposes of section 1317D; and
- (b) the decision were a decision to which section 1317B applied.

**921W Commencement of Code of Ethics and amendments of Code of Ethics**

- (1) The Code of Ethics must not commence earlier than 30 days after the Code is registered under the *Legislation Act 2003*.
- (2) An amendment of the Code of Ethics must not commence earlier than 30 days after the amendment is registered under the *Legislation Act 2003*.

**Subdivision B—Declaration of the standards body**

**921X Minister to declare a body corporate to be the standards body**

- (1) The Minister may (subject to subsection (2)), by notifiable instrument, declare a body corporate to be the standards body.
- (2) The Minister may make a declaration under subsection (1) only if the following requirements are met:
  - (a) the body is a company limited by guarantee;
  - (b) the Minister is satisfied that the body is likely to comply with its obligations under this Act and other laws of the Commonwealth;
  - (c) the body's constitution provides the following:
    - (i) the functions of the body mentioned in section 921U;
    - (ii) the body must not be operated for profit;
    - (iii) the body must have 9 directors;
    - (iv) at least 3 directors (excluding the chair of the board of directors) must have experience in carrying on a financial services business or providing a financial service;

**Section 921Y**

---

- (v) at least 3 directors (excluding the chair of the board of directors) must have experience in representing consumers of financial services;
  - (vi) at least one director (excluding the chair of the board of directors) must have experience in the field of ethics;
  - (vii) at least one director (excluding the chair of the board of directors) must have experience in designing, or the requirements of, educational courses or qualifications;
  - (viii) a director must not hold a managerial or executive office in a professional association or association representing consumers of financial services;
  - (ix) a director must not represent any professional association, or association representing consumers of financial services, to which the director belongs;
  - (x) the Minister must appoint each director;
  - (xi) a director may resign his or her appointment by giving the Minister, and the body, a written resignation;
  - (xii) the resignation takes effect on the day it has been received by both the Minister and the body or, if a later day is specified in the resignation, on that later day.
- (3) The declaration must specify the time at which it takes effect.
- (4) The Minister must table the declaration in each House of the Parliament as soon as practicable.

**921Y Minister may revoke declaration under section 921X**

- (1) The Minister may, at any time, by notifiable instrument, revoke a declaration under section 921X.
- (2) The revocation must specify:
- (a) the time at which it takes effect; and
  - (b) which legislative instruments made by the standards body under subsection 921U(2), (3) or (5) continue in force, and which are taken to be revoked at that time; and

Section 921Y

---

- (c) which approvals (if any) given by the standards body under paragraph 921V(3)(a) continue in force (or are to come into and continue in force), and which are taken to be revoked at that time.
- (3) A revocation under subsection (1) that specifies that a legislative instrument, or an approval, is taken to be revoked at a particular time has effect according to its terms.

*Tabling of revocation*

- (4) The Minister must table the revocation in each House of the Parliament as soon as practicable.

*Performance by Minister of certain functions of standards body when no declaration is in force*

- (5) If no declaration under section 921X is in force at a particular time, the Minister may make a legislative instrument or decision as if the Minister were performing the functions of the standards body under paragraph 921U(1)(a) or (c).

*Instruments and decisions made by Minister etc.*

- (6) If a declaration under section 921X comes into force after the Minister has made a legislative instrument or decision for the purposes of subsection (5) of this section, the standards body may vary or revoke the legislative instrument or decision.

*Relationship with Acts Interpretation Act 1901*

- (7) This section does not limit the operation of subsection 33(3) of the *Acts Interpretation Act 1901*.

Section 921Z

---

**Subdivision C—Other provisions relating to the standards body**

**921Z Modification of the standards body’s constitution**

- (1) As soon as practicable after a significant modification of the standards body’s constitution takes effect, the standards body must notify the Minister in writing of the modification.
- (2) The notice must:
  - (a) set out the text of the modification; and
  - (b) specify the date on which the modification takes effect; and
  - (c) contain an explanation of the purpose of the modification.
- (3) If no notice is lodged with the Minister within 21 days after the modification takes effect, the modification ceases to have effect.
- (4) A notice made under this section is not a legislative instrument.

**921ZA Disallowance of modifications of the standards body’s constitution**

- (1) Within 28 days after receiving a notice under section 921Z, the Minister may disallow all or a specified part of the modification of the standards body’s constitution.
- (2) As soon as practicable after all or part of a modification is disallowed, the Minister must give notice of the disallowance to the standards body. The modification ceases to have effect, to the extent of the disallowance, when the standards body receives the notice.

**921ZB Minister may direct the standards body to do certain things**

- (1) The Minister may give a written direction to the standards body if the Minister considers that the standards body is not complying with its obligations under this Act or under any arrangement it has with the Commonwealth.
- (2) The standards body must comply with the direction.



- (3) The Minister may, at any time, vary or revoke a direction.
- (4) Despite paragraph (b) in the definition of *director* in section 9, the Minister is not a director of the standards body.

### **921ZC Annual report**

As soon as practicable after the end of a financial year, the standards body must:

- (a) publish on its website the annual report for the financial year prepared under Chapter 2M; and
- (b) give a copy of the report to the Minister.

## **Division 9—Registers relating to financial services**

### **Subdivision A—Registers generally**

#### **922A Registers relating to financial services**

- (1) ASIC must establish and maintain one or more registers relating to financial services.
- (2) The regulations may prescribe the way in which the register or registers must be established or maintained, including the details that ASIC must enter in the register or registers in respect of the following persons or bodies:
  - (a) financial services licensees;
  - (b) authorised representatives of financial services licensees;
  - (c) persons against whom a banning order or disqualification order under Division 8 is made;
  - (e) any other persons or bodies that are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: The Register of Relevant Providers is maintained under Subdivision C of this Division.

#### **922B Fees for searching registers**

The regulations may prescribe the fees that a person must pay to ASIC to do the things mentioned in section 1274A in relation to a register mentioned in section 922A or the Register of Relevant Providers.

Note: Section 1274A provides that ASIC may permit a person to search certain registers kept by ASIC for prescribed information.

## **Subdivision B—Notice requirements relating to the Register of Relevant Providers**

### **922D Obligation to notify ASIC about a person who becomes a relevant provider**

*Notice to include details about relevant provider*

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this section, in accordance with section 922L, if a person becomes a relevant provider.

Note: A financial services licensee required to lodge a notice under this section may obtain information from a relevant provider under section 922N.

*Content of notice*

- (2) The notice must include:
- (a) for a relevant provider who is a financial services licensee—the information in section 922E; or
  - (b) for a relevant provider who is not a financial services licensee—the information in section 922F.

### **922E Information about a relevant provider who is a financial services licensee**

- (1) For the purposes of paragraph 922D(2)(a), the notice must include the following:
- (a) the relevant provider's name;
  - (b) the address of the relevant provider's principal place of business;
  - (c) the licence number given to the relevant provider under subsection 913C(1);
  - (d) the year in which the relevant provider first provided personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products in accordance with the law (including the law of a State or Territory);
  - (e) if applicable, the ABN of the relevant provider;

**Section 922F**

---

- (f) information about both of the following:
  - (i) the relevant financial products in relation to which the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients;
  - (ii) whether the relevant provider is authorised to provide class of product advice in relation to some or all of those products;
- (g) the recent advising history of the relevant provider for the 5 years ending immediately before the time the notice is lodged;
- (h) information about both of the following:
  - (i) the educational qualifications of, and any training courses completed by, the relevant provider, to the extent that the qualifications and training courses are relevant to the provision of financial services;
  - (ii) the relevant provider's membership (if any) of a professional association if an approval is in force under section 921K in relation to a compliance scheme monitored and enforced by the association;
- (i) the name of the compliance scheme that is to cover the relevant provider.

Note: For the meaning of *recent advising history*, see section 922G.

*Educational qualifications and memberships*

- (2) For the purposes of subparagraph (1)(h)(i), if a relevant provider has more than 5 educational qualifications or has completed more than 5 training courses, the notice must include the 5 qualifications or training courses that the person lodging the notice believes, on reasonable grounds, are most relevant to the provision of financial services.

**922F Information about a relevant provider who is not a financial services licensee**

- (1) For the purposes of paragraph 922D(2)(b), the notice must include the following:

- (a) the relevant provider's name;
- (b) the address of the relevant provider's principal place of business;
- (c) the relevant provider's date and place of birth;
- (d) the name of the financial services licensee on whose behalf the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products;
- (e) the licence number given to that licensee under subsection 913C(1);
- (f) if the relevant provider is a provisional relevant provider—the fact that the relevant provider is a provisional relevant provider;
- (g) if the relevant provider is a provisional relevant provider—the day the relevant provider began undertaking work and training in accordance with subsection 921B(4);
- (h) except in relation to provisional relevant providers—the year in which the relevant provider first provided personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products in accordance with the law (including the law of a State or Territory);
- (i) if the relevant provider is a relevant provider as a result of section 916B—each of the following:
  - (i) the name of the authorised representative who authorised the relevant provider under that section;
  - (ii) the number allocated to the authorised representative by ASIC;
- (j) if applicable, the ABN of any of the following:
  - (i) the relevant provider;
  - (ii) the licensee referred to in paragraph (d);
  - (iii) the authorised representative referred to in paragraph (i);
- (k) details of both of the following:
  - (i) the relevant financial products in relation to which the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients;

Section 922F

---

- (ii) whether the relevant provider is authorised to provide class of product advice in relation to some or all of those products;
- (l) the recent advising history of the relevant provider for the 5 years ending immediately before the time the notice is lodged;
- (m) information about both of the following:
  - (i) the educational qualifications of, and any training courses completed by, the relevant provider, to the extent that the qualifications and training courses are relevant to the provision of financial services;
  - (ii) the relevant provider's membership (if any) of a professional association if an approval is in force under section 921K in relation to a compliance scheme monitored and enforced by the association;
- (n) the name of the compliance scheme that is to cover the relevant provider.

Note: For the meaning of *recent advising history*, see section 922G.

*Educational qualifications and memberships*

- (2) For the purposes of subparagraph (1)(m)(i), if a relevant provider has more than 5 educational qualifications or has completed more than 5 training courses, the notice must include the 5 qualifications or training courses that the person lodging the notice believes, on reasonable grounds, are most relevant to the provision of financial services.

*Information already registered*

- (3) The notice does not need to include the information referred to in paragraph (1)(h), (l) or (m) if:
  - (a) the person required under subsection 922L(4) to cause the notice to be lodged believes on reasonable grounds that the information has previously been lodged; or
  - (b) the information is already entered on the Register of Relevant Providers.

*Provisional relevant providers*

- (4) The notice does not need to include the information referred to in paragraph (1)(k) in relation to a provisional relevant provider if that information is not known at the time the notice relating to the provisional relevant provider is lodged by the licensee.

Note: A notice must be lodged under section 922H once this information is known.

**922G Meaning of *recent advising history***

The *recent advising history* of a relevant provider is the following information:

- (a) for a relevant provider who is or was a financial services licensee authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products—each period during which the relevant provider was such a licensee;
- (b) for a relevant provider who is or was authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of one or more financial services licensees, in relation to relevant financial products—the following information:
  - (i) the name of each licensee;
  - (ii) if the relevant provider is or was a relevant provider as a result of section 916B—the name of each authorised representative who authorised the relevant provider under that section;
  - (iii) each period during which the relevant provider was authorised by each licensee or each authorised representative to provide such advice.

Note: If a relevant provider is covered by paragraphs (a) and (b) of this section, the relevant provider's recent advising history includes all the information required under those paragraphs.

**922H Ongoing obligation to notify ASIC when there is a change in a matter for a relevant provider**

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this section, in accordance with section 922L, if:

**Section 922HA**

---

- (a) there is a change in a matter, particulars of which are entered for a relevant provider in the Register of Relevant Providers (other than a change that is a direct consequence of an act by ASIC); or
- (b) both of the following apply:
  - (i) a notice is lodged under section 922D in relation to a relevant provider by a financial services licensee without including the information referred to in paragraph 922F(1)(k);
  - (ii) the information becomes known to the licensee after the notice is lodged.

**Note:** For paragraph (1)(a) of this section, an example of a change in a matter would be a person ceasing to be a relevant provider. Another example would be a change in the compliance scheme that covers a relevant provider.

- (2) The notice must include the following information:
  - (a) the new particulars or information to be entered in the Register;
  - (b) the relevant provider's name;
  - (c) if applicable, the number given to the relevant provider under section 922R.

**922HA Obligation to notify ASIC of financial services licensee's CPD year**

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this subsection, in accordance with section 922L, if ASIC grants an applicant an Australian financial services licence that covers the provision of personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products.
- (2) A notice lodged under subsection (1) must include the day on which the licensee's CPD year is to begin.
- (3) A notice must be lodged under this subsection, in accordance with section 922L, if a financial services licensee:
  - (a) has previously lodged a notice under subsection (1) or this subsection specifying a particular day of the year; and



- (b) decides that the licensee's CPD year is to begin on another day of the year; and
  - (c) has not lodged a notice under subsection (1) or this subsection in the 12-month period preceding that decision.
- (4) A notice lodged under subsection (3) must include the day on which the licensee's CPD year is to begin.

**922HB Obligation to notify ASIC of non-compliance with continuing professional development standard**

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this section, in accordance with section 922L, in relation to a person if, at the end of a financial services licensee's CPD year:
- (a) the person:
    - (i) is the licensee; or
    - (ii) is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products; and
  - (b) the person is a relevant provider; and
  - (c) the relevant provider has not complied with section 921D during the licensee's CPD year.

Note 1: A financial services licensee may obtain information from a relevant provider under section 922N for the purposes of determining whether to lodge a notice under this section.

Note 2: Subsection 921D(1) requires certain relevant providers to meet the continuing professional development standard in subsection 921B(5).

- (2) The notice must state that the relevant provider has not complied with section 921D during the licensee's CPD year.

**922HC Requirement to retain information**

- (1) A financial services licensee must retain evidence of the continuing professional development undertaken during the licensee's CPD year by:
- (a) if the licensee is a relevant provider—the licensee; and

**Section 922HD**

---

- (b) if a relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products—the relevant provider.
- (2) The evidence must be retained for 12 months after the end of the CPD year.

*Offence*

- (3) A person commits an offence if:
  - (a) the person is required to retain evidence under this section; and
  - (b) the person fails to retain the evidence in accordance with this section.

Penalty: 50 penalty units.

**922HD Obligation to notify ASIC in relation to failures to comply with the Code of Ethics**

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this subsection, in accordance with section 922L, if:
  - (a) a monitoring body for a compliance scheme determines under subsection 921L(1) that a relevant provider covered by the scheme has failed to comply with the Code of Ethics; or
  - (b) a sanction is imposed on a relevant provider covered by a compliance scheme in relation to a failure to comply with the Code of Ethics by the relevant provider.
- (2) The notice must include the following information:
  - (a) if the relevant provider is a financial services licensee—the name of the licensee;
  - (b) if the relevant provider is not a financial services licensee:
    - (i) the name of the relevant provider; and
    - (ii) the name of the financial services licensee on whose behalf the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products;

- (c) if paragraph (1)(a) applies—details of the failure to comply;
  - (d) if paragraph (1)(b) applies—details of the sanction imposed.
- (3) If, in relation to the same failure to comply, the events mentioned in paragraphs (1)(a) and (b) occur within 30 business days of one another:
- (a) a single notice may be lodged under subsection (1) within 30 business days of the later of those events; and
  - (b) only one notice is taken to be required to be caused to be lodged for the purposes of subsection 922M(1).

**922J Obligation to notify ASIC about a person who starts to have control of a body corporate licensee**

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this section, in accordance with section 922L, if a person starts to have control of a body corporate licensee.

Note: Subsection 922P(3) provides that a notice is not required to be lodged when a person starts and then ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee within 30 business days.

- (2) The notice must include the following information:
- (a) the name of the licensee;
  - (b) the licence number given to the licensee under subsection 913C(1);
  - (c) the name of the person who starts to have control of the licensee;
  - (d) the day the person starts to have control of the licensee.

**922K Obligation to notify ASIC about a person who ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee**

- (1) A notice must be lodged under this section, in accordance with section 922L, if a person ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee.

Note: Subsection 922P(3) provides that a notice is not required to be lodged when a person starts and then ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee within 30 business days.

**Section 922L**

---

- (2) The notice must include the following information:
- (a) the name of the licensee;
  - (b) the licence number given to the licensee under subsection 913C(1);
  - (c) the name of the person who ceases to have control of the licensee;
  - (d) the day the person ceases to have control of the licensee.

**922L Requirement for notice to be lodged**

*Notice in prescribed form*

- (1) A notice under a notice provision must be in the prescribed form.

Note 1: Under section 350, a document that this Act requires to be lodged with ASIC in a prescribed form must:

- (a) if a form for the document is prescribed in the regulations—be in that prescribed form; and
- (b) if a form for the document is not prescribed in the regulations but ASIC has approved a form for the document—be in that approved form.

Note 2: The prescribed form may deal with information that is required under more than one section of this Act.

*When notice must be lodged*

- (2) A notice under a notice provision must be lodged within 30 business days of the following day:
- (a) if the notice is lodged under subsection 922HA(1)—the day ASIC grants the Australian financial services licence mentioned in that subsection;
  - (b) if the notice is lodged under subsection 922HA(3)—the day the financial services licensee mentioned in that subsection decides that the licensee's CPD year is to begin on another day of the year;
  - (c) if the notice is lodged under subsection 922HB(1)—the last day of the CPD year of the financial services licensee mentioned in that subsection;

- (d) if the notice is lodged under subsection 922HD(1)—(subject to subsection 922HD(3)) the day the monitoring body mentioned in subsection 922HD(1) determines under subsection 921L(1) that a relevant provider has failed to comply with the Code of Ethics or a sanction is imposed;
  - (e) if the notice is lodged under any other notice provision—the day of the event mentioned in subsection (1) of the notice provision.
- (3) The information contained in the notice must be accurate as at the day mentioned in paragraph (2)(a), (b), (c), (d) or (e).

*Who must cause notice to be lodged*

- (4) The following person must cause a notice under section 922D, 922H or 922HB to be lodged in relation to a relevant provider:
- (a) if the relevant provider is a financial services licensee—the licensee;
  - (b) otherwise—the financial services licensee on whose behalf the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products.
- (5) A notice under subsection 922HA(1) or (3) must be lodged by the financial services licensee mentioned in that section.
- (6) A notice under section 922HD must be lodged by the monitoring body mentioned in subsection 922HD(1).
- (7) A notice under section 922J or 922K relating to a person who starts or ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee must be lodged by the licensee.

**922M Offence for failing to comply with obligation to notify ASIC**

- (1) A person commits an offence if:
- (a) the person is required to cause a notice to be lodged under a notice provision; and
  - (b) the person fails to cause the notice to be lodged in accordance with that provision.

**Section 922N**

---

Note: A notice must be lodged in accordance with section 922L in order to be lodged in accordance with a notice provision (see subsection (1) of the notice provision).

Penalty: 50 penalty units.

- (2) However, subsection (1) does not apply if:
- (a) the person fails to cause the notice to be lodged in accordance with section 922D; and
  - (b) the only reason the person fails to cause the notice to be lodged in accordance with that section is because the information referred to in paragraph 922F(1)(h), (l) or (m) is not included in the notice; and
  - (c) subsection 922F(3) provides that the notice does not need to include that information.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matter in subsection (2) (see subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*).

- (3) Subsection 4K(2) of the *Crimes Act 1914* does not apply to subsection (1) of this section.

Note: A person may commit an offence if the person knowingly gives false or misleading information (see section 1308 of this Act and section 137.1 of the *Criminal Code*).

**922N Obligation for relevant providers to provide information to financial services licensees**

*Information about relevant provider*

- (1) A person must provide information to a financial services licensee in accordance with this section if:
- (a) the person is a relevant provider; and
  - (b) the person has been authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products; and
  - (c) the licensee has asked the person to provide the information so that the licensee can:

Section 922P

---

- (i) comply with its obligation to lodge a notice relating to the person in accordance with section 922D; or
- (ii) comply with its obligation to lodge, under section 922H, a notice relating to the person for the purposes of section 921H; or
- (iii) determine whether the licensee has an obligation to lodge a notice under section 922HB.

Note: A person may commit an offence if the person knowingly gives false or misleading information (see section 1308 of this Act and section 137.1 of the *Criminal Code*).

*When information must be given*

- (2) The information must be given to the licensee within a period that allows the licensee to comply with the obligation referred to in paragraph (1)(c).

**922P Change in matter within 30 business days**

- (1) Notices must be given under sections 922D, 922H and 922HD in relation to a person who was a relevant provider even if the person ceases to be a relevant provider before a notice has been lodged under section 922D.
- (2) A notice is not required to be given under section 922HB in relation to a person if:
  - (a) the person was a relevant provider at the end of a financial services licensee's CPD year; and
  - (b) the person was authorised at that time to provide personal advice to retail clients, on behalf of the licensee, in relation to relevant financial products; and
  - (c) the person ceases to be a relevant provider within 30 business days of becoming a relevant provider.
- (3) A notice is not required to be given under sections 922J and 922K in relation to a person who starts or ceases to have control of a body corporate licensee if the person ceases to have control of the

Section 922Q

---

licensee within 30 business days of starting to have control of the licensee.

**Subdivision C—Register of Relevant Providers**

**922Q Register of Relevant Providers**

*Register to include details of relevant providers*

- (1) ASIC must enter details on a Register of Relevant Providers in respect of each person who is or was a relevant provider.

*Contents of Register*

- (2) The details that must be entered on the Register include the following:
- (a) the relevant provider's name;
  - (b) the relevant provider's principal place of business;
  - (c) the name of each financial services licensee on whose behalf the relevant provider is or was authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products;
  - (d) if applicable, each person who has control of the licensee;
  - (e) the relevant provider's date and place of birth;
  - (f) the licence number given under subsection 913C(1) to the relevant provider and each licensee referred to in paragraph (c);
  - (g) if applicable, the number given under section 922R;
  - (h) if the relevant provider is a relevant provider as a result of section 916B:
    - (i) the name of the authorised representative who authorised the relevant provider under that section; and
    - (ii) the number allocated to the authorised representative by ASIC;
  - (i) the recent advising history of the relevant provider;
  - (j) if the relevant provider is a provisional relevant provider:



- (i) the fact that the relevant provider is a provisional relevant provider; and
- (ii) the day the relevant provider began undertaking work and training in accordance with subsection 921B(4); and
- (iii) a statement that the relevant provider is required to be supervised in accordance with Subdivision C of Division 8A;
- (k) except in relation to provisional relevant providers—the year in which the relevant provider first provided personal advice to retail clients in relation to relevant financial products in accordance with the law (including the law of a State or Territory);
- (l) whether the person is currently, or has ceased to be, a relevant provider;
- (m) if a financial services licensee has lodged a notice under section 922HB in relation to the relevant provider—that the relevant provider did not comply with section 921D during the licensee’s CPD year;
- (n) if the relevant provider has been disqualified from managing corporations—information contained on the register established under section 1274AA;
- (o) if the relevant provider has been banned or disqualified under section 80 or 86 of the *National Consumer Credit Protection Act 2009*—information about that banning or disqualification;
- (p) if the relevant provider has been banned, disqualified or suspended under Division 8 of Part 7.6, or under section 130F of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*—information about that banning, disqualification or suspension;
- (q) if the relevant provider has given an undertaking under either or both section 93AA of the ASIC Act and section 322 of the *National Consumer Credit Protection Act 2009*—information about that undertaking;
- (r) if a monitoring body for a compliance scheme determines under subsection 921L(1) that the relevant provider who is

Section 922Q

---

covered by the scheme has failed to comply with the Code of Ethics:

- (i) details of the failure to comply; and
  - (ii) details of any sanction imposed on the relevant provider in relation to the failure to comply;
- (s) if applicable, information about both of the following:
- (i) the relevant financial products in relation to which the relevant provider is authorised to provide personal advice to retail clients;
  - (ii) whether the relevant provider is authorised to provide class of product advice in relation to some or all of those products;
- (t) if applicable, the ABN of any of the following:
- (i) the relevant provider;
  - (ii) each licensee referred to in paragraph (c);
  - (iii) if applicable, the authorised representative referred to in paragraph (h);
- (u) information about both of the following:
- (i) the educational qualifications of, and any training courses completed by, the relevant provider (but not courses completed for the purposes of subsection 921B(5)), to the extent that the qualifications and training courses are relevant to the provision of financial services;
  - (ii) the relevant provider's membership (if any) of a professional association if an approval is in force under section 921K in relation to a compliance scheme monitored and enforced by the association;
- (v) the name of the compliance scheme that is to cover the relevant provider;
- (w) any other information that ASIC believes should be included in the Register that relates to the provision of financial services by the relevant provider.

Note 1: Not all of the Register's contents are publicly available. However, section 1274A provides that ASIC may permit a person to search certain registers kept by ASIC for prescribed information.

Note 2: Information in paragraph (2)(s) may not be known in relation to a provisional relevant provider (see subsection 922F(4)).

### **922R Relevant provider number**

ASIC may give a unique number (or any unique combination of numbers, characters, symbols and letters) to a person who is a relevant provider.

### **922S Correcting the Register**

ASIC may correct any error in, or omission from, the Register of Relevant Providers.

Note: Australian Privacy Principle 13 applies to ASIC and requires it to take reasonable steps to correct personal information that is wrong or misleading so that the information is accurate, up to date, complete, relevant and not misleading (see Schedule 1 to the *Privacy Act 1988*).

## Division 10—Restrictions on use of terminology

### 923A Restriction on use of certain words or expressions

- (1) A person contravenes this subsection if:
- (a) either:
    - (i) the person carries on a financial services business or provides a financial service (whether or not on behalf of another person); or
    - (ii) another person (the *provider*) provides a financial service on behalf of the first person; and
  - (b) the first person assumes or uses, in this jurisdiction, a restricted word or expression in relation to that business or service.

Note 1: For the meanings of *restricted word or expression* and *assume or use*, see subsection (5).

Note 2: A contravention of this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) However, it is not a contravention of subsection (1) for a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression if:
- (a) the person does not receive any of the following:
    - (i) commissions (apart from commissions that are rebated in full to the person's clients);
    - (ii) forms of remuneration calculated on the basis of the volume of business placed by the person with an issuer of a financial product;
    - (iii) other gifts or benefits from an issuer of a financial product which may reasonably be expected to influence the person; and
  - (b) none of the following persons receives any of the things covered by paragraph (a):
    - (i) the person's employer (if any);

- (ii) if the person provides the financial service on behalf of another person (as mentioned in subparagraph (1)(a)(i))—that other person;
  - (iii) any other person identified (whether by reference to a class of person or otherwise) in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph; and
- (c) if subparagraph (1)(a)(ii) applies in relation to a financial service—the provider mentioned in that subparagraph does not receive any of the things mentioned in paragraph (a) of this subsection in respect of the provision of that service; and
- (d) in carrying on a financial services business, or providing financial services, the person operates free from direct or indirect restrictions relating to the financial products in respect of which they provide financial services; and
- (e) in carrying on that business, or providing those services, the person operates without any conflicts of interest that might:
- (i) arise from their associations or relationships with issuers of financial products; and
  - (ii) reasonably be expected to influence the person in carrying on the business or providing the services.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (2). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) The reference in paragraph (2)(d) to direct or indirect restrictions does not include a reference to restrictions imposed on a person by:
- (a) the conditions on an Australian financial services licence; or
  - (b) this Chapter or regulations made for the purposes of this Chapter.
- (4) If a person assumes or uses a word or expression in circumstances that give rise to the person committing an offence based on subsection (1) of this section, the person is guilty of such an offence in respect of:
- (a) the first day on which the offence is committed; and
  - (b) each subsequent day (if any) on which the circumstances that gave rise to the person committing the offence continue

Section 923B

---

(including the day of conviction for any such offence or any later day).

- (5) In this section:
- (a) a reference to a restricted word or expression is a reference to:
    - (i) the word *independent*, *impartial* or *unbiased*; or
    - (ii) any other word or expression specified in the regulations as a restricted word or expression for the purposes of this section; or
    - (iii) any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to a word or expression covered by any of the previous subparagraphs; and
  - (b) a reference to a word or expression being assumed or used includes a reference to the word or expression being assumed or used:
    - (i) as part of another word or expression; or
    - (ii) in combination with other words, letters or other symbols.

**923B Restriction on use of certain words or expressions unless authorised in licence conditions**

- (1) A person contravenes this subsection if:
- (a) the person carries on a financial services business or provides a financial service (whether or not on behalf of another person); and
  - (b) the person assumes or uses, in this jurisdiction, a restricted word or expression in relation to that business or service; and
  - (c) the person is not authorised, by the conditions on an Australian financial services licence held by the person, or by a person in relation to whom they are a representative, to assume or use that word or expression (see subsection (3)).

Note 1: For the meanings of *restricted word or expression* and *assume or use*, see subsection (4).

Note 2: A contravention of this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) If a person assumes or uses a word or expression in circumstances that give rise to the person committing an offence based on subsection (1), the person is guilty of such an offence in respect of:
- (a) the first day on which the offence is committed; and
  - (b) each subsequent day (if any) on which the circumstances that gave rise to the person committing the offence continue (including the day of conviction for any such offence or any later day).
- (3) ASIC can only impose a condition on an Australian financial services licence authorising a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression in these circumstances:
- (a) in the case of a word or expression covered by subparagraph (4)(a)(i)—if the person:
    - (i) can, under the licence, provide a financial service relating to securities (whether or not the person can provide other financial services under the licence as well); and
    - (ii) is a participant in a licensed market whose licence covers dealings in securities;
  - (b) in the case of a word or expression covered by subparagraph (4)(a)(ii)—if the person:
    - (i) can, under the licence, provide a financial service relating to derivatives (whether or not the person can provide other financial services under the licence as well); and
    - (ii) is a participant in a licensed market whose licence covers dealings in derivatives;
  - (c) in the case of a word or expression covered by subparagraph (4)(a)(iii)—if the person:
    - (i) can, under the licence, provide a financial service relating to contracts of insurance (whether or not the person can provide other financial services under the licence as well); and
    - (ii) in providing that service, acts on behalf of intending insureds;

Section 923B

---

- (d) in the case of a word or expression covered by subparagraph (4)(a)(iv)—if the person:
    - (i) can, under the licence, provide a financial service relating to contracts of general insurance (whether or not the person can provide other financial services under the licence as well); and
    - (ii) in providing that service, acts on behalf of intending insureds;
  - (e) in the case of a word or expression covered by subparagraph (4)(a)(v)—if the person:
    - (i) can, under the licence, provide a financial service relating to contracts of life insurance (whether or not the person can provide other financial services under the licence as well); and
    - (ii) in providing that service, acts on behalf of intending insureds;
  - (f) in the case of a word or expression covered by subparagraph (4)(a)(vi)—in the circumstances (if any) that are prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph, or after ASIC has considered the matters (if any) that are so prescribed.
- (4) In this section:
- (a) a reference to a restricted word or expression is a reference to:
    - (i) the expression **stockbroker** or **sharebroker**, or any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to that expression; or
    - (ii) the expression **futures broker**, or any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to that expression; or
    - (iii) the expression **insurance broker** or **insurance broking**, or any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to that expression; or
    - (iv) the expression **general insurance broker**, or any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to that expression; or



- (v) the expression *life insurance broker*, or any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to that expression; or
- (vi) any other expression or word specified in the regulations as a restricted word or expression for the purposes of this section, or any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to such a word or expression; and
- (b) a reference to a word or expression being assumed or used includes a reference to the word or expression being assumed or used:
  - (i) as part of another word or expression; or
  - (ii) in combination with other words, letters or other symbols; and
- (c) *contract of insurance* and *insured* have the same meanings as in Division 4 of Part 7.8.

### **923C Restriction on use of terms “financial adviser” and “financial planner”**

- (1) A person contravenes this subsection if:
  - (a) the person carries on a financial services business or provides a financial service (whether or not on behalf of another person); and
  - (b) the person assumes or uses, in this jurisdiction, a restricted word or expression in relation to the service; and
  - (c) any of the following apply:
    - (i) the person is not a relevant provider;
    - (ii) the person is a provisional relevant provider;
    - (iii) the person is a limited-service time-sharing adviser.

Note 1: For the meanings of *restricted word or expression* and *assume or use*, see subsections (8) and (9) of this section.

Note 2: A contravention of this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) A person (the *first person*) contravenes this subsection if:

Section 923C

---

- (a) the first person carries on a financial services business or provides a financial service; and
- (b) another person provides a financial service on behalf of the person; and
- (c) the first person assumes or uses, in this jurisdiction, a restricted word or expression in relation to the service; and
- (d) any of the following apply:
  - (i) the first person is not a relevant provider;
  - (ii) the first person is a provisional relevant provider;
  - (iii) the first person is a limited-service time-sharing adviser.

Note 1: For the meanings of *restricted word or expression* and *assume or use*, see subsections (8) and (9) of this section.

Note 2: A contravention of this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

*Advice to wholesale clients*

- (3) It is not a contravention of subsection (1) for a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression if:
  - (a) the person provides advice to wholesale clients; and
  - (b) the person assumes or uses the restricted word or expression only in relation to that advice.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (4) It is not a contravention of subsection (2) for a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression if:
  - (a) another person (the *adviser*) provides a financial service on behalf of the person; and
  - (b) the adviser provides advice to wholesale clients; and
  - (c) the person assumes or uses the restricted word or expression only in relation to that advice.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (4). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

*Advice as employee or director*

- (5) It is not a contravention of subsection (1) for a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression if:
- (a) the person is an employee or director of a body; and
  - (b) the person provides advice to the body; and
  - (c) the person assumes or uses the restricted word or expression only in relation to that advice.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (5). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (6) It is not a contravention of subsection (2) for a person to assume or use a restricted word or expression if:
- (a) another person (the *adviser*) is an employee or director of a body; and
  - (b) the adviser provides advice to the body; and
  - (c) the person assumes or uses the restricted word or expression only in relation to that advice.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (6). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

*Continuing contravention*

- (7) If a person assumes or uses a word or expression in circumstances that give rise to the person committing an offence under subsection (1) or (2), the person commits the offence in respect of:
- (a) the first day on which the offence is committed; and
  - (b) each subsequent day (if any) on which the circumstances that gave rise to the person committing the offence continue (including the day of conviction for any such offence or any later day).

*References to restricted word or expression*

- (8) In this section:
- (a) a reference to a restricted word or expression is a reference to:

Section 923C

---

- (i) the expression *financial adviser* or *financial planner*; or
  - (ii) any other word or expression specified in the regulations as a restricted word or expression for the purposes of this section; or
  - (iii) any other word or expression (whether or not in English) that is of like import to a word or expression covered by any of the previous subparagraphs; and
- (b) a reference to a restricted word or expression being assumed or used includes a reference to the restricted word or expression being assumed or used:
- (i) as part of another word or expression; or
  - (ii) in combination with other words, letters or other symbols.
- (9) However, a reference in this section to a restricted word or expression does not include a reference to a word or expression mentioned in paragraph (8)(a) if:
- (a) the word or expression mentioned in that paragraph is assumed or used in relation to a provisional relevant provider; and
  - (b) the word or expression is assumed or used as part of a word or expression specified by the standards body for the purposes of subparagraph 921U(2)(a)(v).

*Contravention does not affect compensation arrangements*

- (10) To avoid doubt, this section does not affect the obligation of a financial services licensee to have arrangements in place under section 912B.

Note: Section 912B requires financial services licensees to have in place compensation arrangements if the licensee provides financial services to retail clients.

## **Division 11—Agreements with unlicensed persons relating to the provision of financial services**

### **Subdivision A—Agreements affected**

#### **924A Agreements with certain unlicensed persons**

- (1) Subdivision B applies to an agreement entered into by a person (in this section and Subdivision B called the *non-licensee*) and another person (in this section and Subdivision B called the *client*) (not being a financial services licensee) that constitutes, or relates to, the provision of a financial service by the non-licensee if:
  - (a) the agreement is entered into in the course of a financial services business carried on by the non-licensee; and
  - (b) the non-licensee does not hold an Australian financial services licence covering the provision of the financial service, and is not exempt from the requirement to hold such a licence.

Note: It does not matter whether the financial service is provided to the client as a wholesale client or as a retail client.

- (2) Subdivision B applies to the agreement whether or not anyone else is a party to the agreement.

### **Subdivision B—Effect on agreements**

#### **925A Client may give notice of rescission**

- (1) Subject to this section, the client may, whether before or after completion of the agreement, give to the non-licensee a written notice stating that the client wishes to rescind the agreement.
- (2) The client may only give a notice under this section within a reasonable period after becoming aware of the facts entitling the client to give the notice.

**Section 925B**

---

- (3) The client is not entitled to give a notice under this section if the client engages in conduct by engaging in which the client would, if the entitlement so to give a notice were a right to rescind the agreement for misrepresentation by the non-licensee, be taken to have affirmed the agreement.
- (4) The client is not entitled to give a notice under this section if, within a reasonable period before the agreement was entered into, the non-licensee informed the client (whether or not in writing) that the non-licensee did not hold an Australian financial services licence.
- (5) If, at a time when an Australian financial services licence held by the non-licensee was suspended, the non-licensee informed the client that the licence was suspended, the non-licensee is to be taken for the purposes of subsection (4) to have informed the client at that time that the non-licensee did not hold the licence.
- (6) None of subsections (2), (3) and (4) limits the generality of either of the others.
- (7) Subject to this section, the client may give a notice under this section whether or not:
  - (a) the notice will result under section 925B in rescission of the agreement; or
  - (b) the Court will, if the notice so results, be empowered to make a particular order, or any order at all, under section 925D.

**925B Effect of notice under section 925A**

A notice given under section 925A rescinds the agreement unless rescission of the agreement would prejudice a right, or an estate in property, acquired by a person (other than the non-licensee) in good faith, for valuable consideration and without notice of the facts entitling the client to give the notice.

**925C Client may apply to Court for partial rescission**

- (1) If the client gives a notice under section 925A but the notice does not rescind the agreement because rescission of it would prejudice a right or estate of the kind referred to in section 925B, the client may, within a reasonable period after giving the notice, apply to the Court for an order under subsection (4) of this section.
- (2) The Court may extend the period for making an application under subsection (1).
- (3) If an application is made under subsection (1), the Court may make such orders expressed to have effect until the determination of the application as it would have power to make if the notice had rescinded the agreement under section 925B and the application were for orders under section 925D.
- (4) On an application under subsection (1), the Court may make an order:
  - (a) varying the agreement in such a way as to put the client in the same position, as nearly as can be done without prejudicing such a right or estate acquired before the order is made, as if the agreement had not been entered into; and
  - (b) declaring the agreement to have had effect as so varied at and after the time when it was originally made.
- (5) If the Court makes an order under subsection (4), the agreement is to be taken for the purposes of section 925D to have been rescinded under section 925B.
- (6) An order under subsection (4) does not affect the application of section 925F or 925H in relation to the agreement as originally made or as varied by the order.

**925D Court may make consequential orders**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), on rescission of the agreement under section 925B, the Court, on the application of the client or the non-licensee, may make such order or orders as it would have

**Section 925E**

---

power to make if the client had duly rescinded the agreement because of misrepresentation by the non-licensee.

- (2) The Court is not empowered to make a particular order under subsection (1) if the order would prejudice a right, or an estate in property, acquired by a person (other than the non-licensee) in good faith, for valuable consideration and without notice of the facts entitling the client to give the notice.

**925E Agreement unenforceable against client**

- (1) This section:
- (a) applies while both of the following are the case:
    - (i) the client is entitled to give a notice under section 925A;
    - (ii) a notice so given will result under section 925B in rescission of the agreement; and
  - (b) applies after the agreement is rescinded under section 925B; but does not otherwise apply.
- (2) The non-licensee is not entitled, as against the client:
- (a) to enforce the agreement, whether directly or indirectly; or
  - (b) to rely on the agreement, whether directly or indirectly and whether by way of defence or otherwise.

**925F Non-licensee not entitled to recover commission**

- (1) Without limiting the generality of section 925E, this section:
- (a) applies while the client is entitled to give a notice under section 925A; and
  - (b) applies after the client so gives a notice, even if the notice does not result under section 925B in rescission of the agreement; but does not otherwise apply.
- (2) The non-licensee is not entitled to recover by any means (including, for example, set-off or a claim on a *quantum meruit*) any brokerage, commission or other fee for which the client would,



but for this section, have been liable to the non-licensee under or in connection with the agreement.

**925G Onus of establishing non-application of section 925E or 925F**

For the purposes of determining, in a proceeding in a court, whether or not the non-licensee is, or was at a particular time, entitled as mentioned in subsection 925E(2) or 925F(2), it is to be presumed, unless the contrary is proved, that section 925E or 925F, as the case may be, applies, or applied at that time, as the case may be.

**925H Client may recover commission paid to non-licensee**

- (1) Without limiting the generality of section 925D, if the client gives a notice under section 925A, the client may, even if the notice does not result under section 925B in rescission of the agreement, recover from the non-licensee as a debt the amount of any brokerage, commission or other fee that the client has paid to the non-licensee under or in connection with the agreement.
- (2) ASIC may, if it considers that it is in the public interest to do so, bring an action under subsection (1) in the name of, and for the benefit of, the client.

**925I Remedies under this Division additional to other remedies**

The client's rights and remedies under this Division are additional to, and do not prejudice, any other right or remedy of the client.

## Division 12—Miscellaneous

### 926A Exemptions and modifications by ASIC

- (1) The *provisions to which this section applies* are all provisions of this Part other than Divisions 4 and 8.
- (2) ASIC may:
  - (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions to which this section applies; or
  - (b) exempt a financial product or class of financial products from all or specified provisions to which this section applies; or
  - (c) declare that provisions to which this section applies apply in relation to a person or financial product, or a class of persons or financial products, as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the declaration.
- (3) An exemption may apply unconditionally or subject to specified conditions. A person to whom a condition specified in an exemption applies must comply with the condition. The Court may order the person to comply with the condition in a specified way. Only ASIC may apply to the Court for the order.
- (4) An exemption or declaration is a legislative instrument if the exemption or declaration is expressed to apply in relation to a class of persons or a class of financial products (whether or not it is also expressed to apply in relation to one or more persons or products identified otherwise than by reference to membership of a class).
- (4A) If subsection (4) does not apply to an exemption or declaration, the exemption or declaration must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.
- (5) If conduct (including an omission) of a person would not have constituted an offence if a particular declaration under paragraph (2)(c) had not been made, that conduct does not constitute an offence unless, before the conduct occurred (in addition to complying with the requirements of the *Legislative*

*Instruments Act 2003* (if the declaration is of a kind referred to in subsection (4)), or with the gazettal requirement of subsection (4A), as the case may be):

- (a) the text of the declaration was made available by ASIC on the internet; or
- (b) ASIC gave written notice setting out the text of the declaration to the person.

In a prosecution for an offence to which this subsection applies, the prosecution must prove that paragraph (a) or (b) was complied with before the conduct occurred.

- (6) For the purpose of this section, the ***provisions to which this section applies*** include:
  - (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in those provisions; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 or 10.23A (transitional provisions) that relate to those provisions.

Note: Because of section 761H, a reference to the provisions to which this section applies, or to provisions of Part 10.2, also includes a reference to regulations or other instruments made for the purposes of those provisions.

## **926B Exemptions and modifications by regulations**

- (1) The regulations may:
  - (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial product or a class of financial products from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (c) provide that this Part applies as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (2) For the purpose of this section, the ***provisions of this Part*** include:
  - (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

## Part 7.7—Financial services disclosure

### Division 1—Preliminary

#### 940A How Part applies if a financial services licensee is acting as authorised representative

If a financial services licensee is, in providing a financial service, acting as the authorised representative of another financial services licensee (see section 916E), this Part applies to the first-mentioned licensee, in relation to the service, in the capacity of authorised representative (rather than the capacity of licensee).

#### 940B What if there is no reasonable opportunity to give a document, information or statement required by this Part?

(1) If:

- (a) apart from this section, a person (the *providing entity*) would be required by a provision of this Part to give another person (the *client*) a particular document (for example, a Financial Services Guide or a Statement of Advice), or particular information or a particular statement; and
- (b) the providing entity has not had a reasonable opportunity to give (in accordance with section 940C) the client the document, information or statement by the time they are required by this Part to give it to the client;

the fact that the providing entity has not given the document, information or statement to the client as required by the provision is not a contravention of the provision.

Note: In a prosecution for an offence, a defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this section (see subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*).

- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the providing entity is not taken not to have had a reasonable opportunity to provide the document, information or statement if:

- (a) section 940C (or regulations made for the purposes of that section) permit the document, information or statement to be sent to an address (including an electronic address) or fax number nominated by the client; and
- (b) the client has not given the providing entity an address (including an electronic address) or fax number to which the document, information or statement can be sent; but
- (c) the providing entity has had a reasonable opportunity to make, but has not made, reasonable enquiries of the client to obtain such an address or fax number.

### **940C How documents, information and statements are to be given**

- (1) For the purposes of this Part (unless a contrary intention appears), a Financial Services Guide, a Supplementary Financial Services Guide or a Statement of Advice is given by a person (the **providing entity**) to another person (the **client**) if (and only if):
  - (a) it is:
    - (i) given to the client, or to the client's agent, personally; or
    - (ii) sent to the client, or the client's agent, at an address (including an electronic address) or fax number nominated by the client or the client's agent; or
    - (iii) otherwise made available to the client, or the client's agent, as agreed between the client, or the client's agent, and the providing entity; and
  - (b) it is in printed or electronic form.
- (2) For the purposes of this Part (unless a contrary intention appears), information that subsection 941C(7) or 946B(6) requires to be given by a person (the **providing entity**) to another person (the **client**) is given by the providing entity to the client if (and only if):
  - (a) it is given to the client, or the client's agent, orally; or
  - (b) it is in printed or electronic form and is:
    - (i) given to the client, or the client's agent, personally; or
    - (ii) sent to the client, or the client's agent, at an address (including an electronic address) or fax number nominated by the client or the client's agent; or

Section 940C

---

- (iii) otherwise made available to the client, or the client's agent, as agreed between the client or the client's agent and the providing entity; or
  - (c) it is given by some other method permitted by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (3) For the purposes of this Part (unless a contrary intention appears), information that subsection 941C(5), paragraph 946AA(5)(b) or subsection 946B(3) or (8) requires to be given by a person (the **providing entity**) to another person (the **client**) is given by the providing entity to the client if (and only if) it is given to the client, or the client's agent, in accordance with the applicable requirements of regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.
- (4) For the purposes of this Part (unless a contrary intention appears), a statement that subsection 941D(2) or 946C(2) requires to be given by a person (the **providing entity**) to another person (the **client**) is given by the providing entity to the client if (and only if) it is given orally to the client or the client's agent.
- (5) For the purposes of this section, a document, information or statement to which this section applies is sent to a person at an address if, and only if:
  - (a) the document, information or statement is sent to the address; and
  - (b) either:
    - (i) the envelope or other container in which it is sent; or
    - (ii) the message that accompanies it;is addressed to the person.
- (6) A document, information or statement to which this section applies may be given or sent to a person's agent only if the agent is not acting as the person's agent in one of the following capacities:
  - (a) a financial services licensee;
  - (b) an authorised representative of a financial services licensee;
  - (d) a person who is not required to hold an Australian financial services licence because the person is covered by:

- (i) paragraph 911A(2)(j); or
  - (ii) an exemption in regulations made for the purposes of paragraph 911A(2)(k); or
  - (iii) an exemption specified by ASIC for the purposes of paragraph 911A(2)(l);
  - (e) a person who is required to hold an Australian financial services licence but who does not hold such a licence;
  - (f) an employee, director or other representative of a person referred to in paragraph (a), (b), (c), (d) or (e).
- (7) The regulations may specify requirements as to:
- (a) the manner in which a document, information or statement may be given to a person; and
  - (b) the presentation, structure and format for a document, information or statement that is to be given in electronic form.

The giving of the document, information or statement is not effective unless those requirements are satisfied.

#### **940D General approach to offence provisions**

Subdivision A of Division 7 contains provisions creating offences by reference to various rules contained in Divisions of this Part. However, it does not create all the offences relating to those rules, as some offences are created by subsection 1311(1). Where offences are created by subsection 1311(1) in relation to a rule, this is indicated by a note at the end of the provision containing the rule.

## **Division 2—Person provided with financial service as retail client to be given a Financial Services Guide**

### **Subdivision A—Requirement for a Financial Services Guide to be given**

#### **941A Obligation on financial services licensee to give a Financial Services Guide if financial service provided to person as a retail client**

- (1) A financial services licensee (the *providing entity*) must give a person a Financial Services Guide in accordance with this Division if the providing entity provides a financial service to the person (the *client*) as a retail client.
- (2) This section has effect subject to section 941C.

#### **941B Obligation on authorised representative to give a Financial Services Guide if financial service provided to person as a retail client**

- (1) An authorised representative (the *providing entity*) of a financial services licensee (the *authorising licensee*), or of 2 or more financial services licensees (the *authorising licensees*), must give a person a Financial Services Guide in accordance with this Division if the providing entity, as a representative of the authorising licensee, or one or more of the authorising licensees, provides a financial service to the person (the *client*) as a retail client.

Note: If the providing entity is the authorised representative of 2 or more financial services licensees, each of those licensees is, for the purposes of this Division, an authorising licensee in relation to the financial service provided to the client, even though the providing entity may not have been acting as representative of each of those licensees in providing the service to the client.

- (2) A Financial Services Guide must not be given to the person by the providing entity unless the authorising licensee, or each of the



authorising licensees, has authorised its distribution by the providing entity.

- (3) This section has effect subject to section 941C.

### **941C Situations in which a Financial Services Guide is not required**

#### *Client has already received the information*

- (1) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Financial Services Guide (the *new FSG*) if the client has already received a Financial Services Guide that contains all of the information that the new FSG is required to contain.

#### *Providing entity is product issuer dealing in own products*

- (2) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Financial Services Guide if:
- (a) the providing entity is an issuer of financial products; and
  - (b) the financial service is a dealing (see section 766C) in financial products, other than derivatives able to be traded on a licensed market, issued by the providing entity, and does not also relate to financial products issued by someone else.

Note: The issuer will however have to comply with the Product Disclosure Statement requirements (see Division 2 of Part 7.9).

#### *Providing entity is merely operating a registered scheme*

- (3) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Financial Services Guide if:
- (a) the providing entity is the responsible entity of a registered scheme; and
  - (b) the financial service consists only of the operation of that scheme by the providing entity.

**Section 941C**

---

*Financial product advice given to the public*

- (4) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Financial Services Guide if the financial service is general advice provided to the public, or a section of the public, in the manner prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.
- (5) However, if subsection (4) applies and the client is not given a Financial Services Guide before the advice is provided, the client must instead, before the advice is provided, be given the information that would be required to be in the Financial Services Guide by paragraphs 942B(2)(a), (e) and (f), or paragraphs 942C(2)(a), (c), (f) and (g), as the case requires.

*Certain basic deposit and other products*

- (6) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Financial Services Guide if the financial service is a dealing (see section 766C) in, is the provision of financial product advice (see section 766B) about, or in any other way relates to, any of the following:
  - (a) a basic deposit product;
  - (b) a facility for making non-cash payments (see section 763D) that is related to a basic deposit product;
  - (c) a financial product of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (7) However, if subsection (6) applies and the client is not given a Financial Services Guide before the service is provided, the client must instead, before the service is provided, be given the information that would be required to be in the Financial Services Guide by paragraphs 942B(2)(a) and (h), or paragraphs 942C(2)(a) and (i), as the case requires.

*Regulations may specify other exemptions*

- (8) A Financial Services Guide does not have to be given to the client in circumstances specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

## **941D Timing of giving Financial Services Guide**

### *General rule*

- (1) Subject to this section, the Financial Services Guide must be given to the client as soon as practicable after it becomes apparent to the providing entity that the financial service will be, or is likely to be, provided to the client, and must in any event be given to the client before the financial service is provided.

### *Time critical cases*

- (2) If:
  - (a) the client expressly instructs that they require the financial service to be provided immediately, or by a specified time; and
  - (b) it is not reasonably practicable to give the Financial Services Guide to the client before the service is provided as so instructed;the providing entity must instead give the client a statement that complies with subsection (3) before the service is provided.
- (3) The statement must contain:
  - (a) the information that would be required to be in the Financial Services Guide by paragraphs 942B(2)(e), (f) and (i), or paragraphs 942C(2)(f), (g) and (j), as the case requires; and
  - (b) such other information as would be required to be in the Financial Services Guide as is particularly relevant to the financial service to be provided.
- (4) The client must then be given the Financial Services Guide within 5 days after being given the statement, or sooner if practicable.

## **941E Information must be up to date**

The information in the Financial Services Guide must be up to date as at the time when it is given to the client.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.7** Financial services disclosure

**Division 2** Person provided with financial service as retail client to be given a Financial Services Guide

**Section 941F**

---

Note: A Supplementary Financial Services Guide containing updated information may be given with a Financial Services Guide that has become out of date. The updated information is taken to be included in the Financial Services Guide (see section 943D.)

**941F Obligation to give updated Financial Services Guide**

If:

- (a) the Financial Services Guide is given to the client before the financial service is provided; and
- (b) the following conditions are satisfied:
  - (i) there is a change in circumstances before the service is provided, and the Financial Services Guide does not contain the information it would be required to contain if it were given to a person immediately after that change;
  - (ii) the fact that the Financial Services Guide does not contain the up to date information is materially adverse from the point of view of a reasonable person deciding, as a retail client, whether to proceed to be provided with the financial service;

the providing entity must, before the service is provided, give the client:

- (c) another Financial Services Guide that contains the up to date information before the service is provided; or
- (d) a Supplementary Financial Services Guide (see Subdivision C) that updates the information in the Financial Services Guide.

**Subdivision B—Content and authorisation of Financial Services Guide**

**942A Title of Financial Services Guide**

- (1) The title “Financial Services Guide” must be used on the cover of, or at or near the front of, a Financial Services Guide.

- (2) In any other part of a Financial Services Guide, “Financial Services Guide” may be abbreviated to “FSG”.

**942B Financial Services Guide given by financial services licensee—  
main requirements**

- (1) This section applies if the providing entity is a financial services licensee.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) and to the regulations (see subsection (4)), the Financial Services Guide must include the following statements and information:
- (a) a statement setting out the name and contact details of the providing entity; and
  - (b) a statement setting out any special instructions about how the client may provide instructions to the providing entity; and
  - (c) information about the kinds of financial services (the *authorised services*) that the providing entity is authorised by its licence to provide, and the kinds of financial products to which those services relate; and
  - (d) information about who the providing entity acts for when providing the authorised services; and
  - (e) information about the remuneration (including commission) or other benefits that any of the following is to receive in respect of, or that is attributable to, the provision of any of the authorised services:
    - (i) the providing entity;
    - (ii) a related body corporate of the providing entity;
    - (iii) a director or employee of the providing entity or a related body corporate;
    - (iv) an associate of any of the above;
    - (v) any other person in relation to whom the regulations require the information to be provided;
  - (f) information about any associations or relationships between the providing entity, or any related body corporate, and the issuers of any financial products, being associations or

**Section 942B**

---

relationships that might reasonably be expected to be capable of influencing the providing entity in providing any of the authorised services; and

- (g) if the providing entity provides further market-related advice (see subsection 946B(1)) or advice to which subsection 946B(7) applies—a statement in relation to which the following requirements are satisfied:
  - (i) the statement must indicate that the client may request a record of that advice, if they have not already been provided with a record of that advice;
  - (ii) the statement must set out particulars of how the client may request such a record;
  - (iii) any limitations in those particulars on the time within which the client may request such a record must be consistent with any applicable requirements in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph or, if there are no such applicable requirements, must be such as to allow the client a reasonable opportunity to request a record of the advice; and
- (h) information about the dispute resolution system that covers complaints by persons to whom the providing entity provides financial services, and about how that system may be accessed; and
- (i) if the providing entity acts under a binder in providing any of the authorised services—a statement that:
  - (i) identifies the services provided under the binder; and
  - (ii) states that they are provided under a binder; and
  - (iii) explains the significance of the services being provided under a binder; and
- (j) if the providing entity is a participant in a licensed market or a licensed CS facility—a statement that the providing entity is a participant in that market or facility; and
- (k) any other statements or information required by the regulations.

Note: A Supplementary Financial Services Guide containing additional information may be given with a Financial Services Guide that does

**Section 942B**

---

not contain all the required information. The additional information is taken to be included in the Financial Services Guide (see section 943D.)

- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the level of information about a matter that is required is such as a person would reasonably require for the purpose of making a decision whether to acquire financial services from the providing entity as a retail client.
- (4) The regulations may provide all or any of the following:
  - (a) that a provision of subsection (2) does not apply in a particular situation;
  - (b) that particular information is not required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (c) a more detailed statement of the information that is required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (d) that certain supplementary information must be given or made available to the client in some other way.
- (5) The Financial Services Guide must be dated. The date must be the date on which the Financial Services Guide was prepared or its preparation was completed.
- (6) The Financial Services Guide may also contain other information.
- (6A) The information included in the Financial Services Guide must be worded and presented in a clear, concise and effective manner.
- (7) The regulations may require the providing entity, in circumstances specified in the regulations, to provide the client, on request, with more detailed information about remuneration (including commission) or other benefits of a kind referred to in paragraph (2)(e).
- (8) If:
  - (a) the Financial Services Guide includes a statement to the effect that a client may request a record of further

**Section 942C**

---

market-related advice or advice to which subsection 946B(7) applies; and

- (b) the client is provided with advice to which that statement applies; and
- (c) the client has not already been provided with a record of that advice;

the providing entity must comply with a request made in accordance with that statement for a record of that advice.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**942C Financial Services Guide given by authorised representative—  
main requirements**

- (1) This section applies if the providing entity is an authorised representative.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) and to the regulations (see subsection (4)), the Financial Services Guide must include the following statements and information:
  - (a) a statement setting out the name and contact details of the providing entity; and
  - (b) a statement setting out any special instructions about how the client may provide instructions to the providing entity; and
  - (c) a statement:
    - (i) setting out the name and contact details of the authorising licensee, or of each of the authorising licensees; and
    - (ii) stating that the providing entity is the authorised representative of that licensee or those licensees; and
  - (d) information, in relation to the authorising licensee or each of the authorising licensees, about the kinds of financial services (the *authorised services*) that the providing entity provides as representative of the authorising licensee, and the kinds of financial products to which those services relate; and



---

Section 942C

---

- (e) information about who the authorising licensee, or each of the authorising licensees, acts for when financial services are provided on their behalf by the providing entity; and
- (f) information about the remuneration (including commission) or other benefits that any of the following is to receive in respect of, or that is attributable to, the provision of any of the authorised services:
  - (i) the providing entity;
  - (ii) an employer of the providing entity;
  - (iii) the authorising licensee, or any of the authorising licensees;
  - (iv) an employee or director of the authorising licensee, or of any of the authorising licensees;
  - (v) an associate of any of the above;
  - (vi) any other person in relation to whom the regulations require the information to be provided; and
- (g) information about any associations or relationships between:
  - (i) the providing entity, or any employer of the providing entity, and the issuers of any financial products; or
  - (ii) the authorising licensee, or any of the authorising licensees, or any related body corporate of the authorising licensee or any of the authorising licensees, and the issuers of any financial products;being associations or relationships that might reasonably be expected to be capable of influencing the providing entity in providing any of the authorised services; and
- (h) if the providing entity, when acting as representative of the authorising licensee or any of the authorising licensees, provides further market-related advice (see subsection 946B(1)) or advice to which subsection 946B(7) applies—a statement in relation to which the following requirements are satisfied:
  - (i) the statement must indicate that the client may request a record of that advice, if they have not already been provided with a record of that advice;

**Section 942C**

---

- (ii) the statement must set out particulars of how the client may request such a record;
- (iii) any limitations in those particulars on the time within which the client may request such a record must be consistent with any applicable requirements in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph or, if there are no such applicable requirements, must be such as to allow the client a reasonable opportunity to request a record of the advice; and
- (i) information about the dispute resolution system that covers complaints by persons to whom the providing entity provides financial services when acting as representative of the authorising licensee or any of the authorising licensees, and about how that system may be accessed; and
- (j) if the providing entity acts under a binder in providing any of the authorised services—a statement that:
  - (i) identifies the services provided under the binder; and
  - (ii) states that they are provided under a binder; and
  - (iii) explains the significance of the services being provided under a binder; and
- (k) if the providing entity, or the authorising licensee or any of the authorising licensees, is a participant in a licensed market or a licensed CS facility—a statement that the providing entity or authorising licensee is a participant in that market or facility; and
- (l) a statement to the effect that the distribution of the Financial Services Guide by the providing entity has been authorised by the authorising licensee, or by each of the authorising licensees; and
- (m) any other statements or information required by the regulations.

Note: A Supplementary Financial Services Guide containing additional information may be given with a Financial Services Guide that does not contain all the required information. The additional information is taken to be included in the Financial Services Guide (see section 943D.)

Section 942C

---

- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the level of detail of information about a matter that is required is such as a person would reasonably require for the purpose of making a decision whether to acquire financial services from the providing entity as a retail client.
- (4) The regulations may provide all or any of the following:
  - (a) that a provision of subsection (2) does not apply in a particular situation;
  - (b) that particular information is not required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (c) a more detailed statement of the information that is required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (d) that certain supplementary information must be given or made available to the client in some other way.
- (5) The Financial Services Guide must be dated. The date must be the date on which the Financial Services Guide was prepared or its preparation was completed.
- (6) The Financial Services Guide may also contain other information.
- (6A) The information included in the Financial Services Guide must be worded and presented in a clear, concise and effective manner.
- (7) The regulations may require the providing entity, in circumstances specified in the regulations, to provide the client, on request, with more detailed information about remuneration (including commission) or other benefits of a kind referred to in paragraph (2)(f).
- (8) If:
  - (a) the Financial Services Guide includes a statement to the effect that a client may request a record of further market-related advice or advice to which subsection 946B(7) applies; and
  - (b) the client is provided with advice to which that statement applies; and

Section 942D

---

(c) the client has not already been provided with a record of that advice;

the providing entity must comply with a request made in accordance with that statement for a record of that advice.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**942D Financial Services Guide may consist of 2 or more separate documents given at same time**

- (1) Subject to this section, a Financial Services Guide may be made up of 2 or more separate documents that are given at the same time.
- (2) Each of the documents must have on the cover of the document, or at or near the front of the document, a statement:
  - (a) to the effect that the document is part of a Financial Services Guide; and
  - (b) that (subject to subsection (3)) identifies the other documents that make up the Financial Services Guide.
- (3) If there are or may be different versions of a document referred to in paragraph (2)(b), the statement required by subsection (2) does not have to identify any particular one of those versions and may instead identify the document generically.

Note: For example, if a Financial Services Guide is made up of a core document that is not updated very frequently, and a separate document providing information about remuneration that is updated more frequently:

- (a) the statement in the core document need only refer to the fact that it, and a separate document about remuneration, make up the Financial Services Guide; and
  - (b) the statement in the document about remuneration need only refer to the fact that it, and a separate document about all other required matters, make up the Financial Services Guide.
- (4) The requirement of section 942A (title of Financial Services Guide) is taken to be satisfied if the title “Financial Services Guide” is used on the cover of, or at or near the front of, at least one of the documents that make up the Financial Services Guide.

Section 942DA

---

- (5) The requirement of subsection 942B(5) or 942C(5) (dating of Financial Services Guide) must be separately complied with in relation to each of the documents. If, for any purpose, a single date needs to be determined as the date of the Financial Services Guide as a whole, that date is the most recent of the dates of those documents.
- (6) Section 942E applies to an alteration to one of the documents as though the reference in that section to the date specified in the Financial Services Guide were a reference to the date specified in the document.
- (7) The regulations may impose additional requirements to be complied with if a Financial Services Guide is made up of 2 or more documents.

**942DA Combining a Financial Services Guide and a Product Disclosure Statement in a single document**

- (1) A Financial Services Guide and a Product Disclosure Statement may be combined in a single document (a *combined FSG and PDS*) in circumstances specified in regulations made for the purposes of this section.
- (2) Those regulations may also provide that this Chapter applies in relation to a combined FSG and PDS as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (3) A Financial Services Guide and a Product Disclosure Statement must not be combined in a single document except as permitted under subsection (1).

**942E Altering a Financial Services Guide after its preparation and before giving it to a person**

A financial services licensee, or an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, must not, in purported compliance with a provision of this Part, give a person a Financial Services Guide (the *FSG*) that has been altered (otherwise than pursuant to

### Section 943A

---

paragraph (b)) after the date specified in the FSG as required by subsection 942B(5) or 942C(5) unless:

- (a) the alteration was made by, or with the authority of:
  - (i) if section 942B applies to the FSG—the financial services licensee to which the FSG relates; or
  - (ii) if section 942C applies to the FSG—the financial services licensee, or each of the financial services licensees, who authorised the distribution of the FSG; and
- (b) if the alteration is a material alteration—the date of the FSG has been changed to the date on which the alteration was made.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

## **Subdivision C—Supplementary Financial Services Guides**

### **943A What a Supplementary Financial Services Guide is**

- (1) A ***Supplementary Financial Services Guide*** is a document by which a person who has prepared a Financial Services Guide (the ***FSG***) can:
  - (a) correct a misleading or deceptive statement in the FSG; or
  - (b) correct an omission from the FSG of information it is required to contain; or
  - (c) update the information contained in the FSG.
- (2) A Supplementary Financial Services Guide must not be given to a person by an authorised representative of a financial services licensee unless the licensee has authorised its distribution by the authorised representative.

### **943B Title of Supplementary Financial Services Guide**

- (1) The title “Supplementary Financial Services Guide” must be used on the cover of, or at or near the front of, a Supplementary Financial Services Guide.

- (2) In any other part of a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, “Supplementary Financial Services Guide” may be abbreviated to “SFSG”.

### **943C Form of Supplementary Financial Services Guide**

- (1) At the beginning of a Supplementary Financial Services Guide there must be:
- (a) a statement that it is a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; and
  - (b) an identification of the Financial Services Guide that it supplements; and
  - (c) a statement that it is to be read together with that Financial Services Guide and any other specified Supplementary Financial Services Guides.
- (2) The Supplementary Financial Services Guide must be dated. The date must be the date on which the Supplementary Financial Services Guide was prepared or its preparation was completed.
- (3) If the Supplementary Financial Services Guide will or may be distributed by an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, it must contain a statement to the effect that its distribution by the authorised representative has been authorised by the licensee.

### **943D Effect of giving a person a Supplementary Financial Services Guide**

If:

- (a) a person is given a Financial Services Guide (the **FSG**); and
- (b) at the same time, or later, they are given a Supplementary Financial Services Guide (the **SFSG**) that supplements the FSG;

the FSG is taken, from when the SFSG is given to the person, to include the information and statements contained in the SFSG.

Section 943E

---

**943E Situation in which only a Supplementary Financial Services Guide need be given**

If:

- (a) apart from this section, a person (the *providing entity*) would be required to give another person (the *client*) a Financial Services Guide (the *new FSG*); and
- (b) the client has, because of some previous conduct, already been given a Financial Services Guide (the *earlier FSG*) containing some, but not all, of the information that the new FSG is required to contain;

the provider may, instead of giving the client the new FSG, give the client a Supplementary Financial Services Guide that contains the additional information.

**943F Altering a Supplementary Financial Services Guide after its preparation and before giving it to a person**

A financial services licensee, or an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, must not, in purported compliance with a provision of this Part, give a person a Supplementary Financial Services Guide (the *SFSG*) that has been altered (otherwise than pursuant to paragraph (b)) after the date specified in the SFSG as required by subsection 943C(2) unless:

- (a) the alteration was made by, or with the authority of:
  - (i) if section 942B applies to the Financial Services Guide that the SFSG supplements—the financial services licensee to which the Guide relates; or
  - (ii) if section 942C applies to the Financial Services Guide that the SFSG supplements—the financial services licensee, or each of the financial services licensees, who authorised the distribution of the SFSG; and
- (b) if the alteration is a material alteration—the date of the SFSG has been changed to the date on which the alteration was made.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).



## **Division 3—Additional requirements for personal advice provided to a retail client**

### **Subdivision A—When this Division applies**

#### **944A Situation in which Division applies**

This Division applies in relation to the provision of personal advice (the *advice*) in the following circumstances:

- (a) the advice is provided:
  - (i) by a financial services licensee (the *providing entity*); or
  - (ii) by a person (the *providing entity*) in their capacity as authorised representative of a financial services licensee (the *authorising licensee*), or of 2 or more financial services licensees (the *authorising licensees*); and
- (b) the advice is provided to a person (the *client*) as a retail client.

### **Subdivision C—Requirement for a Statement of Advice to be given**

#### **946A Obligation to give client a Statement of Advice**

- (1) The providing entity must give the client a Statement of Advice in accordance with this Subdivision and Subdivision D.
- (2) The Statement of Advice may be:
  - (a) the means by which the advice is provided; or
  - (b) a separate record of the advice.
- (3) This section has effect subject to sections 946AA and 946B.

Section 946AA

---

**946AA Small investments—Statement of Advice not required**

*Small investments generally*

- (1) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Statement of Advice for particular advice (the **small investment advice**) if:
  - (a) both of the following apply:
    - (i) an amount (the **threshold amount**) has been prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
    - (ii) the total value of all financial investments in relation to which the advice is provided, as worked out under subsection (2), does not exceed the threshold amount; and
  - (b) the advice does not relate to any of the following:
    - (i) a derivative;
    - (ii) a general insurance product;
    - (iii) a life risk insurance product (except to the extent that advice about a superannuation product relates to a life risk insurance product); and
  - (c) the advice does not relate to any superannuation product or RSA product, unless the client already has an interest in the product.

*Total value of investments*

- (2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(a), the total value of investments in relation to which the small investment advice is provided is:
  - (a) if the advice solely relates to the acquisition of all (or part) of one or more financial products, or of an increased interest in one or more financial products—the sum of the values (the **total acquisition value**) of each acquisition; or
  - (b) if the advice solely relates to the disposal of all (or part) of one or more financial products, or of a part of an interest in one or more financial products—the sum of the values (the **total disposal value**) of each disposal; or
  - (c) if the advice relates to both an acquisition, and a disposal, mentioned in paragraphs (a) and (b):

- (i) the total acquisition value; or
- (ii) if the total disposal value exceeds the total acquisition value—the total disposal value.

*Method for working out threshold amount*

- (3) Regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (1)(a) may prescribe how the threshold amount is to be worked out in relation to particular kinds of financial products.

*Record of advice*

- (4) The providing entity must keep a record of the small investment advice and, in doing so, must comply with any applicable requirements of regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (5) The providing entity must, at the applicable time, give the client:
  - (a) a copy of the record of the small investment advice; and
  - (b) the information that would, if a Statement of Advice were to be given, be required to be in the Statement by paragraphs 947B(2)(d) and (e), or 947C(2)(e) and (f), as the case requires.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5), the ***applicable time*** for something to be given relating to the small investment advice is the time:
  - (a) when, or as soon as practicable after, the advice is provided; and
  - (b) in any event—before the providing entity provides the client with any further financial service arising out of, or connected with, the advice.

Section 946B

---

**946B Other situations in which a Statement of Advice is not required**

*Further market-related advice*

- (1) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Statement of Advice for particular advice (the *further market-related advice*) if:
  - (a) the providing entity is a participant in a licensed market, or is an authorised representative of a participant in a licensed market; and
  - (b) the providing entity has previously given the client a Statement of Advice that set out the client's relevant personal circumstances in relation to the advice (the *previous advice*) set out in that Statement; and
  - (c) the further market-related advice recommends that the client:
    - (i) acquire or dispose of, or not acquire or dispose of; or
    - (ii) accept or refuse an offer or invitation which, if accepted, would result in the client acquiring or disposing of, or offering to acquire or dispose of; securities, managed investment products or derivatives that are able to be traded on a licensed market; and
  - (d) the following conditions are satisfied:
    - (ia) the providing entity has, either immediately before the further market-related advice is given, or within the preceding 12 months, checked with the client whether the client's objectives, financial situation and needs have changed since the last time the providing entity checked with the client about those matters; and
    - (i) the client's relevant personal circumstances in relation to the further market-related advice (determined having regard to the client's objectives, financial situation and needs as currently known to the providing entity) are not significantly different from the client's relevant personal circumstances in relation to the previous advice; and
    - (ii) so far as the basis on which advice is given relates to other matters—the basis on which the further

market-related advice is given is not significantly different from the basis on which the previous advice was given; and

- (e) the providing entity has a reasonable belief that:
  - (i) the client requires the further market-related advice to be provided promptly; or
  - (ii) it is in the client's interests that the further market-related advice be provided promptly; and
- (f) either:
  - (i) the further market-related advice does not contain any other kind of financial product advice; or
  - (ii) the only other kind of financial product advice contained in the further market-related advice is cash management facility advice; and
- (g) the further market-related advice is given:
  - (i) by telephone; or
  - (ii) by fax; or
  - (iii) by e-mail; or
  - (iv) by another kind of electronic communication specified in regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph.

Note: Paragraphs 947B(2)(b) and 947C(2)(b) require a Statement of Advice to include information about the basis on which the advice is or was given, which may include the client's relevant personal circumstances, in which case paragraph (b) of this subsection would be satisfied.

(2) For the purposes of subsection (1):

***able to be traded on a licensed market*** means:

- (a) in relation to securities or managed investment products—either:
  - (i) the securities or products are admitted to quotation on a licensed market and their admission to quotation is not suspended; or
  - (ii) the securities or products are not admitted to quotation on a licensed market, but are further securities or products of a kind that are already admitted to quotation

Section 946B

---

on the market and whose admission to quotation is not suspended; and

(b) in relation to derivatives:

(i) the standard terms of the arrangement that constitutes the derivative are set out in the operating rules of a licensed market; and

(ii) under the operating rules of that market, the derivatives are able to be dealt with on the market.

**cash management facility** means:

(a) an interest in a registered scheme of a kind commonly known as a cash common fund or a cash management trust; or

(b) a basic deposit product; or

(c) a bank accepted bill.

**cash management facility advice** means advice about the use (but not the establishment) of a cash management facility in connection with an acquisition or disposal of securities, managed investment products or derivatives to which the further market-related advice relates.

(3) However, in the same communication as is used to provide the further market-related advice to the client, the client must be given the information that would, if a Statement of Advice were to be given, be required to be in the Statement by paragraphs 947B(2)(d) and (e), or 947C(2)(e) and (f), as the case requires.

(3A) The providing entity must keep a record of the further market-related advice and, in doing so, must comply with any applicable requirements of regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: For the client's right to a record of the advice, see subsections 942B(8) and 942C(8).

*Certain basic deposit and other products*

- (5) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Statement of Advice if the advice relates to any or all of the following:
- (a) a basic deposit product;
  - (b) a facility for making non-cash payments (see section 763D) that is related to a basic deposit product;
  - (c) a financial product of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (6) However, if subsection (5) applies and the client is not given a Statement of Advice, the client must instead, when, or as soon as practicable after, the advice is provided, be given the information that would be required to be in the Statement of Advice by paragraphs 947B(2)(d) and (e), or 947C(2)(e) and (f), as the case requires.

*Where advice does not recommend the purchase or sale of products*

- (7) The providing entity does not have to give the client a Statement of Advice for particular advice if:
- (a) the advice does not recommend or state an opinion in respect of:
    - (i) the acquisition or disposal of any specific financial product, or the products of a specific issuer; nor
    - (ii) a modification to an investment strategy or a contribution level in relation to a financial product held by the client; and
  - (b) the following persons do not directly receive any remuneration (other than remuneration that is currently being received for an earlier acquisition of a product) or other benefit for, or in relation to, the advice:
    - (i) the providing entity;
    - (ii) an employer of the providing entity;
    - (iii) the authorising licensee, or any of the authorising licensees;

**Section 946C**

---

- (iv) an employee or director of the authorising licensee, or of any of the authorising licensees;
  - (v) an associate of any of the above;
  - (vi) any other person prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (8) However, in the same communication as is used to provide to the client the advice referred to in subsection (7), the client must be given the information that would, if a Statement of Advice were to be given, be required to be in the Statement by paragraphs 947B(2)(d) and (e), or 947C(2)(e) and (f), as the case requires.
- (9) The providing entity must keep a record of the advice and, in doing so, must comply with any applicable requirements of regulations made for the purposes of this subsection.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: For the client's right to a record of the advice, see subsections 942B(8) and 942C(8).

**946C Timing of giving Statement of Advice**

*General rule*

- (1) Subject to this section, if the Statement of Advice is not the means by which the advice is provided, the Statement of Advice must be given to the client when, or as soon as practicable after, the advice is provided and, in any event, before the providing entity provides the client with any further financial service that arises out of or is connected with that advice.

*Statement of certain information if Statement of Advice not given when advice provided*

- (2) If the Statement of Advice is not given to the client when the advice is provided, the providing entity must, when the advice is provided, give the client a statement that contains the information that would be required to be in a Statement of Advice by



paragraphs 947B(2)(d) and (e), or 947C(2)(e) and (f), as the case requires, and by section 947D, if applicable.

*Time critical cases*

- (3) If:
- (a) the client expressly instructs that they require a further financial service that arises out of, or is connected with, the advice to be provided immediately, or by a specified time; and
  - (b) it is not reasonably practicable to give the Statement of Advice to the client before that further service is provided as so instructed;
- the providing entity must give the client the Statement of Advice:
- (c) unless paragraph (d) applies—within 5 days after providing that further service, or sooner if practicable; or
  - (d) if that further service is the provision to the person of a financial product and section 1019B (cooling-off period) will apply to the acquisition of the product by the person—before the start of the period applicable under subsection 1019B(3), or sooner if practicable.

## **Subdivision D—Content of Statement of Advice**

### **947A Title of Statement of Advice**

- (1) The title “Statement of Advice” must be used on the cover of, or at or near the front of, a Statement of Advice.
- (2) In any other part of a Statement of Advice, “Statement of Advice” may be abbreviated to “SoA”.

### **947B Statement of Advice given by financial services licensee—main requirements**

- (1) This section applies if the providing entity is a financial services licensee.

**Section 947B**

---

- (2) Subject to subsection (3) and to the regulations (see subsection (4)), the Statement of Advice must include the following statements and information:
- (a) a statement setting out the advice; and
  - (b) information about the basis on which the advice is or was given; and
  - (c) a statement setting out the name and contact details of the providing entity; and
  - (d) information about any remuneration (including commission) or other benefits that any of the following is to receive that might reasonably be expected to be or have been capable of influencing the providing entity in providing the advice:
    - (i) the providing entity;
    - (ii) a related body corporate of the providing entity;
    - (iii) a director or employee of the providing entity or a related body corporate;
    - (iv) an associate of any of the above;
    - (v) any other person in relation to whom the regulations require the information to be provided; and
  - (e) information about:
    - (i) any other interests, whether pecuniary or not and whether direct or indirect, of the providing entity or of any associate of the providing entity; and
    - (ii) any associations or relationships between the providing entity or any associate of the providing entity and the issuers of any financial products; that might reasonably be expected to be or have been capable of influencing the providing entity in providing the advice; and
  - (f) if section 961H requires a warning to be given to the client in relation to the advice—a statement setting out, or recording, the warning required by that section; and
  - (g) any other statements or information required by the regulations; and

Section 947C

---

- (h) unless in accordance with the regulations, for information to be disclosed in accordance with paragraph (d) and subparagraph (e)(i), any amounts are to be stated in dollars.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the level of detail about a matter that is required is such as a person would reasonably require for the purpose of deciding whether to act on the advice as a retail client.
- (4) The regulations may provide all or any of the following:
  - (a) that a provision of subsection (2) does not apply in a particular situation;
  - (b) that particular information is not required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (c) a more detailed statement of the information that is required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally.
- (5) The Statement of Advice:
  - (a) must also include any information required by section 947D, if applicable; and
  - (b) may also include other information.
- (6) The statements and information included in the Statement of Advice must be worded and presented in a clear, concise and effective manner.

**947C Statement of Advice given by authorised representative—main requirements**

- (1) This section applies if the providing entity is an authorised representative.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3) and to the regulations (see subsection (4)), the Statement of Advice must include the following statements and information:
  - (a) a statement setting out the advice; and
  - (b) information about the basis on which the advice is or was given; and

Section 947C

---

- (c) a statement setting out the name and contact details of the providing entity; and
- (d) a statement
  - (i) setting out the name and contact details of the authorising licensee, or of each of the authorising licensees; and
  - (ii) stating that the providing entity is the authorised representative of that licensee or those licensees; and
- (e) information about the remuneration (including commission) or other benefits that any of the following is to receive that might reasonably be expected to be or have been capable of influencing the providing entity in providing the advice:
  - (i) the providing entity;
  - (ii) an employer of the providing entity;
  - (iii) the authorising licensee, or any of the authorising licensees;
  - (iv) an employee or director of the authorising licensee, or of any of the authorising licensees;
  - (v) an associate of any of the above;
  - (vi) any other person in relation to whom the regulations require the information to be provided; and
- (f) information about:
  - (i) any other interests, whether pecuniary or not and whether direct or indirect, of the providing entity, any employer of the providing entity, the authorising licensee or any of the authorising licensees, or of any associate of any of those persons; and
  - (ii) any associations or relationships between the providing entity, any employer of the providing entity, the authorising licensee or any of the authorising licensees, or any associate of any of those persons, and the issuers of any financial products;that might reasonably be expected to be or have been capable of influencing the providing entity in providing the advice; and

Section 947D

---

- (g) if section 961H requires a warning to be given to the client in relation to the advice—a statement setting out, or recording, the warning required by that section; and
  - (h) any other statements or information required by the regulations; and
  - (i) unless in accordance with the regulations, for information to be disclosed in accordance with paragraph (e) and subparagraph (f)(i), any amounts are to be stated in dollars.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), the level of detail about a matter that is required is such as a person would reasonably require for the purpose of deciding whether to act on the advice as a retail client.
- (4) The regulations may provide all or any of the following:
- (a) that a provision of subsection (2) does not apply in a particular situation;
  - (b) that particular information is not required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (c) a more detailed statement of the information that is required by a provision of subsection (2), either in a particular situation or generally.
- (5) The Statement of Advice:
- (a) must also include any information required by section 947D, if applicable; and
  - (b) may also include other information.
- (6) The statements and information included in the Statement of Advice must be worded and presented in a clear, concise and effective manner.

**947D Additional requirements when advice recommends replacement of one product with another**

- (1) This section applies (subject to subsection (4)) if the advice is or includes a recommendation that:
- (a) the client dispose of, or reduce the client's interest in, all or part of a particular financial product and instead acquire all

**Section 947D**

---

- or part of, or increase the client's interest in, another financial product; or
- (b) the client dispose of, or reduce the client's interest in, a MySuper product offered by a regulated superannuation fund and instead acquire an interest, or increase the client's interest, in another MySuper product or a choice product offered by the fund.
- (2) The following additional information must be included in the Statement of Advice:
- (a) information about the following, to the extent that the information is known to, or could reasonably be found out by, the providing entity:
- (i) any charges the client will or may incur in respect of the disposal or reduction;
- (ii) any charges the client will or may incur in respect of the acquisition or increase;
- (iii) any pecuniary or other benefits that the client will or may lose (temporarily or otherwise) as a result of taking the recommended action;
- (b) information about any other significant consequences for the client of taking the recommended action that the providing entity knows, or ought reasonably to know, are likely;
- (c) any other information required by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;
- (d) unless in accordance with the regulations, for information to be disclosed in accordance with paragraph (a), any amounts are to be stated in dollars.
- (3) If:
- (a) the providing entity knows that, or is reckless as to whether:
- (i) the client will or may incur charges as mentioned in subparagraph (2)(a)(i) or (ii); or
- (ii) the client will or may lose benefits as mentioned in subparagraph (2)(a)(iii); or
- (iii) there will or may be consequences for the client as mentioned in paragraph (2)(b); but

Section 947E

---

- (b) the providing entity does not know, and cannot reasonably find out, what those charges, losses or consequences are or will be;
- the Statement of Advice must include a statement to the effect that there will or may be such charges, losses or consequences but the providing entity does not know what they are.
- (4) The regulations may provide either or both of the following:
- (a) that this section does not apply in relation to a financial product or a class of financial products;
  - (b) that this section does not require the provision of information of a particular kind, whether generally or in relation to a particular situation, financial product or class of financial products.
- (5) In this section:

*MySuper product* has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**947E Statement of Advice not to be combined with Financial Services Guide or Product Disclosure Statement**

A Statement of Advice must not be combined in a single document with a Financial Services Guide or a Product Disclosure Statement.

**Subdivision E—Other matters**

**948A Qualified privilege if providing entity complies with this Division**

The providing entity has qualified privilege in respect of a statement made to the client, whether orally or in writing, in the course of, or in connection with, providing the advice if the providing entity has complied with all material requirements of this Division in relation to the advice.

## Division 4—Other disclosure requirements

### 949A General advice provided to retail client—obligation to warn client that advice does not take account of client's objectives, financial situation or needs

- (1) This section applies in relation to the provision of general advice if:
  - (a) the advice is provided:
    - (i) by a financial services licensee (the *providing entity*); or
    - (ii) by an authorised representative (the *providing entity*) of a financial services licensee, or of 2 or more financial services licensees; and
  - (b) the advice is provided to a person (the *client*) as a retail client; and
  - (c) the advice is not provided in circumstances specified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.
- (2) The providing entity must, in accordance with subsection (3), warn the client that:
  - (a) the advice has been prepared without taking account of the client's objectives, financial situation or needs; and
  - (b) because of that, the client should, before acting on the advice, consider the appropriateness of the advice, having regard to the client's objectives, financial situation and needs; and
  - (c) if the advice relates to the acquisition, or possible acquisition, of a particular financial product—the client should:
    - (i) if the product is not a CGS depository interest—obtain a Product Disclosure Statement (see Division 2 of Part 7.9) relating to the product and consider the Statement before making any decision about whether to acquire the product; or
    - (ii) if the product is a CGS depository interest—obtain each information statement (see Division 5C of Part 7.9) for the class of CGS depository interests that includes the



Section 949B

---

product and consider the statement before making any decision about whether to acquire the product.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) The warning must be given to the client at the same time as the advice is provided and by the same means as the advice is provided.
- (4) In any proceedings against an authorised representative of a financial services licensee for an offence based on subsection (1), it is a defence if:
  - (a) the licensee had provided the authorised representative with information or instructions about the requirements to be complied with in relation to the giving of personal advice; and
  - (b) the representative's failure to comply with subsection (1) occurred because the representative was acting in reliance on that information or those instructions; and
  - (c) the representative's reliance on that information or those instructions was reasonable.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (4). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (5) A financial services licensee must take reasonable steps to ensure that an authorised representative of the licensee complies with subsection (2).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**949B Regulations may impose disclosure requirements in certain situations**

- (1) The regulations may impose disclosure requirements, or additional disclosure requirements, to be complied with in any of the following situations:
  - (a) a financial service related to a risk insurance product or an investment life insurance product is provided to a person as a

Section 949B

---

retail client by a financial services licensee, or an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, acting under a binder;

- (b) a financial services licensee, or an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, arranges for a person's instructions to be carried out through a financial market or a clearing and settlement facility (whether inside or outside Australia) that is not a licensed market or a licensed CS facility;
  - (d) a financial service is provided by a person who does not need an Australian financial services licence because the person is covered by an exemption under paragraph 911A(2)(k) or (l);
  - (e) a financial service is provided to a person as a wholesale client.
- (2) A person to whom regulations made for the purposes of subsection (1) apply must comply with any applicable requirements in those regulations.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) In any proceedings against an authorised representative of a financial services licensee for an offence based on subsection (2), it is a defence if:
- (a) the licensee had provided the authorised representative with information or instructions about the requirements to be complied with in relation to the matter dealt with in the requirement in the regulations; and
  - (b) the representative's failure to comply with the requirement in the regulations occurred because the representative was acting in reliance on that information or those instructions; and
  - (c) the representative's reliance on that information or those instructions was reasonable.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (4) A financial services licensee must take reasonable steps to ensure that an authorised representative of the licensee complies with subsection (2).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

## Division 6—Miscellaneous

### 951A Part cannot be contracted out of

A condition of a contract for the acquisition of a financial product, or for the provision of a financial service, is void if it provides that a party to the contract is:

- (a) required or bound to waive compliance with any requirement of this Part; or
- (b) taken to have notice of any contract, document or matter not specifically referred to in a Financial Services Guide, Statement of Advice or other document given to the party.

### 951B Exemptions and modifications by ASIC

- (1) ASIC may:
  - (a) exempt a person or a class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial product or class of financial products from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (c) declare that this Part applies in relation to a person or a financial product, or a class of persons or financial products, as if specified provisions of this Part were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the declaration.
- (3) An exemption may apply unconditionally or subject to specified conditions. A person to whom a condition specified in an exemption applies must comply with the condition. The Court may order the person to comply with the condition in a specified way. Only ASIC may apply to the Court for the order.
- (4) An exemption or declaration must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.
- (5) If conduct (including an omission) of a person would not have constituted an offence if a particular declaration under paragraph (1)(c) had not been made, that conduct does not

constitute an offence unless, before the conduct occurred (in addition to complying with the gazettal requirement of subsection (4)):

- (a) the text of the declaration was made available by ASIC on the internet; or
- (b) ASIC gave written notice setting out the text of the declaration to the person.

In a prosecution for an offence to which this subsection applies, the prosecution must prove that paragraph (a) or (b) was complied with before the conduct occurred.

- (6) For the purpose of this section, the *provisions of this Part* include:
  - (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

Note: Because of section 761H, a reference to this Part or Part 10.2 also includes a reference to regulations or other instruments made for the purposes of this Part or Part 10.2 (as the case requires).

### **951C Exemptions and modifications by regulations**

- (1) The regulations may:
  - (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial product or a class of financial products from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (c) provide that this Part applies as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (2) For the purpose of this section, the *provisions of this Part* include:
  - (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

## Division 7—Enforcement

### Subdivision A—Offences

#### 952A Overview

This Subdivision contains provisions creating offences by references to various rules contained in preceding Divisions of this Part. However, it does not create all the offences relating to those rules, as some offences are created by subsection 1311(1). Where offences are created by subsection 1311(1) in relation to a rule, this is indicated by a note at the end of the provision containing the rule.

#### 952B Definitions

(1) In this Subdivision:

*defective*, in relation to a disclosure document or statement, means:

- (a) if the disclosure document or statement is a Financial Services Guide, a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, or is information or a statement required by subsection 941C(5), 941C(7) or 941D(2):
  - (i) there is a misleading or deceptive statement in the disclosure document or statement; or
  - (ii) if it is a Financial Services Guide—there is an omission from the Financial Services Guide of material required by section 942B or 942C; or
  - (iii) if it is a Supplementary Financial Services Guide that is given for the purposes of paragraph 941F(d)—there is an omission from the Supplementary Financial Services Guide of material required by that paragraph; or
  - (iv) if it is information or a statement required by subsection 941C(5), 941C(7) or 941D(2)—there is an omission from the document or statement of material required by that subsection;

Section 952B

---

being a statement, or an omission, that is or would be materially adverse from the point of view of a reasonable person considering whether to proceed to be provided with the financial service concerned; or

- (b) if the disclosure document or statement is a Statement of Advice, or is information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2):
- (i) there is a misleading or deceptive statement in the disclosure document or statement; or
  - (ii) if it is a Statement of Advice—there is an omission from the Statement of advice of material required by section 947B, 947C or 947D; or
  - (iii) if it is information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2)—there is an omission from the information, statement or copy of material required by that subsection or section;

being a statement, or an omission, that is or would be materially adverse from the point of view of a reasonable person considering whether to act in reliance on the advice concerned.

Note: In determining whether a Financial Services Guide is defective, the effect of section 943D must be taken into account (section 943D takes information and statements in a Supplementary Financial Services Guide to be included in the Financial Services Guide it supplements).

***disclosure document or statement*** means:

- (a) a Financial Services Guide; or
- (b) a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; or
- (c) a Statement of Advice; or
- (d) information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2).

- (1A) For the avoidance of doubt, if section 941E (information must be up to date) is not complied with in relation to a Financial Services

Section 952C

---

Guide, then, for the purposes of the definition of *defective* in subsection (1):

- (a) if the circumstance constituting the non-compliance is that particular information included in the Financial Services Guide is not as up to date as section 941E requires it to be—the information so included constitutes a misleading statement in the Financial Services Guide; and
- (b) if the circumstance constituting the non-compliance is a failure to include particular information that was not previously required to be included in the Financial Services Guide—the failure to include the information constitutes an omission from the Statement of material required by section 942B or 942C.

Note 1: The effect of section 943D (information in a Supplementary Financial Services Guide is taken to be contained in the Financial Services Guide it supplements) must be taken into account in determining whether section 941E is complied with in relation to a Financial Services Guide.

Note 2: Whether the inclusion of out of date information, or the failure to include information, results in the Financial Services Guide being *defective* as defined in subsection (1) depends on whether the materiality test set out in that definition is satisfied.

- (2) In this Subdivision, a reference (including in the definitions in subsection (1)) to a document or statement of a kind referred to in a paragraph of the definition of *disclosure document or statement* in subsection (1) includes a reference to something purporting to be a document or statement of that kind.

### 952C Offence of failing to give a disclosure document or statement

#### *Strict liability offence*

- (1) A person (the *providing entity*) commits an offence if:
  - (a) the providing entity is required by a provision of this Part to give another person a disclosure document or statement (the *required disclosure document or statement*); and
  - (b) the providing entity does not give (within the meaning of section 940C) the other person anything purporting to be the



required disclosure document or statement by the time they are required to do so.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (2) An offence based on subsection (1) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

*Ordinary offence*

- (3) A person (the *providing entity*) commits an offence if:
- (a) the providing entity is required by a provision of this Part to give another person a disclosure document or statement (the *required disclosure document or statement*); and
  - (b) the providing entity does not give (within the meaning of section 940C) the other person anything purporting to be the required disclosure document or statement by the time they are required to do so.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

*Defence for authorised representative*

- (4) In any proceedings against an authorised representative of a financial services licensee for an offence based on subsection (1) or (3), it is a defence if:
- (a) the licensee had provided the representative with information or instructions about the giving of disclosure documents or statements; and
  - (b) the representative's failure to give the required disclosure document or statement occurred because the representative was acting in reliance on that information or those instructions; and
  - (c) the representative's reliance on that information or those instructions was reasonable.

Section 952D

---

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (4). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

**952D Offence of giving a disclosure document or statement knowing it to be defective**

- (1) A person (the *providing entity*), being a financial services licensee, commits an offence if:
- (a) the providing entity:
    - (i) gives (see subsection (3)) another person a disclosure document or statement in circumstances in which the document or statement is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the other person; or
    - (ii) is a financial services licensee and gives (see subsection (3)), or makes available to, another person a disclosure document or statement, being a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, reckless as to whether the other person will or may rely on the information in it; and
  - (b) the providing entity knows that the disclosure document or statement is defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (2) An authorised representative of a financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the representative:
    - (i) gives (see subsection (3)) a person a disclosure document or statement in circumstances in which the document or statement is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the person; or
    - (ii) gives (see subsection (3)), or makes available to, a person a disclosure document or statement, being a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, reckless as to whether the person will or may rely on the information in it; and

Section 952E

---

- (b) the representative knows that the disclosure document or statement is defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) In this section, **give** means give by any means (including orally), and is not limited to the meaning it has because of section 940C.

**952E Offence of giving a defective disclosure document or statement (whether or not known to be defective)**

- (1) A person (the **providing entity**), being a financial services licensee, commits an offence if:

- (a) the providing entity:

- (i) gives (see subsection (7)) another person a disclosure document or statement in circumstances in which the document or statement is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the other person; or
- (ii) is a financial services licensee and gives (see subsection (7)), or makes available to, another person a disclosure document or statement, being a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, reckless as to whether the other person will or may rely on the information in it; and

- (b) the disclosure document or statement is defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (2) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (1), strict liability applies to the physical element of the offence specified in paragraph (1)(b).

Note: For **strict liability**, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) An authorised representative of a financial services licensee commits an offence if:

Section 952E

---

- (a) the representative gives (see subsection (7)) a person a disclosure document or statement, being a Statement of Advice, or information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2), in circumstances in which the document or statement is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the person; and
- (b) the disclosure document or statement is defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (4) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (3), strict liability applies to the physical element of the offence specified in paragraph (3)(b).

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

- (5) In any proceedings against a person for an offence based on subsection (1) or (3), it is a defence if the person took reasonable steps to ensure that the disclosure document or statement would not be defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (5). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (6) In any proceedings against a person for an offence based on subsection (3), it is a defence if the disclosure document or statement:

- (a) was provided to the person by a financial services licensee for whom they were, at that time, an authorised representative; or
- (b) was defective because of information, or an omission from information, provided to them by a financial services licensee for whom they were, at that time, an authorised representative.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (6). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (7) In this section, *give* means give by any means (including orally), and is not limited to the meaning it has because of section 940C.

**952F Offences of financial services licensee knowingly providing defective disclosure material to an authorised representative**

- (1) For the purposes of this section, a financial services licensee *provides disclosure material* to an authorised representative of the licensee if:
- (a) the licensee authorises the distribution by the representative of a disclosure document or statement, being a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; or
  - (b) the licensee provides the representative with a disclosure document or statement, being a Statement of Advice, or information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2); or
  - (c) the licensee provides the representative with information:
    - (i) for the purpose of it being included by the representative in a disclosure document or statement, being a Statement of Advice, or information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2); or
    - (ii) knowing that it is likely that it will be so included in such a document.
- (2) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee provides disclosure material (being a disclosure document or statement) to an authorised representative of the licensee as mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) or (b); and
  - (b) the licensee knows that the disclosure document or statement is defective.
- (3) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:

Section 952G

---

- (a) the licensee provides disclosure material (being information) to an authorised representative of the licensee as mentioned in paragraph (1)(c); and
  - (b) the licensee knows that, if the information is included by the representative as mentioned in that paragraph, the disclosure document or statement concerned will be defective.
- (4) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee provides disclosure material (being information) to an authorised representative of the licensee as mentioned in paragraph (1)(c); and
  - (b) the information relates to a matter or matters, but the licensee knows that it is only some of the information relating to the matter or matters that the disclosure document or statement concerned is required to contain; and
  - (c) the licensee is reckless as to whether the representative will or may prepare the disclosure document or statement on the basis that the information is all the information relating to the matter or matters that the disclosure document or statement is required to contain.

**952G Offences of financial services licensee providing disclosure material to an authorised representative (whether or not known to be defective)**

- (1) For the purposes of this section, a financial services licensee *provides disclosure material* to an authorised representative of the licensee if:
- (a) the licensee authorises the distribution by the representative of a disclosure document or statement, being a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; or
  - (b) the licensee provides the representative with a disclosure document or statement, being a Statement of Advice, or information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2); or

- (c) the licensee provides the representative with information:
- (i) for the purpose of it being included by the representative in a disclosure document or statement, being a Statement of Advice, or information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2); or
  - (ii) knowing that it is likely that it will be so included in such a document.
- (2) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee provides disclosure material (being a disclosure document or statement) to an authorised representative of the licensee as mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) or (b); and
  - (b) the disclosure document or statement is defective in a respect that does not relate to material required to be in the document or statement only because the representative is also the authorised representative of another financial services licensee.
- (3) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (2), strict liability applies to the physical element of the offence specified in paragraph (2)(b).
- Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.
- (4) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee provides disclosure material (being information) to an authorised representative of the licensee as mentioned in paragraph (1)(c); and
  - (b) the authorised representative includes the information in the disclosure document or statement concerned; and
  - (c) the disclosure document or statement is defective because it includes that information (whether or not it is also defective for other reasons).
- (5) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (4), strict liability applies to the physical element of the offence specified in paragraph (4)(c).
-

Section 952G

---

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

- (6) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee provides disclosure material (being information) to an authorised representative of the licensee as mentioned in paragraph (1)(c); and
  - (b) the information relates to a matter or matters, but it is only some of the information relating to the matter or matters that the disclosure document or statement concerned is required to contain; and
  - (c) the representative prepares the disclosure document or statement on the basis that the information is all the information relating to the matter or matters that the disclosure document or statement is required to contain; and
  - (d) the disclosure document or statement is defective because it includes only that information about the matter or matters (whether or not it is also defective for other reasons).
- (7) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (6), strict liability applies to the physical elements of the offence specified in paragraphs (6)(b) and (d).

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

- (8) In any proceedings against a person for an offence based on subsection (2), it is a defence if the person took reasonable steps to ensure that the disclosure document or statement would not be defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (8). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (9) In any proceedings against a person for an offence based on subsection (4), it is a defence if the person took reasonable steps to ensure that the information they provided would not be such as to make the disclosure document or statement defective.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (9). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.



- (10) In any proceedings against a person for an offence based on subsection (6), it is a defence if the person took reasonable steps to ensure that the information they provided about the matter or matters would be all the information about the matter or matters that the disclosure document or statement would be required to contain.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (10). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

**952H Offence of financial services licensee failing to ensure authorised representative gives disclosure documents or statements as required**

A financial services licensee commits an offence if the licensee does not take reasonable steps to ensure that an authorised representative of the licensee:

- (a) complies with their obligations under this Part to give disclosure documents or statements as and when required; and
- (b) without limiting paragraph (a), does not, in purported compliance with obligations under this Part, give disclosure documents or statements that are defective.

**952I Offences if a Financial Services Guide (or Supplementary FSG) does not comply with certain requirements**

- (1) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee:
    - (i) gives (see subsection (6)) a person a Financial Services Guide in circumstances in which it is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the person; or
    - (ii) gives (see subsection (6)), or makes available to, a person a Financial Services Guide, reckless as to whether the person will or may rely on the information in it; and

**Section 952I**

---

- (b) the Financial Services Guide does not comply with section 942A, subsection 942B(5) or 942DA(3) or paragraph 942E(b).

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (2) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the financial services licensee authorises the distribution of a Financial Services Guide by an authorised representative of the licensee; and
  - (b) the Financial Services Guide does not comply with section 942A, subsection 942B(5) or 942DA(3) or paragraph 942E(b).

- (3) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the licensee:
    - (i) gives (see subsection (6)) a person a Supplementary Financial Services Guide in circumstances in which it is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the person; or
    - (ii) gives (see subsection (6)), or makes available to, a person a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, reckless as to whether the person will or may rely on the information in it; and
  - (b) the Supplementary Financial Services Guide does not comply with section 943B or 943C.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (4) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the financial services licensee authorises the distribution of a Supplementary Financial Services Guide by an authorised representative of the licensee; and
  - (b) the Supplementary Financial Services Guide does not comply with section 943B or 943C.

Section 952J

---

- (5) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (1), (2), (3) or (4), strict liability applies to paragraph (b) of that subsection.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

- (6) In this section, *give* means give by any means (including orally), and is not limited to the meaning it has because of section 940C.

**952J Offence if a Statement of Advice does not comply with certain requirements**

- (1) A financial services licensee, or an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, commits an offence if:
- (a) the licensee or representative gives (see subsection (3)) a person a Statement of Advice in circumstances in which it is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the person; and
  - (b) the Statement of Advice does not comply with section 947A or 947E.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (2) For the purposes of an offence based on subsection (1), strict liability applies to paragraph (b) of that subsection.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) In this section, *give* means give by any means (including orally), and is not limited to the meaning it has because of section 940C.

**952K Offence if authorised representative gives out unauthorised Financial Services Guide (or Supplementary FSG)**

An authorised representative of a financial services licensee commits an offence if:

- (a) the representative:
  - (i) gives a person a Financial Services Guide, or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, in

Section 952L

---

circumstances in which it is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the person; or

- (ii) gives, or makes available to, a person a Financial Services Guide, or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, reckless as to whether the person will or may rely on the information in it; and
- (b) the licensee has not authorised the distribution by the representative of the Financial Services Guide or the Supplementary Financial Services Guide.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsections 941C(1), (2) and (3). See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

**952L Offences if financial services licensee or authorised representative becomes aware that a Financial Services Guide (or Supplementary FSG) is defective**

- (1) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the licensee has authorised an authorised representative of the licensee to distribute a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; and
  - (b) the licensee becomes aware that the Financial Services Guide, or the Supplementary Financial Services Guide, is defective; and
  - (c) the licensee does not, as soon as practicable, give the representative a direction that satisfies one or more of the following subparagraphs:
    - (i) a direction not to distribute the Financial Services Guide or the Supplementary Financial Services Guide;
    - (ii) a direction not to distribute the Financial Services Guide unless it is accompanied by a Supplementary Financial Services Guide that corrects the deficiency;
    - (iii) a direction not to distribute the Financial Services Guide or the Supplementary Financial Services Guide without first altering it in a way that is specified in the direction, being a way that corrects the deficiency and that complies with section 942E or 943F.

- (2) An authorised representative commits an offence if:
  - (a) the representative is given a direction under subsection (1); and
  - (b) the representative does not comply with the direction.
- (3) An authorised representative of a financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the licensee has authorised the representative to distribute a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; and
  - (b) the representative becomes aware that the Financial Services Guide, or the Supplementary Financial Services Guide, is defective; and
  - (c) the representative does not, as soon as practicable, notify the licensee of the particulars of the deficiency.
- (4) In this section, a reference to **distributing** a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide includes (but is not limited to) giving or reading the document or statement to another person in purported compliance with a requirement of this Part.

### **952M Offence of unauthorised alteration of Financial Services Guide or Supplementary Financial Services Guide**

A person commits an offence if:

- (a) the person engages in conduct that results in an alteration of a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide that:
  - (i) has been prepared by or on behalf of a particular financial services licensee; or
  - (ii) the distribution of which by the person has been authorised by a particular financial services licensee;and
- (b) the alteration results in the Financial Services Guide or Supplementary Financial Services Guide becoming defective, or more defective than it previously was; and

Section 953A

---

- (c) the alteration is not made with the authority of the licensee;  
and
- (d) the person, in purported compliance with a provision of this Part, gives the altered Financial Services Guide or Supplementary Financial Services Guide to another person.

**Subdivision B—Civil liability**

**953A Definitions**

- (1) In this Subdivision:

*defective*, in relation to a disclosure document or statement, means:

- (a) if the disclosure document or statement is a Financial Services Guide, a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, or is information or a statement required by subsection 941C(5), 941C(7) or 941D(2):
  - (i) there is a misleading or deceptive statement in the disclosure document or statement; or
  - (ii) if it is a Financial Services Guide—there is an omission from the Financial Services Guide of material required by section 942B or 942C; or
  - (iii) if it is a Supplementary Financial Services Guide that is given for the purposes of paragraph 941F(d)—there is an omission from the Supplementary Financial Services Guide of material required by that paragraph; or
  - (iv) if it is information or a statement required by subsection 941C(5), 941C(7) or 941D(2)—there is an omission from the document or statement of material required by that subsection; or
- (b) if the disclosure document or statement is a Statement of Advice, or is information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2):
  - (i) there is a misleading or deceptive statement in the disclosure document or statement; or

Section 953A

---

- (ii) if it is a Statement of Advice—there is an omission from the Statement of Advice of material required by section 947B, 947C or 947D; or
- (iii) if it is information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2)—there is an omission from the information, statement or copy of material required by that subsection or section.

Note: In determining whether a Financial Services Guide is defective, the effect of section 943D must be taken into account (section 943D takes information and statements in a Supplementary Financial Services Guide to be included in the Financial Services Guide it supplements).

**disclosure document or statement** means:

- (a) a Financial Services Guide; or
  - (b) a Supplementary Financial Services Guide; or
  - (c) a Statement of Advice; or
  - (d) information, a statement or a copy of a record required by subsection 941C(5) or (7), 941D(2), 946AA(5), 946B(3), (6) or (8) or 946C(2).
- (1A) For the avoidance of doubt, if section 941E (information must be up to date) is not complied with in relation to a Financial Services Guide, then, for the purposes of the definition of **defective** in subsection (1):
- (a) if the circumstance constituting the non-compliance is that particular information included in the Financial Services Guide is not as up to date as section 941E requires it to be—the information so included constitutes a misleading statement in the Financial Services Guide; and
  - (b) if the circumstance constituting the non-compliance is a failure to include particular information that was not previously required to be included in the Financial Services Guide—the failure to include the information constitutes an omission from the Statement of material required by section 942B or 942C.

Note: The effect of section 943D (information in a Supplementary Financial Services Guide is taken to be contained in the Financial Services

Section 953B

---

Guide it supplements) must be taken into account in determining whether section 941E is complied with in relation to a Financial Services Guide.

- (2) In this Subdivision, a reference (including in the definitions in subsection (1)) to a document or statement of a kind referred to in a paragraph of the definition of **disclosure document or statement** in subsection (1) includes a reference to something purporting to be a document or statement of that kind.

**953B Civil action for loss or damage**

- (1) This section applies in the following situations:

(a) a person:

- (i) is required by a provision of this Part to give another person (the **client**) a disclosure document or statement (the **required disclosure document or statement**); and
- (ii) does not give (within the meaning of section 940C) the client anything purporting to be the required disclosure document or statement by the time they are required to do so; or

(b) a person:

- (i) gives another person (the **client**) a disclosure document or statement that is defective in circumstances in which a disclosure document or statement is required by a provision of this Part to be given to the client; or
- (ii) is a financial services licensee and gives, or makes available to, another person (the **client**) a disclosure document or statement, being a Financial Services Guide or a Supplementary Financial Services Guide, that is defective, reckless as to whether the client will or may rely on the information in it; or

(c) a person contravenes section 949A or 949B.

In paragraph (b), **give** means give by any means (including orally), and is not limited to the meaning it has because of section 940C.

- (2) In a situation to which this section applies, if a person suffers loss or damage:



- (a) if paragraph (1)(a) applies—because the client was not given the disclosure document or statement that they should have been given; or
  - (b) if paragraph (1)(b) applies—because the disclosure document or statement the client was given was defective; or
  - (c) if paragraph (1)(c) applies—because of the contravention referred to in that paragraph;
- the person may, subject to subsection (6), recover the amount of the loss or damage by action against the, or a, liable person (see subsections (3) and (4)), whether or not that person (or anyone else) has been convicted of an offence in respect of the matter referred to in paragraph (a), (b) or (c).
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), the, or a, **liable person** is:
    - (a) if the person first-referred to in paragraph (1)(a), (b) or (c) is a financial services licensee—subject to subsection (4), that person; or
    - (b) if the person first-referred to in paragraph (1)(a), (b) or (c) is an authorised representative of only one financial services licensee—that financial services licensee; or
    - (c) if the person first-referred to in paragraph (1)(a), (b) or (c) is an authorised representative of more than one financial services licensee:
      - (i) if, under the rules in section 917C, one of those licensees is responsible for the person’s conduct—that licensee; or
      - (ii) if, under the rules in section 917C, 2 or more of those licensees are jointly and severally responsible for the person’s conduct—each of those licensees.
  - (3A) For the purposes of paragraph (3)(c):
    - (a) section 917C is taken to apply, despite section 917F; and
    - (b) section 917D is taken not to apply.
  - (4) If:
    - (a) paragraph (1)(b) applies; and

**Section 953C**

---

- (b) an alteration was made to the disclosure document or statement before it was given to the client; and
- (c) the alteration made the disclosure document or statement defective, or more defective than it would otherwise have been; and
- (d) the alteration was not made by, or with the authority of, the person who would, but for this subsection, be the liable person because of paragraph (3)(a);

then, so far as a person has suffered loss or damage because the disclosure document or statement was defective because of the alteration, the liable person is the person who made the alteration, rather than the person referred to in paragraph (d).

- (5) An action under subsection (2) may be begun at any time within 6 years after the day on which the cause of action arose.
- (6) A person is not liable under subsection (2) in a situation described in paragraph (1)(b) if the person took reasonable steps to ensure that the disclosure document or statement would not be defective.
- (7) This section does not affect any liability that a person has under any other law.

**953C Additional powers of court to make orders**

- (1) The court dealing with an action under subsection 953B(2) may, in addition to awarding loss or damage under that subsection and if it thinks it necessary in order to do justice between the parties:
  - (a) make an order declaring void a contract entered into by the client referred to in that subsection for or relating to a financial product or a financial service; and
  - (b) if it makes an order under paragraph (a)—make such other order or orders as it thinks are necessary or desirable because of that order.
- (2) Without limiting paragraph (1)(b), an order under that paragraph may include an order for the return of money paid by a person,

and/or an order for payment of an amount of interest specified in,  
or calculated in accordance with, the order.

## Part 7.7A—Best interests obligations and remuneration

### Division 1—Preliminary

#### 960 Definitions

In this Part:

*asset-based fee* has the meaning given by section 964F.

*basic banking product* has the meaning given by section 961F.

*conflicted remuneration* has the meaning given by section 963A, as affected by sections 963B, 963C and 963D.

*consumer credit insurance* has the same meaning as in the *Insurance Contracts Act 1984*.

*custodian*, in relation to a registrable superannuation entity, has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

*disclosure day* has the meaning given by section 962J.

*fee disclosure statement* has the meaning given by subsection 962H(1).

*fee recipient* has the meaning given by section 962C.

*group life policy for members of a superannuation entity* has the meaning given by subsection 963B(2).

*life policy for a member of a default superannuation fund* has the meaning given by subsection 963B(3).

*ongoing fee* has the meaning given by section 962B.

*ongoing fee arrangement* has the meaning given by section 962A.

Section 960A

---

**reasonable investigation** has a meaning affected by section 961D.

**reasonably apparent:**

- (a) in Division 2—has the meaning given by section 961C; and
- (b) in Subdivision B of Division 5—has the meaning given by section 964H.

**registrable superannuation entity** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**regulated superannuation fund** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**renewal notice** has the meaning given by subsection 962K(2).

**renewal notice day** has the meaning given by subsection 962L(1).

**renewal period** has the meaning given by subsection 962L(2).

**representative** of a financial services licensee has the same meaning as in Part 7.6 (see section 910A).

**responsible licensee**, in relation to a contravention of a provision of this Part, has the meaning given by section 961P.

**RSE licensee** has the same meaning as in the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993*.

**volume-based shelf-space fee** has a meaning affected by section 964A.

## **960A No contracting out**

A condition of a contract or other arrangement is void if it provides that a party to the contract is required or bound to waive any right under this Part, or waive the compliance with any requirement of this Part.

Section 960B

---

**960B Obligations under this Part in addition to other obligations**

The obligations imposed on a person under this Part are in addition to any other obligations to which the person is subject under this Act or any other law.

## **Division 2—Best interests obligations**

### **Subdivision A—Preliminary**

#### **961 Application of this Division**

- (1) This Division applies in relation to the provision of personal advice (the *advice*) to a person (the *client*) as a retail client.
- (2) The individual who is to provide the advice is referred to in this Division as the *provider*.
- (3) If 2 or more individuals are to provide the advice, each of those individuals is referred to in this Division as the *provider*.
- (4) An individual is a *provider* for the purposes of this Division even if the individual is a representative of a financial services licensee and is to provide the advice on behalf of that licensee.
- (5) If it is not reasonably possible to identify the individual who is to, or individuals who are to, provide the advice, the person who is to provide the advice is the *provider* for the purposes of this Division.
- (6) A person who offers personal advice through a computer program is taken to be the person who is to provide the advice, and is the *provider* for the purposes of this Division.

#### **961A Application to a financial services licensee acting as an authorised representative**

If a financial services licensee is acting as an authorised representative of another financial services licensee in relation to the advice, this Division applies to the first licensee in relation to the advice in that licensee's capacity as an authorised representative (rather than in the capacity of licensee).

Section 961B

---

**Subdivision B—Provider must act in the best interests of the client**

**961B Provider must act in the best interests of the client**

- (1) The provider must act in the best interests of the client in relation to the advice.
- (2) The provider satisfies the duty in subsection (1), if the provider proves that the provider has done each of the following:
  - (a) identified the objectives, financial situation and needs of the client that were disclosed to the provider by the client through instructions;
  - (b) identified:
    - (i) the subject matter of the advice that has been sought by the client (whether explicitly or implicitly); and
    - (ii) the objectives, financial situation and needs of the client that would reasonably be considered as relevant to advice sought on that subject matter (the *client's relevant circumstances*);
  - (c) where it was reasonably apparent that information relating to the client's relevant circumstances was incomplete or inaccurate, made reasonable inquiries to obtain complete and accurate information;
  - (d) assessed whether the provider has the expertise required to provide the client advice on the subject matter sought and, if not, declined to provide the advice;
  - (e) if, in considering the subject matter of the advice sought, it would be reasonable to consider recommending a financial product:
    - (i) conducted a reasonable investigation into the financial products that might achieve those of the objectives and meet those of the needs of the client that would reasonably be considered as relevant to advice on that subject matter; and
    - (ii) assessed the information gathered in the investigation;



- (f) based all judgements in advising the client on the client's relevant circumstances;
- (g) taken any other step that, at the time the advice is provided, would reasonably be regarded as being in the best interests of the client, given the client's relevant circumstances.

Note: The matters that must be proved under subsection (2) relate to the subject matter of the advice sought by the client and the circumstances of the client relevant to that subject matter (the client's relevant circumstances). That subject matter and the client's relevant circumstances may be broad or narrow, and so the subsection anticipates that a client may seek scaled advice and that the inquiries made by the provider will be tailored to the advice sought.

*Advice given by Australian ADIs—best interests duty satisfied if certain steps are taken*

- (3) If:
  - (a) the provider is:
    - (i) an agent or employee of an Australian ADI; or
    - (ii) otherwise acting by arrangement with an Australian ADI under the name of the Australian ADI; and
  - (b) the subject matter of the advice sought by the client relates only to the following:
    - (i) a basic banking product;
    - (ii) a general insurance product;
    - (iii) consumer credit insurance;
    - (iv) a combination of any of those products;

the provider satisfies the duty in subsection (1) in relation to the advice given in relation to the basic banking product and the general insurance product if the provider takes the steps mentioned in paragraphs (2)(a), (b) and (c).

*General insurance products—best interests duty satisfied if certain steps are taken*

- (4) To the extent that the subject matter of the advice sought by the client is a general insurance product, the provider satisfies the duty

Section 961C

---

in subsection (1) if the provider takes the steps mentioned in paragraphs (2)(a), (b) and (c).

*Regulations*

- (5) The regulations may prescribe:
- (a) a step, in addition to or substitution for the steps mentioned in subsection (2), that the provider must, in prescribed circumstances, prove that the provider has taken, to satisfy the duty in subsection (1); or
  - (b) that the provider is not required, in prescribed circumstances, to prove that the provider has taken a step mentioned in subsection (2), to satisfy the duty in subsection (1); or
  - (c) circumstances in which the duty in subsection (1) does not apply.

**961C When is something *reasonably apparent*?**

Something is *reasonably apparent* if it would be apparent to a person with a reasonable level of expertise in the subject matter of the advice that has been sought by the client, were that person exercising care and objectively assessing the information given to the provider by the client.

**961D What is a *reasonable investigation*?**

- (1) A *reasonable investigation* into the financial products that might achieve those of the objectives and meet those of the needs of the client that would reasonably be considered relevant to advice on the subject matter sought by the client does not require an investigation into every financial product available.
- (2) However, if the client requests the provider to consider a specified financial product, a reasonable investigation into the financial products that might achieve those of the objectives and meet those of the needs of the client that would reasonably be considered relevant to advice on the subject matter sought by the client includes an investigation into that financial product.

**961E What would reasonably be regarded as in the best interests of the client?**

It would reasonably be regarded as in the best interests of the client to take a step, if a person with a reasonable level of expertise in the subject matter of the advice that has been sought by the client, exercising care and objectively assessing the client's relevant circumstances, would regard it as in the best interests of the client, given the client's relevant circumstances, to take that step.

**961F What is a *basic banking product*?**

Each of the following is a *basic banking product*:

- (a) a basic deposit product;
- (b) a facility for making non-cash payments (see section 763D);
- (d) a facility for providing traveller's cheques;
- (e) any other product prescribed by regulations for the purposes of this paragraph.

**Subdivision C—Resulting advice must be appropriate to the client**

**961G Resulting advice must be appropriate to the client**

The provider must only provide the advice to the client if it would be reasonable to conclude that the advice is appropriate to the client, had the provider satisfied the duty under section 961B to act in the best interests of the client.

Note: A responsible licensee or an authorised representative may contravene a civil penalty provision if a provider fails to comply with this section (see sections 961K and 961Q). The provider may be subject to a banning order (see section 920A).

Section 961H

---

**Subdivision D—Where resulting advice still based on incomplete or inaccurate information**

**961H Resulting advice still based on incomplete or inaccurate information**

- (1) If it is reasonably apparent that information relating to the objectives, financial situation and needs of the client on which the advice is based is incomplete or inaccurate, the provider must, in accordance with subsections (2) and (3), warn the client that:
  - (a) the advice is, or may be, based on incomplete or inaccurate information relating to the client's relevant personal circumstances; and
  - (b) because of that, the client should, before acting on the advice, consider the appropriateness of the advice, having regard to the client's objectives, financial situation and needs.
- (2) The warning must be given to the client at the same time as the advice is provided and, subject to subsection (3), by the same means as the advice is provided.
- (3) If a Statement of Advice is the means by which the advice is provided, or is given to the client at the same time as the advice is provided, the warning may be given by including it in the Statement of Advice.

Note: The Statement of Advice must at least contain a record of the warning (see paragraphs 947B(2)(f) and 947C(2)(g)).

- (4) If 2 or more individuals provide the advice and one of those individuals provides a warning in accordance with this section, the other individuals are taken to have complied with this section.
- (5) Nothing in this section affects the duty of the provider under section 961B to make reasonable inquiries to obtain complete and accurate information.

Note: A responsible licensee or an authorised representative may contravene a civil penalty provision if a provider fails to comply with this section (see sections 961K and 961Q). The provider may be subject to a banning order (see section 920A).

**Subdivision E—Provider to give priority to the client’s interests**

**961J Conflict between client’s interests and those of provider, licensee, authorised representative or associates**

- (1) If the provider knows, or reasonably ought to know, that there is a conflict between the interests of the client and the interests of:
- (a) the provider; or
  - (b) an associate of the provider; or
  - (c) a financial services licensee of whom the provider is a representative; or
  - (d) an associate of a financial services licensee of whom the provider is a representative; or
  - (e) an authorised representative who has authorised the provider, under subsection 916B(3), to provide a specified financial service or financial services on behalf of a financial services licensee; or
  - (f) an associate of an authorised representative who has authorised the provider, under subsection 916B(3), to provide a specified financial service or financial services on behalf of a financial services licensee;

the provider must give priority to the client’s interests when giving the advice.

Note: A responsible licensee or an authorised representative may contravene a civil penalty provision if a provider fails to comply with this section (see sections 961K and 961Q). The provider may be subject to a banning order (see section 920A).

- (2) If:
- (a) the provider is:
    - (i) an agent or employee of an Australian ADI; or
    - (ii) otherwise acting by arrangement with an Australian ADI under the name of the Australian ADI; and
  - (b) the subject matter of the advice sought by the client relates only to the following:
    - (i) a basic banking product;

## Section 961K

---

- (ii) a general insurance product;
  - (iii) consumer credit insurance;
  - (iv) a combination of any of those products;
- subsection (1) does not apply to the extent that the advice relates to a basic banking product or a general insurance product or a combination of those 2 products.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not apply to the extent that the subject matter of the advice sought by the client is a general insurance product.

## **Subdivision F—Responsibilities of licensees under this Division**

### **961K Civil penalty provision—sections 961B, 961G, 961H and 961J**

- (1) A financial services licensee contravenes this section if the licensee contravenes section 961B, 961G, 961H or 961J.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) A financial services licensee contravenes this section if:
- (a) a representative, other than an authorised representative, of the licensee contravenes section 961B, 961G, 961H or 961J; and
  - (b) the licensee is the, or a, responsible licensee in relation to that contravention.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

### **961L Licensees must ensure compliance**

A financial services licensee must take reasonable steps to ensure that representatives of the licensee comply with sections 961B, 961G, 961H and 961J.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

### **961M Civil action for loss or damage**

- (1) This section applies if the client suffers loss or damage because of a contravention of a provision of this Division.

- (2) A Court may order that one or more of the following persons compensate the client for the amount of the loss or damage:
- (a) if the person who contravenes the provision is a financial services licensee—that licensee;
  - (b) if the person who contravenes the provision is a representative of a financial services licensee, or 2 or more financial services licensees—the, or a, responsible licensee in relation to the contravention.
- (3) The Court may make the order under this section:
- (a) on its own initiative, during proceedings before the Court; or
  - (b) on the application of ASIC; or
  - (c) on the application of the client.
- (4) In determining the damage suffered by the client, the Court may include profits resulting from the contravention that are made by:
- (a) if the person who contravenes the provision is a financial services licensee—the licensee; or
  - (b) if the person who contravenes the provision is a representative of a financial services licensee, or 2 or more financial services licensees:
    - (i) the representative; and
    - (ii) where the Court's order under subsection (2) relates to a financial services licensee that is the, or a, responsible licensee in relation to the contravention—the licensee.
- (5) An order under this section may be made whether or not the licensee against whom the order is made (or anyone else) has been convicted of an offence, or been the subject of a civil penalty order, in respect of the matter.
- (6) An action to recover the amount of the loss or damage may be begun at any time within 6 years after the contravention.
- (7) An order under this section may be enforced as if it were a judgement of the Court.

Section 961N

---

- (8) This section does not affect any liability that a person has under any other law.

**961N Additional powers of Court to make orders**

- (1) The Court dealing with an action under subsection 961M(2) may, in addition to awarding loss or damage under that subsection and if it thinks it necessary in order to do justice between the parties:
- (a) make an order declaring void a contract entered into by the client for or relating to a financial product or a financial service; and
  - (b) if it makes an order under paragraph (a)—make such other order or orders as it thinks are necessary or desirable because of that order.
- (2) Without limiting paragraph (1)(b), an order under that paragraph may include either or both of the following:
- (a) an order for the return of money paid by a person;
  - (b) an order for the payment of an amount of interest specified in, or calculated in accordance with, the order.

**961P *Responsible licensee***

For the purposes of this Part, the, or a, ***responsible licensee***, in relation to a contravention of a provision of this Part, is:

- (a) if the person who contravenes the provision is a representative of only one financial services licensee—that financial services licensee; or
- (b) if the person who contravenes the provision is a representative of more than one financial services licensee:
  - (i) if, under the rules in section 917C, one of those licensees is responsible for the person’s conduct—that licensee; or
  - (ii) if, under the rules in section 917C, 2 or more of those licensees are jointly and severally responsible for the person’s conduct—each of those licensees.



**Subdivision G—Responsibilities of authorised representatives  
under this Division**

**961Q Civil penalty provision—sections 961B, 961G, 961H and 961J**

- (1) An authorised representative of a financial services licensee contravenes this section if the authorised representative contravenes section 961B, 961G, 961H or 961J.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if:
- (a) the licensee had provided the authorised representative with information or instructions about the requirements to be complied with in relation to the giving of personal advice; and
  - (b) the authorised representative's failure to comply with section 961B, 961G, 961H or 961J occurred because the representative was acting in reliance on that information or those instructions; and
  - (c) the representative's reliance on that information or those instructions was reasonable.

## Division 3—Charging ongoing fees to clients

### Subdivision A—Preliminary

#### 962 Application of this Division

- (1) This Division applies in a case where:
  - (a) a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, enters into an ongoing fee arrangement with another person (the *client*); and
  - (b) the arrangement has not terminated for any reason.
- (2) This Division also applies in a case where:
  - (a) the rights of a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, under an ongoing fee arrangement are assigned to another person; and
  - (b) the arrangement has not terminated for any reason.

#### 962A Ongoing fee arrangements

##### *Ongoing fee arrangements*

- (1) If:
  - (a) a financial services licensee gives personal advice to a person as a retail client; and
  - (b) that person enters into an arrangement with the financial services licensee, or a representative of the financial services licensee; and
  - (c) under the terms of the arrangement, a fee (however described or structured) is to be paid during a period of more than 12 months;the arrangement is an *ongoing fee arrangement*.
- (2) If:
  - (a) a representative of a financial services licensee gives personal advice to a person as a retail client; and

- (b) that person enters into an arrangement with the representative or the financial services licensee; and
- (c) under the terms of the arrangement, a fee (however described or structured) is to be paid during a period of more than 12 months;

the arrangement is an ***ongoing fee arrangement***.

*Paying for advice by instalments*

- (3) Despite subsections (1) and (2), an arrangement is not an ***ongoing fee arrangement*** if each of the following is satisfied:
  - (a) the total of the fees payable under the terms of the arrangement is fixed at the time the arrangement is entered into;
  - (b) the total of the fees payable under the terms of the arrangement is specified in the arrangement;
  - (c) the fees payable under the terms of the arrangement are to be paid by instalments over a fixed period specified in the arrangement;
  - (d) the fees payable under the terms of the arrangement can reasonably be characterised as relating to personal advice given to the person before the arrangement is entered into;
  - (e) under the terms of the arrangement, there is no fee payment of which, or the amount of which, is dependent on the amount invested by the person, or the amount in relation to which personal advice is given;
  - (f) the person cannot opt out of payment of any of the fees payable under the terms of the arrangement.

*Insurance premiums*

- (4) Despite subsections (1) and (2), an arrangement is not an ***ongoing fee arrangement*** if the only fee payable under the arrangement is an insurance premium.

Section 962B

---

*Other prescribed arrangements*

- (5) Despite subsections (1) and (2), an arrangement is not an ***ongoing fee arrangement*** if it is an arrangement of a prescribed kind that relates to a fee that is prescribed as a product fee.

**962B Ongoing fees**

A fee that is payable under an ongoing fee arrangement is referred to in this Division as an ***ongoing fee***.

**962C Fee recipients**

- (1) Where:
- (a) a financial services licensee enters into an ongoing fee arrangement; and
  - (b) the rights of the licensee under the arrangement have not been assigned to another person;
- the licensee is the ***fee recipient*** in relation to the arrangement.
- (2) Where:
- (a) a representative of a financial services licensee enters into an ongoing fee arrangement; and
  - (b) the rights of the representative under the arrangement have not been assigned to another person;
- the representative is the ***fee recipient*** in relation to the arrangement.
- (3) Where the rights of a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, under an ongoing fee arrangement have been assigned to another person, the person who currently holds those rights is the ***fee recipient*** in relation to the arrangement.

**962CA Exemption from application of opt-in requirement**

- (1) ASIC may exempt a person, or a class of persons, from section 962K (the ***opt-in requirement***), if ASIC is satisfied that the

person is, or persons of that class are, bound by a code of conduct approved by ASIC for the purposes of this section.

- (2) A code of conduct is approved by ASIC for the purposes of this section if:
  - (a) the code of conduct is approved by ASIC under section 1101A; and
  - (b) ASIC is satisfied that the code of conduct obviates the need for persons bound by the code to be bound by the opt-in requirement; and
  - (c) ASIC is satisfied of any other matters prescribed by the regulations.
- (3) The exemption must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.

## **Subdivision B—Termination, disclosure and renewal**

### **962D Application of this Subdivision**

- (1) This Subdivision only applies where:
  - (a) the client has not been provided with personal advice as a retail client before the application day by:
    - (i) in a case where the client has entered into an ongoing fee arrangement with a financial services licensee—the financial services licensee or a person acting as a representative of the financial services licensee; or
    - (ii) in a case where the client has entered into an ongoing fee arrangement with a person acting as a representative of a financial services licensee—the representative or the financial services licensee; and
  - (b) the client enters into the ongoing fee arrangement on or after the application day.

- (2) In this section:

***application day*** means:

- (a) where:

Section 962E

---

- (i) the client enters into the ongoing fee arrangement with a financial services licensee, or a person acting as a representative of a financial services licensee; and
  - (ii) the financial services licensee has lodged notice with ASIC in accordance with subsection 967(1) that the obligations and prohibitions under this Part are to apply to the licensee and persons acting as representatives of the licensee, on and from a day specified in the notice; the day specified in the notice; or
- (b) in any other case—1 July 2013.

**962E Client may terminate arrangement at any time**

- (1) It is a condition of the ongoing fee arrangement that the client may terminate the arrangement at any time.
- (2) Any condition of the ongoing fee arrangement, or any other arrangement, that requires the client to pay an amount on terminating the ongoing fee arrangement is void to the extent that the amount exceeds the sum of:
  - (a) any liability that the client has accrued but not satisfied under the ongoing fee arrangement before the termination; and
  - (b) the costs of the current fee recipient incurred solely and directly because of the termination.

**962F Arrangement terminates if this Subdivision not complied with**

- (1) It is a condition of the ongoing fee arrangement that the arrangement terminates if section 962G (the disclosure obligation) or section 962K (the renewal notice obligation) has not been complied with in relation the arrangement, whether by the current or a previous fee recipient.
- (2) The client is not taken to have waived the client's rights under the condition (subject to subsection (3)), or to have entered into a new ongoing fee arrangement, if the client makes a payment of an ongoing fee after a failure to comply with section 962G or section 962K in relation to the ongoing fee arrangement.

- (3) However, if the client makes a payment of an ongoing fee after a failure to comply with section 962G or section 962K in relation to the ongoing fee arrangement, the fee recipient is not obliged to refund the payment.

Note: A Court may order that the fee recipient refund the amount (see section 1317GA).

### **962G Fee recipient must give fee disclosure statement**

- (1) The current fee recipient in relation to an ongoing fee arrangement must, before the end of a period of 60 days beginning on the disclosure day for the arrangement, give the client a fee disclosure statement in relation to the arrangement.
- (2) The regulations may provide that subsection (1) does not apply in a particular situation.

### **962H Fee disclosure statements**

- (1) A *fee disclosure statement*, in relation to an ongoing fee arrangement, is a statement in writing that:
- (a) includes the information required under this section; and
  - (b) relates to:
    - (i) a period of 12 months (the *previous year*) that ends on a day that is no more than 60 days before that on which the statement is given; and
    - (ii) any other period prescribed by the regulations.
- (2) The following information is required for a fee disclosure statement in relation to an ongoing fee arrangement, subject to subsection (3):
- (a) the amount of each ongoing fee paid under the arrangement by the client in the previous year, expressed in Australian dollars unless an alternative is provided in the regulations;
  - (c) information about the services that the client was entitled to receive from the current and any previous fee recipient under the arrangement during the previous year;

Section 962J

---

- (d) information about the services that the client received from the current and any previous fee recipient under the arrangement during the previous year;
  - (f) information about any other prescribed matters, including information that relates to a period that begins after the previous year.
- (3) The regulations may provide either or both of the following:
- (a) that particular information is not required for a fee disclosure statement, either in a particular situation or generally;
  - (b) a more detailed statement of the information that is required for a fee disclosure statement, either in a particular situation or generally.

**962J Disclosure day**

The *disclosure day* for an ongoing fee arrangement is:

- (a) if no fee disclosure statement has been given to the client in relation to the arrangement since the arrangement was entered into—the anniversary of the day on which the arrangement was entered into; and
- (b) if a fee disclosure statement in relation to the arrangement has been given to the client since the arrangement was entered into—the anniversary of the day immediately after the end of the earliest period of 12 months to which the last fee disclosure statement given to the client related.

**962K Fee recipient must give renewal notice**

- (1) The current fee recipient in relation to an ongoing fee arrangement must, before the end of a period of 60 days beginning on the renewal notice day for the arrangement, give the client a renewal notice and a fee disclosure statement in relation to the arrangement.
- (2) A *renewal notice*, in relation to an ongoing fee arrangement, is a notice in writing that includes:



- (a) a statement that the client may renew the arrangement by giving the current fee recipient notice in writing of the election; and
  - (b) a statement that the arrangement will terminate, and no further advice will be provided or fee charged under it, if the client does not elect to renew the arrangement; and
  - (c) a statement that the client will be taken to have elected not to renew the arrangement if the client does not give the current fee recipient notice in writing of an election to renew before the end of the renewal period; and
  - (d) a statement that the renewal period is a period of 30 days beginning on the day on which the renewal notice and fee disclosure statement is given to the client.
- (3) The regulations may provide that subsection (1) does not apply in a particular situation.

**962L *Renewal notice day and renewal period***

- (1) The ***renewal notice day*** for an ongoing fee arrangement means:
- (a) if the arrangement has not previously been renewed—the second anniversary of the day on which the arrangement was entered into; and
  - (b) if the arrangement has previously been renewed—the second anniversary of the last day on which the arrangement was renewed.
- (2) The ***renewal period*** for an ongoing fee arrangement is a period of 30 days beginning on the day on which the current fee recipient in relation to the arrangement gives the client a renewal notice and a fee disclosure statement in relation to the arrangement.

**962M If client notifies fee recipient that client does not wish to renew**

If the client notifies the current fee recipient in relation to the ongoing fee arrangement in writing within the renewal period for the arrangement that the client does not wish to renew the

Section 962N

---

arrangement, the arrangement terminates on the day on which the notification is given.

**962N If client does not notify fee recipient that client wishes to renew**

If the client does not notify the current fee recipient in relation to the ongoing fee arrangement in writing within the renewal period for the arrangement that the client wishes to renew the arrangement, the arrangement terminates at the end of a further period of 30 days after the end of the renewal period for the arrangement.

**962P Civil penalty provision—charging ongoing fees after arrangement terminated**

If an ongoing fee arrangement terminates for any reason, the current fee recipient in relation to the arrangement must not continue to charge an ongoing fee.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

**962Q Effect of termination**

To avoid doubt, if, under an ongoing fee arrangement, the continued provision of a service to the client by the fee recipient in relation to the arrangement is dependent on the continued payment of an ongoing fee, on termination of the arrangement, the obligation to continue to provide the service also terminates.

**Subdivision C—Disclosure for arrangements to which Subdivision B does not apply**

**962R Application of this Subdivision**

- (1) This Subdivision applies, on and from the application day, to an ongoing fee arrangement to which Subdivision B does not apply.
- (2) In this section:

***application day*** means:

- (a) where:
- (i) the client has entered into the ongoing fee arrangement with a financial services licensee, or a person acting as a representative of a financial services licensee; and
  - (ii) that licensee or representative is the fee recipient in relation to the arrangement on 1 July 2012; and
  - (iii) the financial services licensee has lodged notice with ASIC in accordance with subsection 967(1) that the obligations and prohibitions under this Part are to apply to the licensee and persons acting as representatives of the licensee, on and from a day specified in the notice;
- the day specified in the notice; or
- (b) where:
- (i) the client has entered into the ongoing fee arrangement with a financial services licensee, or a person acting as a representative of a financial services licensee; and
  - (ii) because the rights of the licensee or representative under the arrangement have been assigned, another person is the fee recipient in relation to the arrangement on 1 July 2012; and
  - (iii) a notice has been lodged with ASIC in accordance with subsection 967(1) or (3) that the obligations and prohibitions under this Part are to apply to the other person, on and from a day specified in the notice;
- the day specified in the notice; or
- (c) in any other case—1 July 2013.

### **962S Fee recipient must give fee disclosure statement**

- (1) The current fee recipient in relation to the ongoing fee arrangement must, before the end of a period of 60 days beginning on the disclosure day for the arrangement, give the client a fee disclosure statement in relation to the arrangement.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

Section 962S

---

- (2) The regulations may provide that subsection (1) does not apply in a particular situation.

## **Division 4—Conflicted remuneration**

### **Subdivision A—Preliminary**

#### **963 Application to a financial services licensee acting as an authorised representative**

If a financial services licensee is acting as an authorised representative of another financial services licensee in relation to financial product advice, this Division applies to the first licensee in relation to the advice in that licensee's capacity as an authorised representative (rather than in the capacity of licensee).

### **Subdivision B—What is conflicted remuneration?**

#### **963A *Conflicted remuneration***

***Conflicted remuneration*** means any benefit, whether monetary or non-monetary, given to a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, who provides financial product advice to persons as retail clients that, because of the nature of the benefit or the circumstances in which it is given:

- (a) could reasonably be expected to influence the choice of financial product recommended by the licensee or representative to retail clients; or
- (b) could reasonably be expected to influence the financial product advice given to retail clients by the licensee or representative.

Note: A reference in this Subdivision (including sections 963A, 963B, 963C and 963D) to giving a benefit includes a reference to causing or authorising it to be given (see section 52).

#### **963B Monetary benefit given in certain circumstances not *conflicted remuneration***

- (1) Despite section 963A, a monetary benefit given to a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services

Section 963B

---

licensee, who provides financial product advice to persons as retail clients is not **conflicted remuneration** in the circumstances set out in any of the following paragraphs:

- (a) the benefit is given to the licensee or representative solely in relation to a general insurance product;
- (b) the benefit is given to the licensee or representative solely in relation to a life risk insurance product, other than:
  - (i) a group life policy for members of a superannuation entity (see subsection (2)); or
  - (ii) a life policy for a member of a default superannuation fund (see subsection (3));
- (c) each of the following is satisfied:
  - (i) the benefit is given to the licensee or representative in relation to the issue or sale of a financial product to a person;
  - (ii) financial product advice in relation to the product, or products of that class, has not been given to the person as a retail client by the licensee or representative in the 12 months immediately before the benefit is given;
- (d) the benefit is given to the licensee or representative by a retail client in relation to:
  - (i) the issue or sale of a financial product by the licensee or representative to the client; or
  - (ii) financial product advice given by the licensee or representative to the client;
- (e) the benefit is a prescribed benefit or is given in prescribed circumstances.

Note: Under the governing rules of some regulated superannuation funds, a member may seek advice on the basis that the trustee of the fund will pay the licensee or representative for the advice and then recover the amount paid from the assets of the fund attributed to that member. In that case, the member has caused or authorised the amount to be paid to the licensee or representative and so, because of section 52 of this Act, paragraph (1)(d) would apply to that amount. This does not affect the trustee's obligations under section 62 of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993* (which deals with the purposes for which a trustee may act in maintaining a regulated superannuation fund).

- (2) A life risk insurance product is a ***group life policy for members of a superannuation entity*** if the product is issued to an RSE licensee of a registrable superannuation entity, or a custodian in relation to a registrable superannuation entity, for the benefit of a class of members of the entity.
- (3) A life risk insurance product is a ***life policy for a member of a default superannuation fund*** if:
- (a) the product is issued to an RSE licensee of a registrable superannuation entity, or a custodian in relation to a registrable superannuation entity, for the benefit of a person who is a member of the entity; and
  - (b) the person has not given written notice to an employer of the person that the fund is the person's chosen fund, but the employer of the person makes contributions to the fund for the benefit of the person.

Note: Superannuation guarantee surcharge may be imposed on an employer if the employer does not make contributions to a superannuation fund for the benefit of its employees. If an employee does not notify the employer of the employee's chosen fund, the employer is still able to satisfy its obligations by making contributions to certain funds (see the *Superannuation Guarantee (Administration) Act 1992*).

- (4) The regulations may prescribe circumstances in which, despite a provision of this section, all or part of a benefit is to be treated as conflicted remuneration.

Note: The expression ***intrafund advice*** is often used to describe financial product advice given by a trustee (or an employee of, or another person acting under arrangement with, the trustee) of a regulated superannuation fund to its members, where that advice is not of a kind to which the prohibition in section 99F of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993* applies. (Section 99F of that Act prohibits trustees of regulated superannuation funds from passing on the cost of providing certain kinds of financial product advice in relation to one member of the fund to another.)

Section 963C

---

**963C Non-monetary benefit given in certain circumstances not  
*conflicted remuneration***

- (1) Despite section 963A, a non-monetary benefit given to a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, who provides financial product advice to persons as retail clients is not ***conflicted remuneration*** in the circumstances set out in any of the following paragraphs:
- (a) the benefit is given to the licensee or representative solely in relation to a general insurance product;
  - (b) each of the following is satisfied:
    - (i) the benefit is of less than an amount prescribed;
    - (ii) identical or similar benefits are not given on a frequent or regular basis;
  - (c) the benefit satisfies each of the following:
    - (i) the benefit has a genuine education or training purpose;
    - (ii) the benefit is relevant to the carrying on of a financial services business;
    - (iii) the benefit complies with regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph;
  - (d) the benefit satisfies each of the following:
    - (i) the benefit is the provision of information technology software or support;
    - (ii) the benefit is related to the provision of financial product advice to persons as retail clients in relation to the financial products issued or sold by the benefit provider;
    - (iii) the benefit complies with regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph;
  - (e) the benefit is given to the licensee or representative by a retail client in relation to:
    - (i) the issue or sale of a financial product by the licensee or representative to the client; or
    - (ii) financial product advice given by the licensee or representative to the client;



- (f) the benefit is a prescribed benefit or is given in prescribed circumstances.
- (2) The regulations may prescribe circumstances in which, despite subsection (1), all or part of a benefit is to be treated as conflicted remuneration.

### **963D Benefits for employees etc. of ADIs**

- (1) This section applies if:
  - (a) a monetary or non-monetary benefit is given to a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee; and
  - (b) the benefit is in whole or in part remuneration for work carried out, or to be carried out, by the licensee or representative:
    - (i) as an agent or employee of an Australian ADI; or
    - (ii) in otherwise acting by arrangement with an Australian ADI under the name of the Australian ADI.
- (2) If:
  - (a) access to the benefit, or the amount of the benefit, is in whole or in part dependent on the licensee or representative recommending:
    - (i) a basic banking product; or
    - (ii) a general insurance product; or
    - (iii) consumer credit insurance; and
  - (b) the licensee or representative does not, in the course of recommending any, or any combination, of those products give other financial product advice that does not relate to any of those products;to the extent that the benefit relates to the recommendation of any, or any combination of, the products mentioned in paragraph (a), the benefit is not ***conflicted remuneration***.

Section 963E

---

- (3) The regulations may prescribe circumstances in which, despite subsection (2), all or part of a benefit is to be treated as conflicted remuneration.

**Subdivision C—Ban on conflicted remuneration**

**963E Licensee must not accept conflicted remuneration**

- (1) A financial services licensee must not accept conflicted remuneration.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) A financial services licensee contravenes this section if:
- (a) a representative, other than an authorised representative, of the licensee accepts conflicted remuneration; and
  - (b) the licensee is the, or a, responsible licensee in relation to the contravention.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

**963F Licensee must ensure compliance**

A financial services licensee must take reasonable steps to ensure that representatives of the licensee do not accept conflicted remuneration.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

**963G Authorised representative must not accept conflicted remuneration**

- (1) An authorised representative of a financial services licensee must not accept conflicted remuneration.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply if:
- (a) the licensee had provided the authorised representative with information about the nature of the benefit to be accepted by the authorised representative; and

- (b) at the time the authorised representative accepted the benefit, the representative was not aware that the benefit was conflicted remuneration because the representative was acting in reliance on that information; and
- (c) the representative's reliance on that information was reasonable.

### **963H Other representatives must not accept conflicted remuneration**

A representative, other than an authorised representative, of a financial services licensee must not accept conflicted remuneration unless it is in circumstances for which an employer of the licensee or representative is liable under section 963J.

Note: A representative who contravenes this section may be subject to a banning order (see section 920A).

### **963J Employer must not give employees conflicted remuneration**

An employer of a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, must not give the licensee or representative conflicted remuneration for work carried out, or to be carried out, by the licensee or representative as an employee of the employer.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

### **963K Product issuer or seller must not give conflicted remuneration**

An issuer or seller of a financial product must not give a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, conflicted remuneration.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

Section 963L

---

**963L Volume-based benefits presumed to be conflicted remuneration**

It is presumed for the purposes of this Division that a benefit of one of the following kinds is conflicted remuneration, unless the contrary is proved:

- (a) a benefit access to which, or the value of which, is wholly or partly dependent on the total value of financial products of a particular class, or particular classes:
  - (i) recommended by a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, to retail clients, or a class of retail clients; or
  - (ii) acquired by retail clients, or a class of retail clients, to whom a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, provides financial product advice;
- (b) a benefit access to which, or the value of which, is wholly or partly dependent on the number of financial products of a particular class, or particular classes:
  - (i) recommended by a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, to retail clients, or a class of retail clients; or
  - (ii) acquired by retail clients, or a class of retail clients, to whom a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, provides financial product advice.

## **Division 5—Other banned remuneration**

### **Subdivision A—Volume-based shelf-space fees**

#### **964 Application**

- (1) This Subdivision applies if:
  - (a) a financial services licensee or an RSE licensee (the **platform operator**) is, or offers to be, the provider of a custodial arrangement; and
  - (b) a monetary or non-monetary benefit is given, or to be given, by a financial services licensee or an RSE licensee (the **funds manager**) to the platform operator; and
  - (c) a financial product to which the custodial arrangement relates is a financial product in which the funds manager deals (the **funds manager's financial product**).

- (2) In this Subdivision:

**custodial arrangement** has the same meaning as it has in subsection 1012IA(1), subject to subsection (3).

**provider** has the same meaning as in subsection 1012IA(1).

- (3) The definition of **custodial arrangement** in subsection 1012IA(1) is to be read as if the reference in that definition to an instruction included a reference to:
  - (a) a direction of the kind mentioned in paragraph 58(2)(d) or (da) of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993* that will involve the acquisition of a particular financial product, or a financial product of a particular kind; and
  - (b) a direction of the kind mentioned in subsection 52B(4) of the *Superannuation Industry (Supervision) Act 1993* that will involve the acquisition of a particular financial product, or a financial product of a particular kind.

Section 964A

---

- (4) A reference to a kind of financial product in subsection (3) has the same meaning in that subsection as it has in the definition of *custodial arrangement* in subsection 1012IA(1).

**964A Platform operator must not accept volume-based shelf-space fees**

- (1) The platform operator must not accept the benefit if it is a volume-based shelf-space fee.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) Subject to subsection (3), the benefit is presumed to be a volume-based shelf-space fee if the benefit, or the value of benefit, is wholly or partly dependent on the total number or value of the funds manager's financial products of a particular class, or particular classes, to which the custodial arrangement relates.
- (3) If it is proved that all or part of the benefit is of a kind specified in one of the following paragraphs then, to the extent that the benefit is of that kind, it is not presumed to be a volume-based shelf space fee:
- (a) a reasonable fee for a service provided to the funds manager by the platform operator or another person;
  - (b) a discount on an amount payable, or a rebate of an amount paid, to the funds manager by the platform operator, the value of which does not exceed an amount that may reasonably be attributed to efficiencies gained by the funds manager because of the number or value of financial products in relation to which the funds manager provides services to the platform operator, or through the platform operator to another person.

## **Subdivision B—Asset-based fees on borrowed amounts**

### **964B Application**

This Subdivision applies where a financial services licensee, or a representative of a financial services licensee, provides financial product advice (the *advice*) to a person (the *client*) as a retail client.

### **964C Application to a financial services licensee acting as an authorised representative**

If a financial services licensee is acting as an authorised representative of another financial services licensee in relation to the advice, this Subdivision applies to the first licensee in relation to the advice in that licensee's capacity as an authorised representative (rather than in the capacity of licensee).

### **964D Financial services licensees must not charge asset-based fees on borrowed amounts**

- (1) The financial services licensee must not charge an asset-based fee on a borrowed amount used or to be used to acquire financial products by or on behalf of the client.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) A financial services licensee contravenes this section if:
  - (a) a representative, other than an authorised representative, of the licensee charges an asset-based fee on a borrowed amount used or to be used to acquire financial products by or on behalf of the client; and
  - (b) the licensee is the, or a, responsible licensee in relation to the contravention.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

Section 964E

---

*Exceptions*

- (3) Subsections (1) and (2) do not apply in relation to a borrowed amount if it is not reasonably apparent that the amount has been borrowed.
- (4) The regulations may provide that subsections (1) and (2) do not apply in prescribed circumstances.

*Duty to make reasonable inquiries*

- (5) Nothing in this section affects the duty of the financial services licensee, or the representative of the financial services licensee, under section 961B to make reasonable inquiries to obtain complete and accurate information.

**964E Authorised representatives must not charge asset-based fees on borrowed amounts**

- (1) The authorised representative of the financial services licensee must not charge an asset-based fee on a borrowed amount used or to be used to acquire financial products by or on behalf of the client.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

*Exceptions*

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a borrowed amount if it is not reasonably apparent that the amount has been borrowed.
- (3) The regulations may provide that subsection (1) does not apply in prescribed circumstances.

*Duty to make reasonable inquiries*

- (4) Nothing in this section affects the duty of the authorised representative under section 961B to make reasonable inquiries to obtain complete and accurate information.



**964F What is an *asset-based fee*?**

A fee for providing financial product advice to a person as a retail client is an *asset-based fee* to the extent that it is dependent upon the amount of funds used or to be used to acquire financial products by or on behalf of the person.

**964G Meaning of *borrowed***

(1) In this Subdivision:

*borrowed* means borrowed in any form, whether secured or unsecured, including through:

- (a) a credit facility within the meaning of the regulations; and
- (b) a margin lending facility.

(2) To avoid doubt, an amount is no longer borrowed to the extent that it has been repaid.

**964H When is something *reasonably apparent*?**

Something is *reasonably apparent* if it would be apparent to a person with a reasonable level of expertise in the subject matter of the advice that has been sought by the client, were that person exercising care and objectively assessing the information given to the financial services licensee, or the representative of the financial services licensee, by the client.

## **Division 6—Anti-avoidance**

### **965 Anti-avoidance**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), a person must not, either alone or together with one or more other persons, enter into, begin to carry out or carry out a scheme if:
  - (a) it would be concluded that the person, or any of the persons, who entered into, began to carry out or carried out the scheme or any part of the scheme did so for the sole purpose or for a purpose (that is not incidental) of avoiding the application of any provision of this Part in relation to any person or persons (whether or not a person or persons who entered into, began to carry out or carried out the scheme or any part of the scheme); and
  - (b) the scheme or the part of the scheme has achieved, or apart from this section, would achieve, that purpose.

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to a scheme to the extent that the operation of the subsection would result in an acquisition of property (within the meaning of paragraph 51(xxxi) of the Constitution) from a person otherwise than on just terms (within the meaning of that paragraph of the Constitution).

## **Division 7—Transition**

### **966 *Transition period***

In this Division:

*transition period* means the period beginning on 1 July 2012 and ending on 30 June 2013.

### **967 Best interests obligations and remuneration provisions to apply during transition period**

- (1) A financial services licensee may, during the transition period, lodge notice in the prescribed form with ASIC that the obligations and prohibitions imposed under this Part are to apply to the licensee, and any person acting as a representative of the licensee, on and from a day that:
  - (a) falls on or after the day on which the notice is lodged with ASIC; and
  - (b) is specified in the notice.
- (2) If a notice is lodged with ASIC in accordance with subsection (1), ASIC must, on its website:
  - (a) publish the name of the financial services licensee who lodged the notice; and
  - (b) include a statement that the obligations and prohibitions imposed under this Part are to apply to the licensee, and any person acting as a representative of the licensee; and
  - (c) state the day on and from which those obligations and prohibitions are to apply.
- (3) A person:
  - (a) who would be subject to an obligation or prohibition under this Part, if it applied; and
  - (b) who would not be subject to the obligation or prohibition as a financial services licensee, or a person acting as a representative of a financial services licensee;

Section 968

---

may, during the transition period, lodge notice in the prescribed form with ASIC that the obligations and prohibitions imposed under this Part are to apply to the person on and from a day that:

- (c) falls on or after the day on which the notice is lodged with ASIC; and
  - (d) is specified in the notice.
- (4) If a notice is lodged with ASIC in accordance with subsection (3), ASIC must, on its website:
- (a) publish the name of the person who lodged the notice; and
  - (b) include a statement that the obligations and prohibitions imposed under this Part are to apply to the person; and
  - (c) state the day on and from which those obligations and prohibitions are to apply.

**968 Notice to clients in transition period**

- (1) A financial services licensee who lodges a notice with ASIC in accordance with subsection 967(1) must ensure that any person in relation to whom the licensee, or a person acting as a representative of the licensee, has an obligation or is subject to a prohibition under this Part during the transition period (the *client*) is given a notice that complies with this section.
- (2) The notice:
- (a) must be in writing; and
  - (b) must be given to the client on or before the notice day for the client; and
  - (c) must state that the obligations and prohibitions imposed under this Part begin to apply to the licensee, and any person acting as a representative of the licensee, on a day specified in the notice given to the client.
- (3) The day specified in the notice given to the client must be the same as the day specified in the notice lodged with ASIC in accordance with subsection 967(1).
- (4) The *notice day* is:

- (a) for a person (the *client*) in relation to whom the licensee, or a person acting as a representative of the licensee, has an obligation or is subject to a prohibition under Division 2 of this Part in relation to personal advice provided on or after a day that falls in the transition period—the first day on which personal advice is provided to the client during the transition period; and
- (b) for a person to whom the licensee, or a person acting as a representative of the licensee, is obliged to give a fee disclosure statement during the transition period:
  - (i) unless subparagraph (ii) applies—the disclosure day for the arrangement in relation to which the fee disclosure statement is to be given that falls within the transition period; and
  - (ii) if a fee disclosure statement is given before the end of a period of 30 days beginning on that disclosure day—the day on which it is given; and
- (c) for a person (the *client*) in relation to whom the licensee, or a person acting as a representative of the licensee, has an obligation or is subject to a prohibition under Subdivision B of Division 5 of this Part in relation to the charging of an asset-based fee during the transition period—the first day on which the client is charged an asset-based fee during the transition period; and
- (d) for a person in relation to whom more than one of paragraphs (a), (b) and (c) is satisfied—the earliest of the days specified as the notice day under the paragraphs that are satisfied for that person.

**Part 7.8—Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure**

**Division 1—Preliminary**

**980A Matters covered by this Part**

This Part contains:

- (a) provisions (see Divisions 2 to 7) relating to conduct etc. of financial services licensees; and
- (b) miscellaneous provisions (see Division 8) relating to other conduct connected with financial products and financial services.

It does not deal with financial product disclosure (which is dealt with in Part 7.9).

**980B General approach to offence provisions**

Division 9 contains provisions creating offences by reference to various rules contained in Divisions of this Part. However, it does not create all the offences relating to those rules, as some offences are created by subsection 1311(1). Where offences are created by subsection 1311(1) in relation to a rule, this is indicated by a note at the end of the provision containing the rule.

## **Division 2—Dealing with clients' money**

### **Subdivision A—Money other than loans**

#### **981A Money to which Subdivision applies**

- (1) This Subdivision applies (subject to subsections (2), (3) and (4)) to money paid to a financial services licensee (the *licensee*) in the following circumstances:
  - (a) the money is paid in connection with:
    - (i) a financial service that has been provided, or that will or may be provided, to a person (the *client*); or
    - (ii) a financial product held by a person (the *client*); and
  - (b) the money is paid:
    - (i) by the client; or
    - (ii) by a person acting on behalf of the client; or
    - (iii) to the licensee in the licensee's capacity as a person acting on behalf of the client.
- (2) This Subdivision does not apply to money paid as mentioned in subsection (1) to the extent that:
  - (a) the money is paid by way of remuneration payable to the licensee, or the licensee is entitled to deduct such remuneration from the money; or
  - (b) the money is paid:
    - (i) to reimburse the licensee for payments made to acquire, or acquire an increased interest in, a financial product; or
    - (ii) to discharge a liability incurred by the licensee in respect of the acquisition of a financial product or an increased interest in a financial product, or to indemnify the licensee in respect of such a liability; or
  - (c) the money is paid to acquire, or acquire an increased interest in, a financial product from the licensee, whether by way of issue or sale by the licensee; or

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 2** Dealing with clients' money

**Section 981B**

---

- (ca) the licensee is a licensed trustee company, and the money is paid to the licensee in connection with traditional trustee company services provided by the licensee; or
- (d) Subdivision B (loan money) applies to the money.

Note: Money excluded by paragraph (c) is covered by section 1017E.

- (3) If a person pays money to a financial services licensee in order for it to be deposited to the credit of a deposit product held by the person or another person with the licensee, that payment does not constitute money to which this Subdivision applies.
- (4) The regulations may:
  - (a) exempt money paid in specified circumstances from some or all of the provisions of this Subdivision; or
  - (b) declare that this Subdivision applies in relation to money paid in specified circumstances as if specified provisions of this Subdivision were omitted, modified or varied as set out in the regulations.
- (5) An exemption in regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (4)(a) may be made subject to conditions specified in, or imposed in accordance with, the regulations. The regulations may provide for consequences of a contravention of a condition.

**981B Obligation to pay money into an account**

- (1) The licensee must ensure that money to which this Subdivision applies is paid into an account that satisfies these requirements:
  - (a) the account is:
    - (i) with an Australian ADI; or
    - (ii) of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;  
and is designated as an account for the purposes of this section of this Act; and
  - (b) the only money paid into the account is:



Section 981C

---

- (i) money to which this Subdivision applies (which may be money paid by, on behalf of, or for the benefit of, several different clients); or
  - (ii) interest on the amount from time to time standing to the credit of the account; or
  - (iii) interest, or other similar payments, on an investment made in accordance with regulations referred to in section 981C, or the proceeds of the realisation of such an investment; or
  - (iv) other money permitted to be paid into the account by the regulations; and
- (c) if regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph impose additional requirements—the requirements so imposed by the regulations; and
- (d) if the licence conditions of the licensee's licence impose additional requirements—the requirements so imposed by the licence conditions.

The money must be paid into such an account on the day it is received by the licensee, or on the next business day.

- (2) The licensee may, for the purposes of this section, maintain a single account or 2 or more accounts.

**981C Regulations may deal with various matters relating to accounts maintained for the purposes of section 981B**

The regulations may deal with all or any of the following in relation to accounts, or a class of accounts, maintained for the purposes of section 981B:

- (a) the circumstances in which payments may be made out of an account (including the circumstances in which money may be withdrawn and invested, and the kinds of investment that may be made);
- (b) the minimum balance to be maintained in an account;
- (c) how interest on an account is to be dealt with;

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 2** Dealing with clients' money

**Section 981D**

---

- (d) how interest or other earnings on an investment of money withdrawn from an account, or the proceeds of the realisation of such an investment, are to be dealt with.

**981D Money related to derivatives may be used for general margining etc. purposes**

Despite anything in regulations made for the purposes of section 981C, if:

- (a) the financial service referred to in subparagraph 981A(1)(a)(i) is or relates to a dealing in a derivative; or
- (b) the financial product referred to in subparagraph 981A(1)(a)(ii) is a derivative;

the money concerned may also be used for the purpose of meeting obligations incurred by the licensee in connection with margining, guaranteeing, securing, transferring, adjusting or settling dealings in derivatives by the licensee (including dealings on behalf of people other than the client).

**981E Protection of money from attachment etc.**

- (1) This section applies to:
  - (a) money to which this Subdivision applies that has been paid to the licensee, both while it is in an account maintained for the purposes of section 981B and before and after it is paid into such an account; and
  - (b) other money in such an account as permitted by paragraph 981B(1)(b); and
  - (c) investments made in accordance with regulations made for the purposes of section 981C.
- (2) Money and investments to which this section applies are not capable:
  - (a) of being attached or otherwise taken in execution; or
  - (b) of being made subject to a set-off, security interest or charging order, or to any process of a similar nature;

---

Section 981F

except at the suit of a person who is otherwise entitled to the money or investment.

**981F Regulations may deal with how money to be dealt with if licensee ceases to be licensed etc.**

The regulations may include provisions dealing with how money in an account maintained for the purposes of section 981B, or an investment of such money, is to be dealt with if:

- (a) the licensee ceases to be a financial services licensee; or
- (b) the licensee becomes insolvent, within the meaning of the regulations; or
- (c) the licensee merges with another financial services licensee; or
- (d) the licensee ceases to carry on some or all of the activities authorised by their licence.

**981G Account provider not liable merely because of licensee's contravention**

Nothing in this Subdivision, or in regulations made for the purposes of this Subdivision, makes the body (not being the licensee) that the account is with under paragraph 981B(1)(a) subject to any liability merely because of a failure by the licensee to comply with any of the provisions of this Subdivision or those regulations.

**981H Money to which Subdivision applies taken to be held in trust**

- (1) Subject to subsection (3), money to which this Subdivision applies that is paid to the licensee:
- (a) by the client; or
  - (b) by a person acting on behalf of the client; or
  - (c) in the licensee's capacity as a person acting on behalf of the client;
- is taken to be held in trust by the licensee for the benefit of the client.

Section 982A

---

- (3) The regulations may:
- (a) provide that subsection (1) does not apply in relation to money in specified circumstances; and
  - (b) provide for matters relating to the taking of money to be held in trust (including, for example, terms on which the money is taken to be held in trust and circumstances in which it is no longer taken to be held in trust).

**Subdivision B—Loan money**

**982A Money to which this Subdivision applies**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), this Subdivision applies to money paid to a financial services licensee (the *licensee*) by way of a loan from a person (the *client*) in connection with activities authorised by the licensee's licence.
- (2) If a person pays money to a financial services licensee:
- (a) in order for it to be deposited to the credit of a deposit product held by the person or another person with the licensee; or
  - (b) on condition that it is to be repaid to the person by the licensee, as a debt, pursuant to the terms of a debenture or other financial product issued by the licensee;
- that payment does not constitute money to which this Subdivision applies.

**982B Obligation to pay money into an account**

- (1) The licensee must ensure that money to which this Subdivision applies is paid into an account that satisfies these requirements:
- (a) the account is:
    - (i) with an Australian ADI; or
    - (ii) of a kind prescribed by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph;and is designated as an account for the purposes of this section of this Act; and

Section 982C

---

- (b) the only money paid into the account is:
- (i) money to which this Subdivision applies (which may be money lent by several different persons); or
  - (ii) interest on the amount from time to time standing to the credit of the account.

The money must be paid into such an account on the day it is received by the licensee, or on the next business day.

- (2) The licensee may, for the purposes of this section, maintain a single account or 2 or more accounts.

**982C Licensee to give client statement setting out terms of loan etc.**

*Obligation to give client a statement*

- (1) The licensee must, in accordance with the regulations, give the client a statement setting out:
- (a) the terms and conditions on which the loan is made and accepted; and
  - (b) the purpose for which, and the manner in which, the licensee is to use the money.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

*Obligation to keep money in account until receive acknowledgment of receipt of statement*

- (2) The licensee must not take money out of the account before the client has given the licensee a written acknowledgment that the client has received the statement required by subsection (1).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**982D Permitted use of loan**

The licensee must only use the money:

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 2** Dealing with clients' money

**Section 983A**

---

- (a) for the purpose, and in the manner, set out in the statement given under section 982C; or
- (b) for another purpose, or in another manner, agreed on in writing by the licensee and the client after the licensee gave the client the statement.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**Subdivision C—Powers of Court**

**983A Court may freeze certain accounts**

- (1) The Court may, by order, restrain dealings in respect of specified accounts with financial institutions that a person holds or maintains (whether in Australia or elsewhere), subject to such terms and conditions as the Court imposes, if subsection (2) or (3) applies in relation to the person.
- (2) This subsection applies to a person if, on application by ASIC, the Court is satisfied that the person holds, or has at any time held, an Australian financial services licence and that:
  - (a) there are reasonable grounds for believing that there is a deficiency in an account maintained by the person for the purposes of section 981B or 982B, whether the account is maintained in this jurisdiction or elsewhere; or
  - (b) there has been undue delay, or unreasonable refusal, on the person's part in paying, applying or accounting for money as provided for by this Division, by a condition of the licence, or by the operating rules of a licensed market or a licensed CS facility in which the person is or has been a participant; or
  - (c) without limiting the generality of paragraph (a) or (b), the person has contravened section 981B or 982B.
- (3) This subsection applies to a person if, on application by ASIC, the Court is satisfied that the person holds, or has at any time held, an Australian financial services licence and that:
  - (a) the licence has been revoked or suspended; or

---

Section 983B

---

- (b) the person is incapable, through mental or physical incapacity, of managing his or her affairs; or
- (c) the person no longer carries on a financial services business; or
- (d) the person has died.

**983B Interim order freezing accounts**

- (1) Before considering an application under section 983A, the Court may, if it considers it desirable to do so, grant an interim order that is an order of the kind applied for and is expressed to apply until the application is determined.
- (2) The Court must not require ASIC or any other person, as a condition of granting an order under subsection (1), to give an undertaking as to damages.

**983C Duty of person to whom order directed to make full disclosure**

If an order made under section 983A is directed to a financial institution, the institution must:

- (a) disclose to ASIC every account kept at the institution in the name of the person to whom the order relates, and any account that the institution reasonably suspects is held or kept at the institution for the benefit of that person; and
- (b) permit ASIC to make a copy of, or to take an extract from, any account of the person to whom the order relates or any of the institution's books relating to that person.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**983D Further orders and directions**

- (1) If an order is made under section 983A or 983B, the Court may, on application by ASIC or a person whom the order affects, make a further order that does one or more of the following:

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 2** Dealing with clients' money

**Section 983E**

---

- (a) deals with such ancillary matters as the Court thinks necessary or desirable;
  - (b) directs that specified amounts in an account affected by the first-mentioned order be paid to ASIC or a person nominated by ASIC;
  - (c) varies or discharges the first-mentioned order or an order under this section.
- (2) An order under this section may be made subject to such terms and conditions as the Court imposes.

**983E Power of Court to make order relating to payment of money**

- (1) An order made under section 983D may include directions to a person to whom money is ordered to be paid directing that the person:
- (a) must pay the money into a separate account; or
  - (b) is authorised to prepare a scheme for distributing the money to persons who claim, within 6 months after the person receives the money, to be entitled to the money and satisfy the person that they are so entitled; or
  - (c) if the money received is insufficient to pay all proved claims, may, despite any rule of law or equity to the contrary, apportion the money among the claimants in proportion to their proved claims and show in the scheme how the money is so apportioned.
- (2) If a person prepares a scheme for a distribution of money under subsection (1), the person must apply to the Court for approval of the scheme and for directions in respect of it.
- (3) The Court may, in relation to money held in a separate account under subsection (1), give such directions as the Court thinks fit as to:
- (a) the persons to whom that money is to be paid, and in what amounts the whole or any portion of that money is to be paid; and



**Section 983E**

---

- (b) the payment of the balance of the money (if any) remaining  
in the account.

## Division 3—Dealing with other property of clients

### 984A Property to which Division applies

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), this Division applies to property other than money (for example, share certificates) given to a financial services licensee (the *licensee*) in the following circumstances:
  - (a) the property is given in connection with:
    - (i) a financial service that has been provided, or that will or may be provided, to a person (the *client*); or
    - (ii) a financial product held by a person (the *client*); and
  - (b) the property is given:
    - (i) by the client; or
    - (ii) by a person acting on behalf of the client; or
    - (iii) for the benefit of the client; and
  - (c) the licensee is accountable for the property.
- (2) The regulations may:
  - (a) exempt property given in specified circumstances from some or all of the provisions of this Division; or
  - (b) declare that this Division applies in relation to property given in specified circumstances as if specified provisions of this Division were omitted, modified or varied as set out in the regulations.

The circumstances that may be specified include (but are not limited to) that the property was given in connection with a specified class of financial product or financial service.
- (3) An exemption in regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (2)(a) may be made subject to conditions specified in, or imposed in accordance with, the regulations. The regulations may provide for consequences of a contravention of a condition.

**984B How property to which this Division applies is to be dealt with**

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), the licensee must ensure that property to which this Division applies is only dealt with in accordance with:
- (a) the requirements (if any) specified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph; and
  - (b) subject to those requirements:
    - (i) the terms and conditions on which the property was given to the licensee; and
    - (ii) any subsequent instructions given by the client.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) If:
- (a) the financial service referred to in subparagraph 984A(1)(a)(i) is or relates to a dealing in a derivative; or
  - (b) the financial product referred to in subparagraph 984A(1)(a)(ii) is a derivative;
- the property concerned may also be used for the purpose of meeting obligations incurred by the licensee in connection with margining, guaranteeing, securing, transferring, adjusting or settling dealings in derivatives by the licensee (including dealings on behalf of people other than the client).

Section 985A

---

## Division 4—Special provisions relating to insurance

### 985A Definitions etc.

- (1) In this Division:

*contract of insurance* includes a contract of life insurance.

Note: *Contract of life insurance* has a meaning affected by subsection (2).

*insured*, in relation to a contract of life insurance, means a person (other than the insurer) who is entitled to a benefit under the contract, whether that person is the life insured or some other person.

Note: *Intending insured* has a corresponding meaning.

- (2) For the purposes of this Division, if:

- (a) a life policy (within the meaning of the *Life Insurance Act 1995*) would not ordinarily be regarded as a contract of life insurance; and
  - (b) liability under the policy is borne by a company registered under section 21 of that Act; and
  - (c) the policy was entered into after the commencement of section 9D of the *Insurance (Agents and Brokers) Act 1984* as in force before the commencement of this Chapter;
- the policy is taken to be a contract of life insurance.

### 985B Status of amounts paid to financial services licensees in respect of contracts of insurance

- (1) If:

- (a) a contract of insurance is arranged or effected by a financial services licensee; and
- (b) the licensee is not the insurer;

payment to the licensee of money payable (whether in respect of a premium or otherwise) by the insured under or in relation to the

Section 985C

---

contract is a discharge, as between the insured and the insurer, of the liability of the insured to the insurer in respect of that money.

- (2) Payment to a financial services licensee by or on behalf of an intending insured of money (whether in respect of a premium or otherwise) in respect of a contract of insurance to be arranged or effected by the licensee with an insurer (not being the licensee) is a discharge, as between the insured and the insurer, of any liability of the insured under or in respect of the contract, to the extent of the amount of the payment.
- (3) Payment by an insurer to a financial services licensee of money payable to an insured, whether in respect of a claim, return of premiums or otherwise, under or in relation to a contract of insurance, does not discharge any liability of the insurer to the insured in respect of that money.
- (4) An agreement, so far as it purports to alter or restrict the operation of subsection (1), (2) or (3), is void.
- (5) Subsection (4) does not make void an agreement between a financial services licensee and an insured in so far as the agreement allows the licensee to set off against money payable to the insured money payable by the insured to the licensee in respect of premiums.

**985C Regulations may impose other requirements etc. if financial services licensee is not the insurer**

- (1) The regulations may impose requirements to be complied with by a financial services licensee in relation to, or make other provision dealing with, a situation specified in subsection (2) that arises in relation to a contract or proposed contract of insurance under which the licensee is not the insurer.
- (2) The situations are as follows:
  - (a) the licensee receives an amount as a premium or instalment of premium;

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 4** Special provisions relating to insurance

**Section 985D**

---

- (b) the licensee does not receive an amount as a premium or instalment of premium by a particular time;
- (c) the licensee is not aware of the amount of a premium or instalment of premium that is to be paid;
- (d) the licensee receives money from the insured or intending insured but the risk or part of the risk has not been accepted by a particular time;
- (e) the licensee receives money from the insurer for payment to or on behalf of the insured.

**985D Financial services licensees etc. not to deal in general insurance products from unauthorised insurers etc.**

- (1) A financial services licensee, or an authorised representative of a financial services licensee, must not deal in a general insurance product if the insurer for the product, or (if there is more than one insurer for the product) each insurer for the product, is not at least one of the following:
  - (a) a general insurer within the meaning of the *Insurance Act 1973*;
  - (b) a Lloyd's underwriter within the meaning of that Act;
  - (c) a person in respect of whom a determination is in force, under subsection 7(1) of that Act, that subsection 9(1) or 10(1) or (2) of that Act does not apply (the effect of which is the effect referred to in paragraph 9(1)(c), 10(1)(c) or 10(2)(c) of that Act (as the case requires)).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to a general insurance product if, because of section 3A of the *Insurance Act 1973*, undertaking liability under the contract of insurance concerned is not, or would not be, insurance business for the purposes of that Act.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in subsection (2) (see subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*).

Section 985D

---

- (3) Paragraph (1)(b) ceases to apply after section 93 of the *Insurance Act 1973* has ceased to have effect.
- (4) An offence based on subsection (1) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

## **Division 4A—Special provisions relating to margin lending facilities**

### **Subdivision A—Responsible lending conduct for margin lending facilities**

#### **985EA Application of this Subdivision**

This Subdivision applies to a financial services licensee (the *provider*) in relation to:

- (a) the issuing of a margin lending facility to a retail client; or
- (b) the increasing of the limit of a margin lending facility that was issued to a retail client.

#### **985E Requirements before issuing etc. margin lending facility**

##### *Requirement to make assessment of unsuitability*

- (1) The provider must not:
  - (a) issue the margin lending facility to the retail client; or
  - (b) increase the limit of the margin lending facility that was issued to the retail client;  
on a day (the *critical day*) unless the provider has, within 90 days (or other period prescribed by the regulations) before the critical day:
    - (c) made an assessment that:
      - (i) is in accordance with section 985F; and
      - (ii) covers a period in which the critical day occurs; and
    - (d) made the inquiries and verification in accordance with section 985G.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).



*Increase in limit of standard margin lending facility*

- (2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b), the limit of a standard margin lending facility is taken not to be increased if:
- (a) apart from this subsection, there would be an increase in the limit; and
  - (b) the increase in the limit would result from an increase in the value, determined under the terms of the facility, of the secured property under the facility (as referred to in paragraph 761EA(2)(c)); and
  - (c) the increase in the value of the secured property does not result from the client contributing additional property to the secured property.

*Regulations*

- (3) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b), the regulations may prescribe particular situations in which the limit of a margin lending facility is taken:
- (a) to be increased, despite subsection (2); or
  - (b) not to be increased.

**985F Assessment of unsuitability of margin lending facility**

For the purposes of paragraph 985E(1)(c), the provider must make an assessment that:

- (a) specifies the period the assessment covers; and
- (b) assesses whether the margin lending facility will be unsuitable for the retail client if the facility is issued or the limit is increased in that period.

Note: The provider is not required to make the assessment if the margin lending facility is not issued or the limit is not increased.

Section 985G

---

**985G Reasonable inquiries etc. about the retail client**

*Requirement to make inquiries and take steps to verify*

- (1) For the purposes of paragraph 985E(1)(d), the provider must, before making the assessment:
  - (a) make reasonable inquiries about the retail client's financial situation; and
  - (b) take reasonable steps to verify the retail client's financial situation; and
  - (c) make any inquiries prescribed by the regulations about any matter prescribed by the regulations; and
  - (d) take any steps prescribed by the regulations to verify any matter prescribed by the regulations.
- (2) The regulations may prescribe particular inquiries or steps that must be made or taken, or do not need to be made or taken, for the purposes of paragraph (1)(a) or (b).

*When not required to take steps to verify*

- (3) Despite subsection (1), if:
  - (a) a financial services licensee that is authorised to provide financial product advice in relation to margin lending facilities has prepared a statement of advice for the retail client; and
  - (b) the statement of advice was prepared no more than 90 days before the critical day; and
  - (c) the statement of advice recommends that:
    - (i) the retail client acquire the particular margin lending facility; or
    - (ii) the limit of the particular margin lending facility be increased; and
  - (d) the limit of the facility, or the increase in the limit of the facility, is not greater than the limit, or the increase in the limit, recommended in the statement of advice; and

(e) the statement of advice includes the information that was used for the purposes of preparing the statement of advice; then the provider is not required, for the purposes of paragraph (1)(b) or (d), to verify that information.

### **985H When margin lending facility must be assessed as unsuitable**

#### *Requirement to assess the margin lending facility as unsuitable*

- (1) The provider must assess that the margin lending facility will be unsuitable for the retail client if the margin lending facility will be unsuitable for the retail client under subsection (2).

Note 1: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

Note 2: Even if the margin lending facility will not be unsuitable for the retail client under subsection (2), the provider may still assess that the margin lending facility will be unsuitable for the retail client for other reasons.

- (2) The margin lending facility will be unsuitable for the retail client if, at the time of the assessment, it is likely that:
- (a) if the facility is issued or the limit increased in the period covered by the assessment, and the facility were to go into margin call, the retail client:
    - (i) would be unable to comply with the retail client's financial obligations under the terms of the facility; or
    - (ii) could only comply with substantial hardship; or
  - (b) if the regulations prescribe circumstances in which a margin lending facility is unsuitable—those circumstances will apply to the margin lending facility if the facility is issued or the limit increased in the period covered by the assessment.

#### *Information to be used to make the assessment*

- (3) For the purposes of determining under subsection (2) whether the margin lending facility will be unsuitable, only information that satisfies both of the following paragraphs is to be taken into account:

**Section 985J**

---

- (a) the information is about the retail client's financial situation, or any other matter prescribed by regulations under paragraph 985G(1)(c) or (d);
- (b) at the time of the assessment:
  - (i) the provider had reason to believe that the information was true; or
  - (ii) the provider would have had reason to believe that the information was true if it had made the inquiries or verification under section 985G.

**985J Giving the retail client the assessment**

*Requirement to give assessment if requested*

- (1) If, before the margin lending facility is issued or the limit is increased, the retail client requests a copy of the assessment from the provider, the provider must give the retail client a written copy of the assessment before issuing the facility or increasing the limit.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

Note 3: The provider is not required to give the retail client a copy of the assessment if the margin lending facility is not issued or the limit is not increased.

- (2) If, during the period that:
- (a) starts on the critical day referred to in subsection 985E(1); and
  - (b) ends 7 years after that day;
- the retail client requests a copy of the assessment from the provider, the provider must give the retail client a written copy of the assessment:
- (c) if the request is made within 2 years of the critical day—before the end of 7 business days after the day the provider receives the request; and
  - (d) otherwise—before the end of 21 business days after the day the provider receives the request.

Section 985K

---

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

*Manner of giving assessment*

- (3) The provider must give the retail client the copy of the assessment in the manner (if any) prescribed by the regulations.

*No payment for assessment*

- (4) The provider must not request or demand payment of an amount for giving the retail client a copy of the assessment.

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

*Strict liability*

- (5) An offence based on subsection (1), (2) or (4) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For strict liability, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

**985K Unsuitable margin lending facilities**

*Requirement not to issue unsuitable margin lending facilities etc.*

- (1) The provider must not:
- (a) issue the margin lending facility to the retail client; or
  - (b) increase the limit of the margin lending facility that was issued to the retail client;
- if the facility is unsuitable for the retail client under subsection (2).

Note 1: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

Note 2: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 4A** Special provisions relating to margin lending facilities

**Section 985K**

---

*When a margin lending facility will be unsuitable*

- (2) The margin lending facility is unsuitable for the retail client if, at the time it is issued or the limit is increased:
- (a) it is likely that, if the facility were to go into margin call, the retail client:
    - (i) would be unable to comply with the retail client's financial obligations under the terms of the facility; or
    - (ii) could only comply with substantial hardship; or
  - (b) if the regulations prescribe circumstances in which a margin lending facility is unsuitable—those circumstances apply to the margin lending facility.

*Information to be used for the purposes of subsection (2)*

- (3) For the purposes of determining under subsection (2) whether the margin lending facility will be unsuitable, only information that satisfies both of the following paragraphs is to be taken into account:
- (a) the information is about the retail client's financial situation, or any other matter prescribed by regulations under paragraph 985G(1)(c) or (d);
  - (b) at the time the margin lending facility is issued or the limit is increased:
    - (i) the provider had reason to believe that the information was true; or
    - (ii) the provider would have had reason to believe that the information was true if it had made the inquiries or verification under section 985G.

*Regulations in relation to unsuitability of margin lending facility*

- (4) The regulations may prescribe particular situations in which a margin lending facility is taken not to be unsuitable for a retail client, despite subsection (2).

*Increase in limit of standard margin lending facility*

- (5) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b), the limit of a standard margin lending facility is taken not to be increased if:
- (a) apart from this subsection, there would be an increase in the limit; and
  - (b) the increase in the limit would result from an increase in the value, determined under the terms of the facility, of the secured property under the facility (as referred to in paragraph 761EA(2)(c)); and
  - (c) the increase in the value of the secured property does not result from the client contributing additional property to the secured property.

*Regulations in relation to increase in limit*

- (6) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b), the regulations may prescribe particular situations in which the limit of a margin lending facility is taken:
- (a) to be increased, despite subsection (5); or
  - (b) not to be increased.

**Subdivision B—Notice of margin calls under margin lending facilities**

**985L Issue of margin lending facility must not be conditional on agreement to receive communications through agent**

A financial services licensee must not require, as a condition of issuing a margin lending facility to a retail client, that the retail client enter into an agreement of the kind referred to in subsection 985M(2) (which deals with agreements about communications in relation to margin lending facilities).

Note: This section is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

Section 985M

---

**985M Notification of margin calls**

*Provider must notify retail client of margin call*

- (1) A financial services licensee (the **provider**) that has issued a margin lending facility to a retail client must, when the facility goes into margin call, take reasonable steps to notify the retail client under the facility of the margin call in accordance with this section.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

*When provider must notify retail client's agent, and agent must notify retail client, of margin call*

- (2) However, if there is an agreement between the provider, the retail client, and another financial services licensee (the **agent**) that the agent will receive communications from the provider in relation to the margin lending facility on behalf of the retail client, then:
  - (a) the provider must take reasonable steps to notify the agent (instead of the retail client) of the margin call in accordance with this section; and
  - (b) the agent must take reasonable steps to notify the retail client of the margin call in accordance with this section.

Note: This subsection is a civil penalty provision (see section 1317E).

*When and how notice must be given*

- (3) A notice under this section must be given:
  - (a) at a time determined by ASIC; or
  - (b) if no time is determined by ASIC—as soon as practicable.
- (4) A notice under this section must be given:
  - (a) if a manner in which the notice is to be given has been agreed between the person who is required to give the notice and the person to whom the notice is required to be given—in that manner; or



Section 985M

---

- (b) if there is no agreement and ASIC has determined the manner in which the notice is to be given—in that manner; or
- (c) otherwise—in a reasonable manner.

*ASIC may determine when and how notice must be given*

- (5) ASIC may determine:
  - (a) the time by which, and manner in which, a provider must notify a client or agent of a margin call under this section; and
  - (b) the time by which, and manner in which, an agent must notify a client of a margin call under this section.
- (6) A determination made under subsection (5):
  - (a) must be in writing; and
  - (b) is a legislative instrument for the purposes of the *Legislative Instruments Act 2003*.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 5** Obligations to report

Section 986A

---

## **Division 5—Obligations to report**

### **986A Reporting in relation to money to which Subdivision A or B of Division 2 applies or property to which Division 3 applies**

The regulations may impose reporting requirements to be complied with by a financial services licensee in relation to money to which Subdivision A or B of Division 2 applies or property to which Division 3 applies.

### **986B Reporting in relation to dealings in derivatives**

The regulations may impose reporting requirements to be complied with by a financial services licensee in relation to dealings in derivatives on behalf of other people.

## **Division 6—Financial records, statements and audit**

### **Subdivision A—Preliminary**

#### **987A Application of Division**

- (1) This Division applies in relation to a financial services licensee and a financial services business carried on by the licensee, whether that business is carried on in this jurisdiction or elsewhere.
- (2) This Division does not affect, and is to be taken never to have affected, the operation of Chapter 2M in relation to a company that is a financial services licensee or in relation to a financial services business that is carried on by such a company.

### **Subdivision B—Financial records of financial services licensees**

#### **988A Obligation to keep financial records**

- (1) A financial services licensee must (subject to subsection (2)):
  - (a) keep financial records that correctly record and explain the transactions and financial position of the financial services business carried on by the licensee; and
  - (b) keep those records in accordance with the requirements of this Subdivision; and
  - (c) comply with the requirements of this Subdivision in relation to conversion of records into the English language (see subsection 988C(2)).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) The licensee does not contravene a requirement of this Subdivision merely because some or all of the records are kept as a part of, or in conjunction with, the records relating to any other business that is carried on by the licensee.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 6** Financial records, statements and audit

**Section 988B**

---

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

**988B Records to be kept so that profit and loss statements and balance sheet can be prepared and audited**

The records must be kept in a way that:

- (a) enables true and fair profit and loss statements, and balance sheets, of the financial services business of the licensee to be prepared from time to time; and
- (b) allows those statements and balance sheets to be conveniently and properly audited.

**988C Language of records**

- (1) The records must be kept in writing in the English language, or in a manner that enables them to be readily accessible and readily converted into writing in the English language.
- (2) If any of the records are not kept in writing in the English language, the licensee must, if required to convert the records concerned into writing in the English language by a person who is entitled to examine the records concerned, comply with the requirement within a reasonable time.

**988D Location of records**

If any of the records are kept outside this jurisdiction, the licensee must:

- (a) cause to be sent to and kept at a place in this jurisdiction such particulars with respect to the business dealt with in those records as will enable true and fair profit and loss statements and balance sheets to be prepared; and
- (b) if required by ASIC to produce those records at a place in this jurisdiction, comply with the requirement not later than 28 days after the requirement is made.

**988E Particular categories of information to be shown in records**

The records must be kept in sufficient detail to show particulars of:

- (a) all money received or paid by the licensee, including money paid to, or disbursed from, an account maintained for the purposes of section 981B or 982B; and
- (b) all acquisitions and disposals of financial products made by the licensee, the charges and credits arising from them, and the names of the person acquiring or disposing of each of those products; and
- (c) all income received by the licensee from commissions, interest, and other sources, and all expenses, commissions, and interest paid by the licensee; and
- (d) all the assets and liabilities (including contingent liabilities) of the licensee; and
- (e) all securities or managed investment products that are the property of the licensee, showing by whom the securities or products, or the documents of title to the securities or products, are held and, if they are held by some other person, whether or not they are held as security against loans or advances; and
- (f) all securities or managed investment products that are not the property of the licensee and for which the licensee or a nominee controlled by the licensee is accountable, showing:
  - (i) by whom, and for whom, the securities or products, or the documents of title to the securities or products, are held; and
  - (ii) the extent to which they are either held for safe custody or deposited with a third party as security for loans or advances made to the licensee; and
- (g) such other matters (if any) as are specified in regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

**988F Regulations may impose additional requirements**

The regulations may impose additional requirements to be complied with in relation to the records including, for example,

---

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 6** Financial records, statements and audit

Section 988G

---

requirements for things to be contained in the records, and requirements relating to the level of detail to be shown in the records.

**988G Records taken to be made with licensee's authority**

An entry in the records is, unless the contrary is proved, to be taken to have been made by, or with the authority of, the licensee.

**Subdivision C—Financial statements of financial services licensees**

**989A Meaning of *financial year***

In this Subdivision:

*financial year*, in relation to a financial services licensee, means:

- (a) if the licensee is not a body corporate—a year ending on 30 June; and
- (b) if the licensee is a body corporate—a financial year of the body corporate.

**989B Financial services licensee to prepare and lodge annual profit and loss statement and balance sheet**

- (1) A financial services licensee must, in respect of each financial year, prepare a true and fair profit and loss statement and balance sheet in accordance with this Subdivision.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) The licensee must lodge the statement and balance sheet with ASIC in accordance with this Subdivision.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) The licensee must, with the statement and balance sheet, lodge an auditor's report with ASIC containing the information and matters required by the regulations.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

### **989C Requirements as to contents and applicable accounting principles**

The profit and loss statement and the balance sheet must:

- (a) contain the information that is required by the regulations; and
- (b) be prepared in accordance with any requirements in the regulations as to the accounting principles to be used.

### **989CA Audit to be conducted in accordance with auditing standards**

- (1) If an individual auditor, or an audit company, conducts an audit of a profit and loss statement and balance sheet for the purposes of this Subdivision, the individual auditor or audit company must:
  - (a) conduct the audit in accordance with the auditing standards; and
  - (b) include in the audit report on the profit and loss statement, and balance sheet, any statements or disclosures required by the auditing standards.
- (2) If an audit firm, or an audit company, conducts an audit of a profit and loss statement and balance sheet for the purposes of this Subdivision, the lead auditor for the audit or review must ensure that:
  - (a) the audit is conducted in accordance with the auditing standards; and
  - (b) the audit report on the profit and loss statement, and balance sheet, includes any statements or disclosures required by the auditing standards.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 6** Financial records, statements and audit

**Section 989D**

---

- (3) An offence based on subsection (1) or (2) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability* see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

**989D Time of lodgment**

- (1) Unless an extension is granted under subsection (3), the profit and loss statement and the balance sheet must be lodged before:
- (a) if the licensee is not a body corporate—the day that is 2 months after the end of that financial year; or
  - (b) if the licensee is a body corporate—the day that is 3 months after the end of that financial year.
- (2) If an extension is granted under subsection (3), the profit and loss statement and the balance sheet must be lodged before the end of the extended period.
- (3) ASIC may, on application made:
- (a) by a financial services licensee and the licensee's auditor; and
  - (b) before the end of the period that would otherwise apply; approve an extension of the period for lodging the profit and loss statement and balance sheet. The extension may be of the period originally applicable or the period applicable under a previous extension.
- (4) An approval under subsection (3) may be given subject to such conditions (if any) as ASIC imposes.
- (5) If an approval under subsection (3) is given subject to conditions, the licensee must comply with those conditions.

**Subdivision D—Appointment etc. of auditors**

**990A Sections 990B to 990H not to apply to public companies**

Sections 990B to 990H do not apply to a financial services licensee that is a public company.



**990B Appointment of auditor by licensee**

- (1) A financial services licensee must, within 1 month after beginning to hold the licence, appoint as auditor or auditors to audit the licensee's financial statements:
- (a) a person or persons; or
  - (b) a firm or firms; or
  - (c) a person or persons and a firm or firms.

Subsections (4) and (5) must be complied with in relation to the appointment.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Within 14 days after a vacancy occurs in the office of an auditor of the licensee, if there is no surviving or continuing auditor of the licensee, the licensee must appoint:
- (a) a person or persons; or
  - (b) a firm or firms; or
  - (c) a person or persons and a firm or firms;

to fill the vacancy. Subsections (4) and (5) must be complied with in relation to the appointment.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) While a vacancy in the office of an auditor of the licensee continues, the surviving or continuing auditor or auditors (if any) may act.
- (4) The licensee must not appoint as auditor a person who, or firm that, is ineligible by virtue of regulations made for the purposes of section 990C to act as auditor of the licensee.
- (5) The licensee must not appoint a person or firm as auditor of the licensee unless that person or firm has, before the appointment, consented by written notice given to the licensee to act as auditor and has not withdrawn the consent by written notice given to the licensee.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 6** Financial records, statements and audit

**Section 990C**

---

- (6) The licensee must, within 14 days after an appointment of a person or firm as auditor, lodge a written notice with ASIC stating that the licensee has made the appointment and specifying the name of the person or firm.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (7) The regulations may include provisions (including provisions imposing obligations) dealing with matters related to the appointment of a firm as auditor, including, for example:
- (a) taking certain members of the firm to have been appointed as auditors; and
  - (b) the effect of a dissolution and reconstitution of the firm; and
  - (c) requiring a member of the firm who retires or withdraws to continue to act as auditor in certain circumstances; and
  - (d) how a report, notice or other document is to be made or given.
- (8) Regulations made for the purposes of subsection (7) may also include provisions modifying the effect of provisions of this Subdivision in relation to matters dealt with in those regulations.

- (9) In this section:

**person** means:

- (a) an individual auditor; or
- (b) an authorised audit company.

**990C When a person or firm is ineligible to act as auditor**

A person or firm is ineligible to act as auditor of the licensee if regulations made for the purposes of this section provide that the person or firm is ineligible so to act.

**990D Ineligible person or firm must not consent to act or disqualify themselves etc.**

- (1) A person or firm, while ineligible to act as auditor of the licensee, must not:
- (a) consent to be appointed as auditor of the licensee; or
  - (b) act as auditor of the licensee; or
  - (c) prepare a report that an auditor of the licensee is to prepare under this Part.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) A person must not:
- (a) if the person has been appointed auditor of the licensee—disqualify himself or herself, while the appointment continues, from acting as auditor of the licensee; or
  - (b) if the person is a member of a firm that has been appointed auditor of the licensee—disqualify the firm, while the appointment continues, from acting as auditor of the licensee.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**990E Duration of appointment of auditors**

An auditor of the licensee holds office until:

- (a) death; or
- (b) removal in accordance with section 990F; or
- (c) resignation in accordance with sections 990G and 990H; or
- (d) becoming prohibited by subsection 990D(1) from acting as auditor of the licensee;

whichever occurs first.

Section 990F

---

**990F Removal of auditors**

The licensee:

- (a) must remove an auditor of the licensee from office if the auditor becomes ineligible to act as auditor of the licensee; and
- (b) may, with ASIC's consent, remove an auditor of the licensee from office.

Note: Failure to comply with paragraph (a) is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**990G Resignation of auditors—requirements for resignation**

- (1) An auditor of the licensee may, by written notice given to the licensee, resign as auditor of the licensee if:
  - (a) the auditor has, by written notice given to ASIC, applied for consent to the resignation and, at or about the same time as the auditor gave notice to ASIC, gave written notice of the application to the licensee; and
  - (b) ASIC has consented and the auditor has received notice of ASIC's consent.
- (2) ASIC must, as soon as practicable after receiving an application from an auditor under subsection (1), notify the auditor and the licensee whether it consents to the resignation.
- (3) A statement by an auditor in an application under subsection (1), or in answer to an inquiry by ASIC relating to the reasons for the application:
  - (a) is not admissible in evidence in any civil or criminal proceedings in a court against the auditor other than proceedings for a contravention of section 1308; and
  - (b) may not be made the ground of a prosecution (other than a prosecution for a contravention of section 1308), action or suit against the auditor.
- (4) A certificate by ASIC that a statement was made in an application under subsection (1), or in answer to an inquiry by ASIC relating

to the reasons for such an application, is conclusive evidence that the statement was so made.

### **990H Resignation of auditors—when resignation takes effect**

The resignation of an auditor of the licensee takes effect on:

- (a) if the notice of resignation specifies a date as the date the resignation is to take effect—the date so specified; or
- (b) the date on which ASIC gives its consent to the resignation; or
- (c) if ASIC has fixed a date as the date the resignation is to take effect—the date so fixed;

whichever last occurs.

### **990I Auditor's right of access to records, information etc.**

- (1) An auditor of the licensee has a right of access at all reasonable times to the financial records or other records (including any register) of the licensee.
- (2) An auditor of the licensee is entitled to require:
  - (a) from the licensee; or
  - (b) if the licensee is a body corporate—from any director, secretary or senior manager of the licensee;such assistance and explanations as the auditor desires for the purposes of audit.
- (3) The licensee, or a director, secretary or senior manager of the licensee if it is a body corporate, must not:
  - (a) refuse or fail to allow an auditor of the licensee access, in accordance with subsection (1), to financial records or other records of the licensee; or
  - (b) refuse or fail to give assistance, or an explanation, to an auditor of the licensee as and when required under subsection (2); or

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 6** Financial records, statements and audit

**Section 990J**

---

- (c) otherwise hinder, obstruct or delay an auditor of the licensee in the performance or exercise of the auditor's duties or powers.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

**990J Auditor's fees and expenses**

- (1) The reasonable fees and expenses of an auditor of the licensee are payable by the licensee.
- (2) The auditor may recover those fees by action against the licensee.

**990K Auditor to report on certain matters**

- (1) If an auditor, in the performance of duties as auditor of the licensee, becomes aware of a matter referred to in subsection (2), the auditor must, within 7 days after becoming aware of the matter, lodge a written report on the matter with ASIC and send a copy of the report to the licensee, and to each licensed market (if any) and each licensed CS facility (if any) in which the licensee is a participant.

Note: Failure to comply with this section is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) A report must be given in relation to any matter that, in the opinion of the auditor:
- (a) has adversely affected, is adversely affecting or may adversely affect the ability of the licensee to meet the licensee's obligations as a licensee; or
- (b) constitutes or may constitute a contravention of:
- (i) a provision of Subdivision A or B of Division 2 (or a provision of regulations made for the purposes of such a provision); or
- (ii) a provision of Division 3 (or a provision of regulations made for the purposes of such a provision); or

Section 990L

---

- (iii) a provision of Subdivision B or C of this Division (or a provision of regulations made for the purposes of such a provision); or
- (iv) a condition of the licensee's licence; or
- (c) constitutes an attempt to unduly influence, coerce, manipulate or mislead the auditor in the conduct of the audit.

**990L Qualified privilege for auditor etc.**

*Qualified privilege for auditor*

- (1) An auditor of the licensee has qualified privilege in respect of:
  - (a) a statement that the auditor makes, orally or in writing, in the course of the auditor's duties as auditor; or
  - (b) the lodging of a report under subsection 990K(1); or
  - (c) the sending of a report to:
    - (i) the licensee; or
    - (ii) a licensed market or a licensed CS facility; under subsection 990K(1); or
  - (d) a disclosure made by the auditor in response to a notice given to the auditor under subsection 225A(5) of the ASIC Act.

Note: If the auditor is an audit company, the company has qualified privilege under this subsection in respect of statements made, and reports lodged or sent, by individuals on behalf of the company if those statements and notices can be properly attributed to the company.

*Qualified privilege for registered company auditor acting on behalf of audit company*

- (2) If the auditor of the licensee is an audit company, a registered company auditor acting on behalf of the company has qualified privilege in respect of:
  - (a) a statement that the registered company auditor makes (orally or in writing) in the course of the performance, on behalf of the company, of the company's duties as auditor; or
  - (b) the lodging by the registered company auditor, on behalf of the company, of a report under subsection 990K(1); or

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 6** Financial records, statements and audit

**Section 990L**

---

- (c) the sending by the registered company auditor, on behalf of the company, of a report to:
  - (i) the licensee; or
  - (ii) a licensed market or a licensed CS facility; under subsection 990K(1); or
- (d) a disclosure made by the registered company auditor in response to a notice given to the audit company under subsection 225A(5) of the ASIC Act.

*Qualified privilege for subsequent publication*

- (3) A person has qualified privilege in respect of the publishing of a document:
  - (a) prepared by an auditor of the licensee in the course of the auditor's duties as auditor; or
  - (b) required by or under this Chapter to be lodged with ASIC (whether or not the document has been so lodged).
- (4) A person has qualified privilege in respect of the publishing of a statement:
  - (a) made by an auditor of the licensee as mentioned in subsection (1); or
  - (b) a statement made by a registered company auditor as mentioned in subsection (2).



## **Division 7—Other rules about conduct**

### **991A Financial services licensee not to engage in unconscionable conduct**

- (1) A financial services licensee must not, in or in relation to the provision of a financial service, engage in conduct that is, in all the circumstances, unconscionable.
- (2) If a person suffers loss or damage because a financial services licensee contravenes subsection (1), the person may recover the amount of the loss or damage by action against the licensee.
- (3) An action under subsection (2) may be begun at any time within 6 years after the day on which the cause of action arose.
- (4) This section does not affect any liability that a person has under any other law.

### **991B Financial services licensee to give priority to clients' orders**

- (1) This section applies if:
  - (a) a person (the *client*) has instructed a financial services licensee to buy or sell financial products of a particular class that are able to be traded on a licensed market; and
  - (b) the licensee has not complied with the instruction; and
  - (c) the client is not an associate of the licensee; and
  - (d) regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph do not exclude those financial products from this section.
- (2) The financial services licensee must not, except as permitted by subsection (3):
  - (a) enter into a transaction of purchase or sale of financial products of that class either on their own behalf or on behalf of an associate of the licensee; or

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 7** Other rules about conduct

**Section 991C**

---

- (b) instruct another person to enter into a transaction of purchase or sale of financial products of that class on behalf of the licensee or an associate of the licensee.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply in relation to the entering into of a transaction, or the giving of an instruction, by the licensee if:
  - (a) the client's instructions required the purchase or sale to be effected only on specified conditions relating to price and the licensee has been unable to comply with the instructions because of those conditions; or
  - (b) the transaction, or the giving of the instruction, is permitted by regulations made for the purposes of this paragraph.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

**991C Regulations may deal with various matters relating to instructions to deal through licensed markets**

The regulations may do all or any of the following in relation to instructions received by financial services licensees to deal in financial products through licensed markets:

- (a) impose requirements relating to the order in which instructions are to be transmitted to a licensed market or to another financial services licensee who is a participant in a licensed market;
- (b) impose requirements relating to the order in which dealings that have been effected on a licensed market are to be allocated to instructions;
- (c) prohibit the disclosure of instructions in specified circumstances.

**991D Regulations may require records to be kept in relation to instructions to deal on licensed markets and foreign markets**

The regulations may impose requirements for the keeping of records relating to all or any of the following:

- (a) instructions received by financial services licensees to deal in financial products through licensed markets or through other financial markets (whether inside or outside Australia);
- (b) the execution of such instructions;
- (c) the transmission of such instructions.

**991E Obligations of financial services licensee in relation to dealings with non-licensees**

*Obligation to disclose if acting on own behalf*

- (1) Subject to the regulations, a financial services licensee must not, either personally or through an authorised representative, enter into a financial product transaction on their own behalf:
  - (a) that relates to a financial product that is able to be traded on a licensed market; and
  - (b) that is with a person (the *non-licensee*) who is not a financial services licensee or an authorised representative;if:
  - (c) the licensee has not (in accordance with any applicable regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (2)(a)) disclosed to the non-licensee the fact that the licensee will be acting on their own behalf in the proposed dealing; or
  - (d) the non-licensee has not (in accordance with any applicable regulations made for the purposes of paragraph (2)(b)) consented to the licensee so acting in the proposed dealing.

If the licensee is acting through an authorised representative, the disclosure referred to in paragraph (c) may instead be given by the representative.

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 7** Other rules about conduct

**Section 991E**

---

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) The regulations may deal with either or both of the following:
- (a) how a disclosure referred to in paragraph (1)(c) is to be made;
  - (b) how a consent referred to in paragraph (1)(d) is to be given.

*Obligation not to charge fee*

- (3) If a financial services licensee, either personally or through an authorised representative, enters into a transaction of sale or purchase of financial products on their own behalf:
- (a) that relates to a financial product that is able to be traded on a licensed market; and
  - (b) that is with a person (the **non-licensee**) who is not a financial services licensee or an authorised representative;
- the licensee must only charge the non-licensee a brokerage, commission or other fee in respect of the transaction if the charge is permitted by the regulations.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

*Person may rescind contract if section contravened*

- (4) If subsection (1) or (3) is contravened in relation to a transaction (whether or not anyone is convicted of an offence in respect of the contravention), the non-licensee may, subject to subsection (5), rescind the contract effecting the transaction, unless the contract was for the purchase of financial products by the non-licensee and the non-licensee has disposed of those products.
- (5) The right under subsection (4) to rescind the contract:
- (a) can only be exercised during the period of 14 days starting on:
    - (i) unless subparagraph (ii) applies—the day on which the contract was entered into; or

---

Section 991F

---

- (ii) if regulations made for the purposes of this subparagraph specify a later day—that later day; and
  - (b) is to be exercised by notice in writing to the licensee.
- (6) Nothing in subsections (4) and (5) affects any other right that a person has.

*Regulations may require records to be kept in relation to transactions entered into by licensee on own behalf*

- (7) The regulations may impose requirements for the keeping of records relating to financial products transactions entered into by a financial services licensee on their own behalf.

### **991F Dealings involving employees of financial services licensees**

- (1) Subject to the regulations, a financial services licensee and an employee of the licensee must not, on their own behalves, jointly acquire a financial product.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Subject to the regulations, a financial services licensee must not give credit to an employee of the licensee, or to a person who they know is an associate of an employee of the licensee, if:
- (a) the credit is given for the purpose of enabling the person to whom the credit is given to acquire a financial product; or
  - (b) the licensee knows or has reason to believe that the credit will be used for the purpose of acquiring a financial product.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3) Subject to the regulations, a person:
- (a) who is an employee of a financial services licensee that is a participant in a licensed market; and
  - (b) who is so employed in connection with a business of dealing in financial products;

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 7** Other rules about conduct

**Section 991F**

---

must only, on their own behalf, acquire or agree to acquire a financial product of a kind that is able to be traded on that market if the licensee acts as the agent of the person in respect of the acquisition.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (4) In this section, a reference to an employee of a financial services licensee includes, for a licensee that is a body corporate, a reference to an officer of the body.

## **Division 8—Miscellaneous**

### **992A Prohibition on hawking of certain financial products**

- (1) A person must not offer financial products for issue or sale in the course of, or because of, an unsolicited meeting with another person.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to offering of securities, hawking of which is prohibited by section 736, or to offering of managed investment products, hawking of which is prohibited by section 992AA.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3) A person must not make an offer to issue or sell a financial product in the course of, or because of:

- (aa) an unsolicited telephone call to another person; or  
(ab) an unsolicited contact with another person in another way that is prescribed by the regulations for the purposes of this paragraph;

unless the other person has been:

- (a) contacted only during the hours prescribed by the regulations and only if the person is not listed on the “No Contact/No Call” register in relation to the person making the contact; and  
(b) given an opportunity to:  
(i) register on a “No Contact/No Call” register maintained by the person making the contact at no cost to that person; and  
(ii) select the time and frequency of any future contacts; and  
(c) given a Product Disclosure Statement before becoming bound to acquire a financial product; and

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 8** Miscellaneous

**Section 992A**

---

- (d) clearly informed of the importance of using the information in the Product Disclosure Statement when making a decision to acquire a financial product; and
- (e) given the option of having the information in the Product Disclosure Statement read out to that person.

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (3A) Neither subsection (1) nor (3) applies to an offer of financial products if the offer is not to a retail client.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (3B) Neither subsection (1) nor (3) applies to an offer of financial products that is made under an eligible employee share scheme.

Note: A defendant bears an evidential burden in relation to the matters in this subsection. See subsection 13.3(3) of the *Criminal Code*.

- (4) In addition to other penalties for breaches of this section, a failure to comply with this section gives the other person a right of return and refund exercisable within 1 month after the expiry date of the relevant cooling-off period for the financial product, or one month and fourteen days in the event that no cooling-off period applies to the financial product, subject to the following provisions:

- (a) on the exercise of the right to return the product:
  - (i) if the product is constituted by a legal relationship between the client and the issuer of the product—that relationship is, by force of this subsection, terminated with effect from that time without penalty to the client; and
  - (ii) any contract for the acquisition of the product by the client is, by force of this subsection, terminated with effect from that time without penalty to the client;
- (b) the regulations may provide for consequences and obligations (in addition to those provided for in paragraph (a)) to apply if the right to return a financial product is exercised;



Section 992AA

---

- (c) the regulations may do any or all of the following:
  - (i) provide that a specified subclass of financial products that would otherwise be covered by this subsection is excluded from this subsection;
  - (ii) provide additional requirements to be satisfied before this subsection applies in relation to a class or subclass of financial products;
  - (iii) provide that this subsection does not apply in relation to the provision of a financial product in specified circumstances.
- (5) For the purposes of this section:
  - (a) a reference to offering a financial product for issue (or offering to issue a financial product) includes a reference to inviting an application for the issue of the financial product; and
  - (b) a reference to offering a financial product for sale (or offering to sell a financial product) includes a reference to inviting an offer to purchase the financial product.

**992AA Prohibition of hawking of managed investment products**

- (1) A person must not offer interests in managed investment schemes for issue or sale in the course of, or because of:
  - (a) an unsolicited meeting with another person; or
  - (b) an unsolicited telephone call to another person;unless the offer is exempted under subsection (2).

Note: Failure to comply with this subsection is an offence (see subsection 1311(1)).

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to an offer of interests in managed investment schemes if:
  - (a) the offer is not to a retail client;
  - (b) the offer is an offer of interests in a listed managed investment scheme made by telephone by a financial services licensee; or

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 8** Miscellaneous

**Section 992B**

---

- (c) the offer is made to a client by a financial services licensee through whom the client has acquired or disposed of an interest in a managed investment scheme in the previous 12 months; or
  - (d) the offer is made under an eligible employee share scheme.
- (3) For the purposes of this section:
- (a) a reference to offering interests in a managed investment scheme for issue includes a reference to inviting an application for the issue of interests in the scheme; and
  - (b) a reference to offering interests in a managed investment scheme for sale includes a reference to inviting an offer to purchase interests in the scheme.

**992B Exemptions and modifications by ASIC**

- (1) ASIC may:
- (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial product or class of financial products from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (c) declare that this Part applies in relation to a person or a financial product, or a class of persons or financial products, as if specified provisions of this Part were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the declaration.
- (3) An exemption may apply unconditionally or subject to specified conditions. A person to whom a condition specified in an exemption applies must comply with the condition. The Court may order the person to comply with the condition in a specified way. Only ASIC may apply to the Court for the order.
- (4) An exemption or declaration must be in writing and ASIC must publish notice of it in the *Gazette*.
- (5) If conduct (including an omission) of a person would not have constituted an offence if a particular declaration under paragraph (1)(c) had not been made, that conduct does not

Section 992C

---

constitute an offence unless, before the conduct occurred (in addition to complying with the gazettal requirement of subsection (4)):

- (a) the text of the declaration was made available by ASIC on the internet; or
- (b) ASIC gave written notice setting out the text of the declaration to the person.

In a prosecution for an offence to which this subsection applies, the prosecution must prove that paragraph (a) or (b) was complied with before the conduct occurred.

- (6) For the purpose of this section, the *provisions of this Part* include:
- (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

Note: Because of section 761H, a reference to this Part or Part 10.2 also includes a reference to regulations or other instruments made for the purposes of this Part or Part 10.2 (as the case requires).

### 992C Exemptions and modifications by regulations

- (1) The regulations may:
- (a) exempt a person or class of persons from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (b) exempt a financial product or a class of financial products from all or specified provisions of this Part; or
  - (c) provide that this Part applies as if specified provisions were omitted, modified or varied as specified in the regulations.
- (2) For the purpose of this section, the *provisions of this Part* include:
- (a) definitions in this Act, or in the regulations, as they apply to references in this Part; and
  - (b) any provisions of Part 10.2 (transitional provisions) that relate to provisions of this Part.

## Division 9—Enforcement

### 993A Overview

This Division contains provisions creating offences by reference to various rules contained in preceding Divisions of this Part. However, it does not create all the offences relating to those rules, as some offences are created by subsection 1311(1). Where offences are created by subsection 1311(1) in relation to a rule, this is indicated by a note at the end of the provision containing the rule.

### 993B Offence of failing to pay client money into an account as required

#### *Strict liability offence*

- (1) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the licensee is required by subsection 981B(1) to pay particular money into an account in accordance with that subsection; and
  - (b) the licensee does not pay the money into an account in accordance with that subsection.
- (2) An offence based on subsection (1) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

#### *Ordinary offence*

- (3) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the licensee is required by subsection 981B(1) to pay particular money into an account in accordance with that subsection; and
  - (b) the licensee does not pay the money into an account in accordance with that subsection.

**993C Offence of failing to comply with requirements relating to client money account**

*Strict liability offence*

- (1) A financial services licensee commits an offence if the licensee contravenes a requirement in regulations made for the purposes of section 981C.
- (2) An offence based on subsection (1) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

*Ordinary offence*

- (3) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) a requirement in regulations made for the purposes of section 981C applies to the licensee; and
  - (b) the licensee contravenes the requirement.

**993D Offence of failing to pay loan money into an account as required**

*Strict liability offence*

- (1) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:
  - (a) the licensee is required by subsection 982B(1) to pay particular money into an account in accordance with that subsection; and
  - (b) the licensee does not pay the money into an account in accordance with that subsection.
- (2) An offence based on subsection (1) is an offence of strict liability.

Note: For *strict liability*, see section 6.1 of the *Criminal Code*.

*Ordinary offence*

- (3) A financial services licensee commits an offence if:

**Chapter 7** Financial services and markets

**Part 7.8** Other provisions relating to conduct etc. connected with financial products and financial services, other than financial product disclosure

**Division 9** Enforcement

**Section 993D**

---

- (a) the licensee is required by subsection 982B(1) to pay particular money into an account in accordance with that subsection; and
- (b) the licensee does not pay the money into an account in accordance with that subsection.